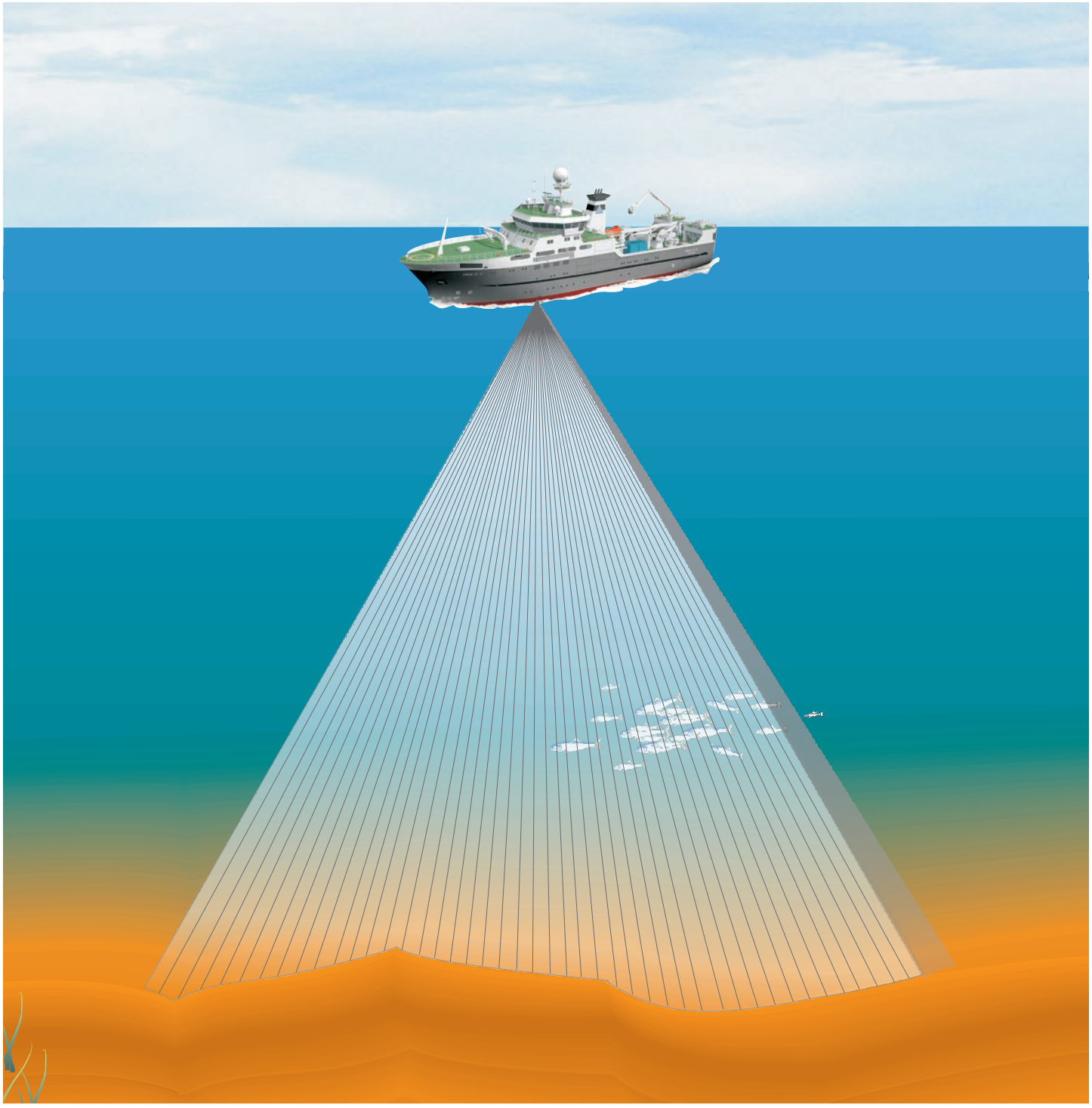
Installation Manual

Simrad ME70

Scientific multibeam echo sounder



SIMRAD

TECHNOLOGY FOR SUSTAINABLE FISHERIES

www.simrad.com

SIMRAD

Simrad ME70
Multibeam scientific echo sounder
Installation Manual

The purpose of this manual is to provide the information, procedures and basic drawings required for the physical installation of the Simrad ME70. The manual is intended for technical personnel; such as skilled shipyard workers, electricians, qualified engineers and naval architects.

For information about the practical use of the ME70, refer to the ME70 *Reference Manual* and/or the ME70 *Operator Manual*. You can also find information in the ME70 *Context Sensitive On-line Help*.

Caution

As a safety precaution, you must never power up the ME70 when the ship is in dry dock. The transducer may be damaged if it transmits in open air.

331546/E
October 2017 © Kongsberg Maritime AS

Document information

- **Product**: Simrad ME70
- **Document**: Installation Manual
- **Document part number**: 331546
- **Document ISBN number**: xxx
- **Revision**: E
- **Date of issue**: 27 October 2017

Copyright

The information contained in this document remains the sole property of Kongsberg Maritime AS. No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means, and the information contained within it is not to be communicated to a third party, without the prior written consent of Kongsberg Maritime AS.

Warning

The equipment to which this manual applies must only be used for the purpose for which it was designed. Improper use or maintenance may cause damage to the equipment and/or injury to personnel. You must be familiar with the contents of the appropriate manuals before attempting to operate or work on the equipment.

Kongsberg Maritime disclaims any responsibility for damage or injury caused by improper installation, use or maintenance of the equipment.

Disclaimer

Kongsberg Maritime AS endeavours to ensure that all information in this document is correct and fairly stated, but does not accept liability for any errors or omissions.

Support information

If you require maintenance or repair, contact your local dealer. You can also contact us using the following address: simrad.support@simrad.com. If you need information about our other products, visit https://www.simrad.com. On this website you will also find a list of our dealers and distributors.

Kongsberg Maritime AS
www.kongsberg.com

Table of contents

ABOUT THIS MANUAL 11
SIMRAD ME70 13
Important 14
System description 15
Key features 17
System diagram 18
System units 20
Display description 20
Processor Unit description 21
Transceiver Unit description 22
Power Supply Unit 23
Transducer description 24
Scope of supply 25
Basic items provided with a standard delivery 25
Additional required items 26
Additional optional items 30
General safety rules 33
Installation requirements 34
Supply power requirements 34
Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) requirements 34
Cables and wiring requirements 34
Compass deviation requirements 35
Noise sources 35
Dry docking requirements 36
Requirement for classification approval 36
Network security 37
Support information 38
PREPARATIONS 40
Installation summary 41
About installation drawings 43
Tools, equipment and consumables required for ME70 installation 43
Personnel qualifications 44
Installation principles 45
Sonar room requirements 49
Sonar room requirements 49
Environmental requirements 49
Requirement for watertight integrity 50

Size and access requirements 51
Requirements for insulation, heating and ventilation 52
Requirements for electrical installations, cables and communication 53
Requirements for bilge pump and decking 53
Where to install the transducer 55
Introduction to transducer location 55
Mount the transducer deep 55
Avoid protruding objects near the transducer 57
Keep the transducer far away from the propellers 57
Choose a transducer position far away from the bow thruster(s) 58
Summary and general recommendations 58
Acoustic noise 60
Introduction to the acoustic noise challenge 60
Contributing factors 60
Electrical self noise 62
Ambient noise 62
Fishing gear noise 63
Electrical self noise 63
Some means to reduce acoustic noise 63
Vessel coordinate system 65
INSTALLING THE TRANSDUCER 68
Transducer description 69
Transducer installation principles 72
Using a streamlined blister 72
Using a drop keel 74
Using a steel conduit to protect the transducer cables 74
Inclination angle 76
Cable protection in drop keels 76
Transducer installation summary 78
Designing, manufacturing and mounting the installation blister 80
Unpacking the transducer from its transport crate 82
Installing the mounting ring 84
Lifting the transducer up towards its mounting location 86
Installing the transducer cables 88
Installing the transducer into the mounting ring 90
Painting the transducer face 92
Determining the location and installation angles of the transducer 94
INSTALLING THE SYSTEM UNITS 96
Installing the display 97
Installing the Enix Processor Unit 98

Preparing the Transceiver Unit installation 100
Installing the Transceiver Unit 103
Connecting the Transceiver Unit to the ventilation system 105
Preparing the Power Supply Unit installation 106
Installing the Power Supply Unit 109
Installing the uninterruptible power supply (UPS) 111
CABLE LAYOUT AND INTERCONNECTIONS 113
Read this first 114
Cable plans 116
Topside cable plan 117
Sonar room cable plan 118
List of ME70 cables 119
IP addresses in the ME70 system 121
Installing the ME70 cables 122
Prerequisites for cable installation 122
Installing the ME70 topside cables 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables 125
Connecting AC mains and ground to the Power Supply Unit 127
Connecting DC power to the Transceiver Unit 128
Connecting the Ethernet cables between the Transceiver Unit and each Power Supply Unit 132
Connecting the transducer cables to the Transceiver Unit 134
Connecting the ME70 as a client to the K-Sync Synchronization system 139
Connectors 141
Processor Unit rear connectors (Enix 2680) 142
Ethernet switch connectors 144
Processor Unit serial adapter 145
Processor Unit serial adapter 145
RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires 147
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter 148
Setting up the Moxa CP114EL-I serial ports in Windows 7 150
Processor Unit graphic adapter 151
Cable drawings and specifications 153
AC power cable using IEC C13 inline socket 154
Ground cable 156
RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable (1000Base-t) 157
RS-232 serial line connection using three wires 158
RS-232 serial line connection using five wires 159
RS-422 serial line connection using five wires 160
RS-232 used as synchronization trigger (input or output) 161

RS-232 serial cable between ME70 and the ITI Transceiver Unit 162
K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input 163
About serial lines 165
Internal transceiver cables 168
TRXU Ethernet interface cables 169
TRXU Synchronization cables 171
TRXU Terminal blocks 172
TRXU Power connector panel 173
AC Mains to the Transceiver Unit 176
Basic cable requirements 178
Cable trays 178
Radio frequency interference 179
Physical protection of cables 179
Grounding of system cables 180
Cable connections and terminations 180
Cable identification 181
Cable glands and termination procedures 181
DIMENSIONAL SURVEYING AND ALIGNMENT 187
Quality assurance of ME70 data 188
Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors 190
Dimensional survey accuracy requirements 192
Vessel coordinate system 193
SETTING TO WORK 195
Setting to work summary 196
Inspecting the ME70 installation 198
Visual inspection of the display 198
Visual inspection of the Processor Unit 199
Visual inspection of the Transceiver Unit 201
Environmental inspection of the Transceiver Unit 202
Visual inspection of the Power Supply Unit 204
Inspecting the transducer installation 205
Verifying that all ME70 cables are properly connected 206
Powering up the ME70 for the first time 208
Powering up the ME70 208
Measuring the power supply output voltages in the Power Supply Unit 210
Measuring the power supply output voltages in the Transceiver Unit 212
Adjusting the output voltages from the power supply modules 216
Configuring the ME70 for operational use 219
Defining the installation parameters for the global positioning system (GPS) antenna 219

Defining the installation parameters for the motion reference unit (MRU) 221
Defining the installation parameters for the transducer 223
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices 225
About NMEA and standard datagram formats 226
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS) 228
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system 234
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU) 240
Changing the communication parameters for the motion reference unit (MRU) 241
Changing the internal delay for the motion reference unit (MRU) data 243
Setting up the ME70 in a synchronized system 244
Setting up the Ethernet data output 247
Checking the data transfer on an external interface line 248
Testing the ME70 operational functionality 251
Recording raw data 251
Testing the receiver channels with the BITE Matrix page 253
Testing the transmitter channels with the BITE Matrix page 255
Testing the receiver and transmitter channels with the BITE B-Scan page 257
Recording element data 259
Measuring noise in *Passive* mode 261
Measuring the time between each ping 262
Verifying long time stability in continuous operation 264
Creating a backup with the ME70 configuration and software installation 265
Creating a Processor Unit image on a USB flash drive using the Acronis True Image program 265
Creating a bootable USB flash drive using the Acronis True Image program 266
Restoring a Processor Unit image from a USB flash drive using the Acronis True Image program 267
Installation remarks 270
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS 271
Introduction to technical specifications 272
Performance specifications 272
Operational performance 272
Configuration settings 274
Interface specifications 276
Weight and outline dimensions 281

Power requirements 283
Environmental requirements 283
Compass safe distance 284
Display minimum technical requirements 285
DATAGRAM FORMATS 286
About NMEA and standard datagram formats 287
About the NMEA datagram formats 287
National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA) 287
NMEA sentence structure 288
Standard NMEA 0183 communication parameters 289
NMEA datagram formats 290
NMEA DBS datagram 290
NMEA DBT datagram 291
NMEA DPT datagram 292
NMEA GGA datagram 293
NMEA GLL datagram 294
NMEA HDG datagram 294
NMEA HDM datagram 295
NMEA HDT datagram 296
NMEA MWD datagram 296
NMEA MWV datagram 297
NMEA RMC datagram 297
NMEA VBW datagram 298
NMEA VHW datagram 299
NMEA VTG datagram 300
NMEA VWR datagram 301
NMEA ZDA datagram 302
Proprietary datagram formats 303
Simrad DBS datagram format 303
Simrad FS3300 Binary depth datagram format 304
Simrad GLL datagram format 305
Simrad HFB datagram format 305
Simrad MDS datagram format 306
Simrad MTW datagram format 308
Simrad PSIMP-D datagram format 308
Simrad PSIMP-F datagram format 310
Simrad TDS datagram format 311
Simrad TFI datagram format 312
Simrad TPC datagram format 313
Simrad TPP datagram format 313

Simrad TPT datagram format 314
Simrad TS2 datagram format 315
Simrad TTS datagram format 315
Third party datagram formats 317
Furuno CIF datagram 317
Kaijo VDVCD datagram format 320
Ryokosei RBY datagram format 321
Serpe BSC datagram format 322
DRAWING FILE 323
About the drawings in the drawing file 324
374454 Transceiver Unit dimensions 325
385609 Processor Unit dimensions 329
311237 Power Supply Unit dimensions 333
308337 Power Supply Unit mounting bracket 335
208463 Transducer dimensions 337
208461 Transducer mounting ring 339
326431 Transducer clamping ring 341

About this manual

The purpose of this manual is to present the descriptions and drawings required to install the Simrad ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder.

Target audience

The manual is intended for technical personnel; such as skilled shipyard workers, electricians, qualified engineers and naval architects. It is assumed that you understand the general principles of maritime electronic equipment. You must also be familiar with computer hardware, interface technology and installation of electronic and mechanical products.

Installation instructions

The instructions provided in this manual must be followed carefully to ensure optimal performance. As a guide, installation procedures are presented in the order they must be done.

The equipment described in this manual includes the complete system with relevant cabinets. Units provided locally by the customer, installation shipyard or local representative are not described.

Note

Kongsberg Maritime AS will accept no responsibility for any damage or injury to the system, vessel or personnel caused by equipment that has been incorrectly installed or maintained, or by drawings, instructions or procedures that have not been prepared by us.

Installation drawings

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures. The installation shipyard must design and manufacture relevant installation hardware to fit each individual hardware unit.

Note

If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the ME70 must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

The outline dimensions of the ME70 units are found in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual.

The source drawings (normally in AutoCad format) can be downloaded from our website.

- https://www.simrad.com

Registered trademarks

Observe the registered trademarks that apply.

Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Simrad®, SIMRAD® and the Simrad® logo are either registered trademarks, or trademarks of Kongsberg Maritime AS in Norway and other countries.

Simrad ME70

Topics

Important, page 14
System description, page 15
Key features, page 17
System diagram, page 18
System units, page 20
Scope of supply, page 25
General safety rules, page 33
Installation requirements, page 34
Network security, page 37
Support information, page 38

Important

The ME70 is an advanced product. As with most other advanced instruments, there are a few important things that you must know.

Before you power up the ME70

Before you power up the ME70, make sure that the transducer is submerged in water! If you are using a drop keel, make sure that you have sufficient water depth to lower it!

Caution

You must never set the ME70 to "ping" unless the transducer is submerged in water. The transducer may be damaged if it transmits in open air.

When the ME70 is not used

When you do not use the ME70, switch off the entire system. If you are using a drop keel, make sure that you retract it.

Note

You must NEVER switch off the ME70 by means of the on/off switch on the Processor Unit.

When you are docking your vessel

You must never power up the ME70 when the ship is in dry dock The transducer may be damaged if it transmits in open air. To prevent inadvertent use of the ME70, pull out the mains plug on the Processor Unit whenever your vessel is in dry dock. Additional precautionary measurers should be considered.

If something breaks down

If you believe that something has broken down, contact your local dealer. They will be able to assist. A list of all our dealers is provided on our website.

- https://www.simrad.com

If you are unable to contact a dealer, observe the support information in this publication.

Support information, page 38

When you wish to switch off the ME70

You must NEVER switch off the ME70 by means of the on/off switch on the Processor Unit. You must ALWAYS click the **Exit** button on the top bar.

Note

If you power down the ME70 by means of the on/off switch on the Processor Unit you may damage the software program and the interface settings used to communicate with external devices.

Rules for transducer handling

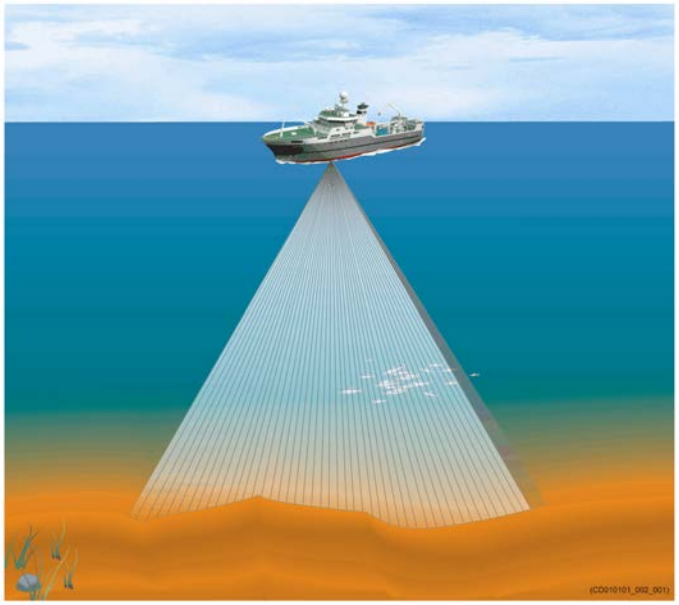
A transducer must always be handled as a delicate item. Wrongful actions may damage the transducer beyond repair. Observe these transducer handling rules:

- **Do not** activate the transducer when it is out of the water.
- **Do not** handle the transducer roughly, avoid impacts.
- **Do not** expose the transducer to direct sunlight or excessive heat.
- **Do not** use high pressure water, sand blasting, metal tools or strong solvents to clean the transducer face.
- **Do not** damage the outer protective skin on the transducer face.
- **Do not** lift the transducer by the cables.
- **Do not** step on the transducer cables.
- **Do not** damage the transducer cables, avoid sharp objects.

System description

The Simrad ME70 is a high resolution Multibeam scientific echo sounder with very low sidelobe levels. It is designed for collection of data from the water column. The ME70 combines the large and flexible sampling volume of the multibeam swath with the accuracy of the quantitative scientific echo sounder.

The ME70 was the world's first quantitative multibeam echo sounder for fishery research applications.



The ME70 is designed for fishery research applications. It operates in the frequency range of 70 to 120 kHz using 800 transmitting and receiving channels. By adding bathymetry functionality to the standard system, the ME70 also provides high resolution seabed mapping.

The ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder is designed for high operating flexibility. The system includes a wide fan of stabilized beams for fish behaviour studies, fish school characterization and other purposes. A sector of these beams can be set up as split beams providing data for single target analysis such as target strength measurements and target tracking. The sector of calibrated narrow split beams with low side lobe levels and short pulse lengths allow for accurate biomass estimation very close to bottom. The ability to adjust the athwartship centre angle of the fan allows you to use the system for studying fish close to ridges. The design also allows you to use all the beams over the full frequency range pointing in one direction for frequency comparison.

Within the bandwidth of the transducer, the limits for beam steering, and the minimum achievable beam opening, you can select the directions, frequencies, and opening angles for the beams. You can set up the system to fit your requirements, and it will provide you with a real-time display for quality control of the current data acquisition. The system configuration can be tailored to any requirements, allowing for choice of beamwidths as well as transmission modes.

Two systems are available to expand the utility value of the ME70 multibeam scientific echo sounder system:

- Bathymetric processor system for high resolution seabed mapping
- Element Data Logger for collection of high volume element data

The bathymetry option provided for the ME70 allows you to use the ME70 not only as a scientific multibeam echo sounder for fishery research applications, but also as a multibeam echo sounder for seabed mapping. Additional hardware items are added to the basic ME70 system to provide this functionality, and the *Seafloor Information System (SIS)* software is applied as user interface.

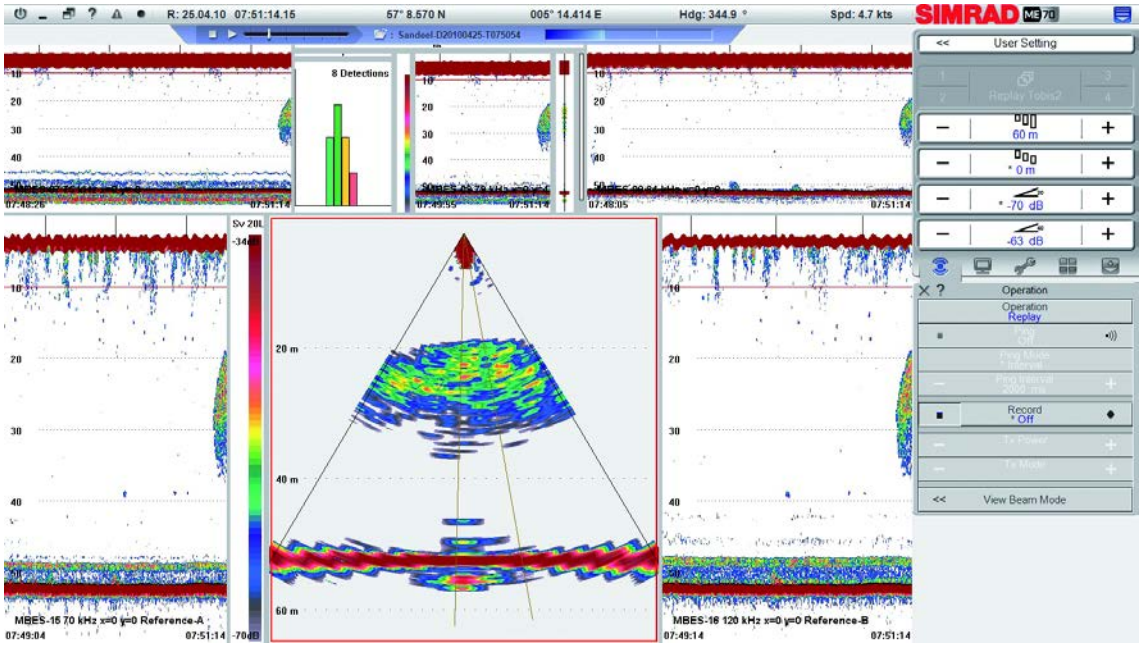
Related topics

System diagram, page 18

Key features

The Simrad ME70 is a high resolution Multibeam scientific echo sounder with very low sidelobe levels. It offers unique features for modern research vessels and environmental monitoring installations that require high quality scientific data.

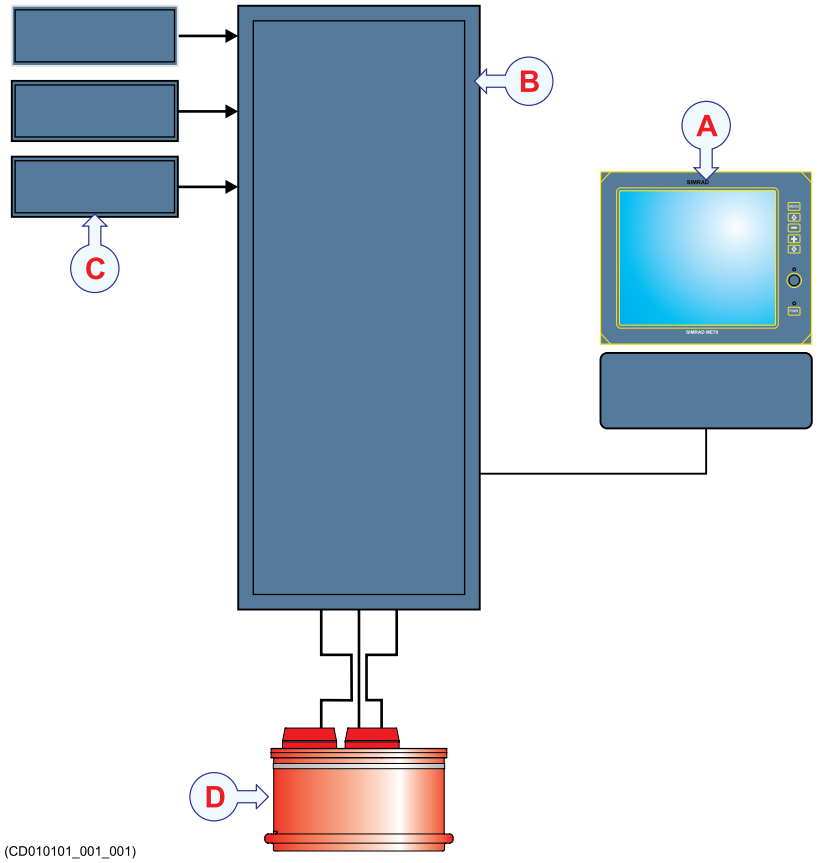
- Transceiver operation control
- Sensor input control
- Information display
- Raw data recording with network interface
- Replay of previously recorded data
- Low self noise
- Remote control
- Data subscription functionality
- Define and save your own user settings
- Remote control
- Easy operation with intuitive user interface
- Clear and easily comprehensive echo data
- 25 transceiver boards provide 800 individual channels



A typical screen capture is provided. The centre of the presentation offers the combined athwartship swath of beams. The presentation is flexible. Not only does it show you the individual beams, you can also see split beam information, such as fish size, from each individual beam.

System diagram

The system diagram identifies the main components of a basic ME70 system. Only the main connections between the units are shown. Detailed interface capabilities and power cables are not shown.



A *Processor Unit & Display*

B *Transceiver Unit*

C *Power Supply Unit (3)*

D *Transducer*

In this publication, the computer is referred to as the Processor Unit.

Unless otherwise specified in a contract, the display is not included in the standard delivery from Simrad. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

Related topics

System description, page 15

Display description, page 20

Processor Unit description, page 21

Transceiver Unit description, page 22
Power Supply Unit, page 23
Transducer description, page 24

Scope of supply

Basic items provided with a standard delivery, page 25
Additional required items, page 26
Additional optional items, page 30

System units

Topics

Display description, page 20

Processor Unit description, page 21

Transceiver Unit description, page 22

Power Supply Unit, page 23

Transducer description, page 24

Display description

A display is a required part of the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder. For best readability, the display must be located so that it is protected from glare, and with the correct height and angle.

Any commercial display can be used with the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder, provided that the display meets the minimum requirements.

Note

The display is not a standard part of the ME70 delivery. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

The chosen display must be designed for maritime use, and it must meet the minimum performance specifications. You must also make sure that the chosen display supports the video formats provided by the Processor Unit. Kongsberg Maritime may provide a suitable display.

Tip

The Processor Unit offers two video outputs. Two displays may therefore be used to see the ME70 presentations. You may place the two displays next to each other. You may also choose to place the second display at an other location on the vessel.

The presentation on the second display is controlled using the operating system features on the Processor Unit.

Related topics

System diagram, page 18

Installation

Installing the display, page 97

Technical specifications

Weight and outline dimensions, page 281

Power requirements, page 283

Environmental requirements, page 283

Compass safe distance, page 284

Display minimum technical requirements, page 285

Processor Unit description

The ME70 Processor Unit is a rugged and powerful computer. It is designed for long life in a demanding maritime environment. It contains the operational software, and offers the user interface that allows you to control the ME70. It also controls the interface to peripheral devices.

A dedicated maritime computer is provided with the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder. In this publication, the computer is referred to as the Processor Unit. It is set up with all necessary software. The Processor Unit is normally mounted on the bridge or in a scientific laboratory.

The Processor Unit is designed for rugged maritime use. It has been customized by Kongsberg Maritime. Except from the fans, it contains no moving parts. The computer is based on a commercial design, but the software and hardware has been specified by Kongsberg Maritime to suit the ME70 requirements.

The computer offers multiple USB ports for use with future software upgrades. These USB ports also allow you to export screen captures and recorded data from the ME70.

Note

The operating system has been modified to make the computer work with the ME70. These modifications include removal of all safety features provided by Microsoft®. The built-in firewall and all virus protection features have been removed. Any attempt to use the computer for any other purposes than ME70 operation, such as games, desktop applications and Internet connection, may result in serious damage to the software. Such damages are not covered by the warranty.

Related topics

System diagram, page 18

Installation

Installing the Enix Processor Unit, page 98

Technical specifications

Weight and outline dimensions, page 281

Power requirements, page 283

Environmental requirements, page 283

Compass safe distance, page 284

Transceiver Unit description

The ME70 transceiver is provided to transmit the acoustic energy into the water. To do this, the transceiver computes and generates the electric signals sent to the transducer to form a transmission - a 'ping'. After each transmission, it will receive the echoes from the targets in the water column and/or the seabed. These are filtered and amplified, and then converted to digital format.

The ME70 Transceiver Unit is housed in a 19 inch instrument rack. Easy access to the front and rear part of the rack is essential, as this allows for easy replacement of parts. In order to reduce the loss in the transducer cables, the Transceiver Unit is physically located as close as possible to the transducer.

The main components in the Transceiver Unit are:

- Three transceiver subracks with a total of 25 transceiver circuit boards
- One Ethernet switch

Related topics

System diagram, page 18

Installation

Preparing the Transceiver Unit installation, page 100

Installing the Transceiver Unit, page 103

Connecting the Transceiver Unit to the ventilation system, page 105

Technical specifications

Weight and outline dimensions, page 281

Power requirements, page 283

Environmental requirements, page 283

Compass safe distance, page 284

Power Supply Unit

Three Power Supply Units are provided with the ME70. Each unit provide operational voltages to a dedicated TRXU subrack in the Transceiver Unit.

The three Power Supply Units are mounted in the vicinity of the Transceiver Unit. The physical distance is limited by the length of the power cables between the units.

The power supplies are controlled from the Processor Unit. The connection is made using three Ethernet cables from the Ethernet switch in the Transceiver Unit.

The following output voltages are provided by the three power supply modules in each Power Supply Unit.

- +6 VDC (Approximately)
- +12 VDC (Approximately)
- +75 VDC (Approximately)

The power supplies inside each Power Supply Unit will be very warm during normal operation.

WARNING

The Power Supply Unit contains high voltages. Unless required for maintenance purposes, do not open the cabinet door while the ME70 is switched on.

Dedicated power cables connect the Power Supply Units to the Transceiver Unit. The cables are included in the ME70 delivery, and they are provided readily connected to the terminal blocks in the Power Supply Units. The cables must be run in steel conduits.

Note

The power cables can not be spliced. If the cables are too long, cut them down to a suitable length. If you wish to keep long cables, do not coil them.

Related topics

System diagram, page 18

Installation

Preparing the Power Supply Unit installation, page 106

Installing the Power Supply Unit, page 109

Technical specifications

Weight and outline dimensions, page 281

Power requirements, page 283

Environmental requirements, page 283

Compass safe distance, page 284

Transducer description

The Simrad ME70 transducer is a short cylindrical container with 800 transducer elements. The transducer elements are located at the "bottom" of the transducer. The transducer cables are provided as 25 individual cables in three bundles. Each cable is terminated in a large male connector.

The Simrad ME70 transducer face is plane, and consists of a ceramic-polymer composite matrix. The matching transformer for each transducer element is located inside the transducer. This allows for a low impedance connection to the Transceiver Unit. The transducer is connected to the rear side of the three TRXU subracks in the Transceiver Unit using 25 cables.

The maximum length of the transducer cables is 30 meters, while the minimum length is 15 meters. The transducer cables can not be spliced.

Note

The required length of the cables to fit each specific installation must be determined before the transducer is ordered.

If the transducer is installed in a drop keel, the transducer cables must be protected. Each cable must be fitted with a protective hose. The protective hose starts inside the transducer. Protection must be used along the entire length of the cables, and all the way up to where the cables penetrate the hull.

Note

The transducer - with the cabling - is a delicate item. Great care must be shown during all handling. Even minor damages to the transducer cable may cause water to penetrate both the cable and the transducer body. A physical blow to the transducer face may easily damage one or more elements.

Related topics

System diagram, page 18

Installation

Installing the transducer, page 68

Scope of supply

Topics

Basic items provided with a standard delivery, page 25

Additional required items, page 26

Additional optional items, page 30

Basic items provided with a standard delivery

To assemble a complete ME70 system, you will need a set of system units. The main units required are provided with the standard delivery. Other required units may be purchased from Kongsberg Maritime or obtained locally. Some units are optional.

When you unpack the parts provided with the ME70 delivery, verify that the following items are included.

Basic items

Item	Part number	In the box
Transceiver Unit	345559	Transceiver Unit Shock absorbers
Processor Unit	382921	Computer (Enix 2680) Power cable Software
Power Supply Unit	310209	Power Supply Unit Shock absorbers
Power Supply Unit	310209	Power Supply Unit Shock absorbers
Power Supply Unit	310209	Power Supply Unit Shock absorbers
Transducer	ME7-280316	Transducer

Note

The maximum length of the transducer cables is 30 meters, while the minimum length is 15 meters. The required length of the cables to fit each specific installation must be determined before the transducer is ordered. The transducer cables can not be spliced.

If the transducer is installed in a drop keel, the transducer cables must be protected. Each cable must be fitted with a protective hose. The protective hose starts inside the transducer. Protection must be used along the entire length of the cables, and all the way up to where the cables penetrate the hull. The protective is hose is fitted to the transducer cables during the production. For this reason, the length of the hose must be specified when you order the transducer.

Operational software

Operational software is provided on a suitable media. If the Processor Unit is purchased from Kongsberg Maritime, the operational software is installed on the Processor Unit, and ready for use.

End user documentation

End user documentation is provided on paper and/or digital formats. All documentation related to operation and installation can also be downloaded from our website.

- https://www.simrad.com/me70

Related topics

System description, page 15

System diagram, page 18

Additional required items

Additional items are available for the ME70. Some are required for ME70 operation. These items must be added to the ME70 for full operational functionality. The additional items can be provided by Kongsberg Maritime. You can order them along with the other basic ME70 items.You may also purchase them from your dealer or another local supplier.

Mounting ring

This circular transducer is designed to be mounted using clamping and mounting rings. The mounting ring is welded to the hole prepared for the transducer. Bolts through the clamping ring into the mounting ring will secure the transducer in place. A drawing is available for local manufacturing. The drawing (normally in AutoCad format) can be downloaded from our website.

A suitable mounting ring can be provided by Kongsberg Maritime.

Item	Part number	In the box
Mounting ring	599-208460	Mounting ring

Clamping ring

This circular transducer is designed to be mounted using clamping and mounting rings. The mounting ring is welded to the hole prepared for the transducer. Bolts through the clamping ring into the mounting ring will secure the transducer in place. A drawing is available for local manufacturing. The drawing (normally in AutoCad format) can be downloaded from our website.

A suitable clamping ring can be provided by Kongsberg Maritime.

Item	Part number	In the box
Clamping ring	325728	Clamping ring Mounting bolts Washers

Display

The display is not a standard part of the ME70 delivery. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

Any commercial display can be used with the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder, provided that the display meets the minimum requirements. The chosen display must be designed for maritime use, and it must meet the minimum performance specifications. You must also make sure that the chosen display supports the video formats provided by the Processor Unit.

We suggest that you purchase a large high-resolution display.

Kongsberg Maritime may provide a suitable display. Consult your local dealer or agent for more information.

Display	Part number	In the box
Hatteland JH19T14 19” 1280 x 1024	335513	Display Power cable Documentation
	339785	Mounting hardware
Isic DuraMON WS MD24 24” 1920 x 1080	383050	Display Power cable Documentation
	354265	Mounting bracket

Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

It is important to ensure continuous operation of the ME70 independent of varying quality of the vessel's mains supply. The use of uninterruptible power supplies is therefore required.

Uninterruptible power supply units are not included in the standard ME70 delivery. These items must be purchased locally.

Several commercial types are available. To choose the best power solution for your ME70 installation, consider environmental conditions, space available, the availability and duration of the batteries, and the power requirements of the ME70.

Two uninterruptible power supply (UPS) systems are normally required:

- One UPS is required to power the bridge/control room equipment.
- One UPS is required to power the sonar room equipment.

The minimum specifications for the uninterruptible power supply are:

- **Input voltage**: The input voltage must fit vessel supply voltage
- **Output voltage**: 230 VAC, 50 Hz
- **Output power**:
  - Processor Unit and display: 1000 W
  - Transceiver Unit: 500 W
  - Power Supply Unit: 800 W (Each)
- **Output form**: The output AC voltage must be a sine wave

Speed log

In order to operate correctly, the ME70 requires input from a speed log.

Note

Without the input from a speed log, the ME70 will neither be able to present correct navigational information, nor compensate for vessel movements. This lack of compensation will prevent the ME70 from providing correct echo information.

In most cases a suitable sensor is already installed on the vessel. A global positioning system (GPS) with a fitting output format can also be used.

The speed log interface requirements are:

- **Serial line**: Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats
- **Ethernet (LAN) line**: Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats

Course gyro

In order to operate correctly, the ME70 requires input from a course gyro. A course gyro is not a part of the ME70 delivery.

Note

Without the input from a course gyro, the ME70 will not be able to present correct navigational information.

In most cases a suitable course gyro is already installed on the vessel. A global positioning system (GPS) with a fitting output format can also be used.

The course gyro interface requirements are:

- **Serial line**: Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats
- **Ethernet (LAN) line**: Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats

Motion Reference Unit (MRU)

In order to operate correctly, the ME70 requires input from a motion reference unit (MRU).

Note

Without the input from a motion reference sensor, the ME70 will not be able to compensate for the vessel movements. This lack of compensation will prevent the ME70 from providing correct echo information.

The ME70 has been designed to match the motion reference unit (MRU) sensors manufactured by Kongsberg Seatex. Descriptions of all available types are provided on their website.

- https://www.km.kongsberg.com/seatex

Item	Part number	In the box
Seatex MRU5 Motion Reference Unit (MRU)	374206	Motion Reference Unit (MRU) Software Documentation Mounting hardware

For the motion sensor unit (MRU) to communicate with the ME70, it must support the following interface format:

- **Simrad TSS1**

  Simrad Sounder/TSS1 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for heave, roll and pitch compensation. When you select this protocol, the number of sensor variables is fixed, and there is no token associated with it.

- **Kongsberg EM Attitude 1000**

  The EM Attitude 1000 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for use with digital motion sensors. It holds roll, pitch, heave and heading information. The datagram contains a 10-bytes long message. In many new designs, this datagram format has been replaced with EM Attitude 3000 format.

- **Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000**

The EM Attitude 3000 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for use with digital motion sensors. It holds roll, pitch, heave and heading information. The datagram contains a 10-bytes long message.

Kongsberg Maritime may provide a suitable motion reference unit. Consult your local dealer or agent for more information.

Sound speed sensor

In order to operate correctly, the ME70 requires input from a sound speed sensor. Without this information, the ME70 will not be able to compensate for changes in the sound speed due to variations in the water temperature. This lack of compensation may prevent the ME70 from providing correct echo information.

The sound speed sensor is normally positioned close to the transducer. The sensor is normally a permanent installation, but many vessels have designed a method to lower and hoist the sensor. The sound speed sensor connects to the Processor Unit. In the ME70 user interface, the sound speed sensor if often referred to as a *probe*.

Suitable sound speed sensors are commercially available.

Item	Part number	In the box
Valeport MiniSVS Sound speed sensor	303021	Sound speed sensor Software Documentation

Related topics

System description, page 15

System diagram, page 18

Additional optional items

Additional items are available for the ME70. Some are optional for ME70 operation. These items may for example simplify the installation, or increase the functionality. You can order them along with the other basic ME70 items. You may also purchase them from your dealer or another local supplier.

Secondary display

The Processor Unit offers two video outputs. Two displays may therefore be used to see the ME70 presentations. The display is not a standard part of the ME70 delivery. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

You may place the two displays next to each other. You may also choose to place the second display at an other location on the vessel. The presentation on the second display is controlled using the operating system features on the Processor Unit.

Any commercial display can be used with the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder, provided that the display meets the minimum requirements. The chosen display must be designed for maritime use, and it must meet the minimum performance specifications.

You must also make sure that the chosen display supports the video formats provided by the Processor Unit.

Kongsberg Maritime may provide a suitable display. Consult your local dealer or agent for more information.

Display	Part number	In the box
Hatteland JH19T14 19” 1280 x 1024	335513	Display Power cable Documentation
	339785	Mounting hardware
Isic DuraMON WS MD24 24” 1920 x 1080	383050	Display Power cable Documentation
	354265	Mounting bracket

Global Positioning System (GPS)

A Global Positioning System (GPS) may be connected to the ME70 to establish the vessel's position and provide cursor and marker latitude and longitude. In addition to navigational data, the GPS may also be used for the input of speed log information.

Note

Most positioning systems can provide the current present course information, but this data is generally too inconsistent to provide a stable ME70 presentation.

Serial line splitter

On large installations with many hydrographic systems, these systems often require the same navigational information from a single sensor. As an example, information such as the current depth or speed is provided as datagrams on a serial line format. One or more serial line splitters are then used to distribute the information from a single sensor to several different recipients.

Item	Part number	In the box
Serial line splitter	337775	Serial line splitter (Øverland UPC-5000P) The Øverland UPC-5000P serial line splitter offers two separate inputs and fifteen RS-232 and RS-422 outputs.
Serial line splitter	317156	Serial line splitter (Øverland UPC-3005) The Øverland UPC-3005 serial line splitter offers one input and eight RS-232 and RS-422 outputs.

Mounting frame for the Power Supply Units

To make installation easier, the three power cabinets can be mounted on a common frame. The frame must be ordered separately. It is mounted vertically on the bulkhead by means of shock absorbers.

Item	Part number	In the box
Mounting frame	308337	Mounting frame

Related topics

System description, page 15

System diagram, page 18

General safety rules

The following safety precautions must be followed at all times during installation and maintenance work.

WARNING

The ME70 operates on 115 and/or 230 VAC 50/60 Hz. This voltage is lethal! You must never work alone on high-voltage equipment!

This equipment must only be serviced by qualified personnel familiar with the construction and the operation of the ME70, as well as the potential hazards involved. Failure to observe this precaution could result in bodily injury.

1 You must always switch off all power before installation or maintenance work on the ME70 system.

   Use the main circuit breaker, and label the breaker with a warning sign that informs others that maintenance or installation work is in progress on the system.

2 Do not open racks or cabinet doors while sailing in rough seas.

   Doors and/or cabinet parts may suddenly swing open and cause damage or injury.

3 For safety reasons, two persons must always be present during troubleshooting with power ON.

4 Read and understand the applicable first aid instructions related to electric shock.

5 Whenever maintenance is in progress, it is essential that a first aid kit is available, and that all personnel are familiar with the first aid instructions for electrical shock.

6 The various parts of the system may be heavy.

   Make sure that the appropriate tools and certified lifting equipment are available. The personnel must be trained in relevant installation and maintenance work.

Installation requirements

Topics

Supply power requirements, page 34

Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) requirements, page 34

Cables and wiring requirements, page 34

Compass deviation requirements, page 35

Noise sources, page 35

Dry docking requirements, page 36

Requirement for classification approval, page 36

Supply power requirements

Observe the general requirements related to the supply power.

The supply voltage to the ME70 must be kept within ±10% of the installation's nominal voltage. Maximum transient voltage variations on the main switchboard's bus-bars are not to exceed -15% to +20% of the nominal voltage (except under fault conditions).

Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) requirements

Observe these requirements related to the Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS).

We recommend that the ME70 system is powered using an Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) with sine wave output.

The Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) must have the capacity to independently maintain power to the ME70 for a minimum of 10 minutes. This ensures that the ME70 can be turned off in a controlled manner in the event of a power failure.

Cables and wiring requirements

Correct wiring is crucial for the operational performance of the ME70.

All cables running between system cabinets located in different rooms and/or on different decks must be supported and protected along their entire lengths using conduits and/or cable trays. Note that the cables must not be installed in the vicinity of high-power supplies and cables, antenna cables or other possible sources of interference.

All permanently installed cables associated with the system must be supported and protected along their entire lengths using conduits and/or cable trays.

All transducer cables must be run in steel conduits.

For more detailed information about cables and wiring, refer to the basic cable requirements.

Note

Given the wide variety of ship types, your wiring method must be appropriate to the particular conditions encountered during your individual installation.

Related topics

Basic cable requirements, page 178

Compass deviation requirements

ME70 units that are installed on the bridge may have an effect on the compass.

Once the installation is complete, the vessel must be swung with the ME70 in both operative and inoperative modes. The shipowner and captain are responsible for updating the compass deviation table accordingly with regard to the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority.

Noise sources

The operational performance of the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder depends on the noise conditions. It is essential that the noise signature is as low as possible.

The vessel's hull, rudder(s) and propeller(s) must be thoroughly inspected in dry dock prior to installation.

Roughness below the water-line deformities in the shell plating and protruding obstacles can create underwater noise. These sources of turbulence must be smoothed or removed as best as possible.

Note

It is especially important that the propeller(s) are not pitted or damaged.

Related topics

Acoustic noise, page 60

Dry docking requirements

Whenever one or more transducers are mounted under the vessel's hull, special considerations must be made prior to dry docking.

Make sure that ample clearance is provided under the transducer when you are placing the vessel in dry dock.

Do not place supporting blocks or structures in the vicinity of the transducer.

The location of the transducer must be noted on the vessel's docking plan for future reference.

Prior to dry docking, power down the ME70. Disengage the circuit breaker if necessary. Label the Processor Unit and/or the circuit breaker clearly to prevent anyone from powering up the ME70 accidentally.

Requirement for classification approval

Classification approval is required for the ME70 installation.

The ME70 transducer installation must be approved by DNV GL or another national classification society. The shipowner and shipyard performing the installation are responsible for obtaining the classification approval.

Network security

If a ME70 system is connected to a local area network, data security is important.

Equipment manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime are frequently connected to the vessel's local area network (LAN). When you connect a computer to a local area network you will always expose the data on that computer. All other computers connected to the same network may be able to access your data. Several threats may immediately occur:

- Remote computers can read the data.
- Remote computers can change the data.
- Remote computers can change the behaviour of the computer, for example by installing unwanted software.

Usually, two parameters are used to define the threat level:

1 The likelihood that any remote connection will do any of the above.

2 The damage done if a remote connection succeeds doing this.

Kongsberg Maritime has no information regarding the complete system installation on any vessel. Systems provided by Kongsberg Maritime are regarded as stand-alone offline systems. They are stand-alone even though they may be connected to a network for sensor interfaces and/or data distribution.

Note

No network safety applications are installed on any Kongsberg Maritime computers. The computers are thus not protected against viruses, malware or unintentional access from external users.

Securing the ME70 system itself has no meaning unless there is a policy in place that secures all computers in the network. This policy must include physical access by trained and trusted users. The customer/end user of the ME70 system will always be in charge of defining and implementing a security policy, and providing the relevant network security applications.

Note

Kongsberg Maritime will not accept any responsibility for errors and/or damages caused by unauthorized use or access to the ME70.

Support information

If you need technical support for your Simrad ME70 you must contact your local dealer, or one of our support departments. A list of all our offices and dealers is provided on our website. You can also contact our main support office in Norway.

Norway (Main office)

- **Company name**: Kongsberg Maritime AS / Simrad
- **Address**: Strandpromenaden 50, 3190 Horten, Norway
- **Telephone**: +47 33 03 40 00
- **Telefax**: +47 33 04 29 87
- **Website**: https://www.simrad.no
- **E-mail address**: simrad.support@simrad.com

Spain

- **Company name**: Simrad Spain S.L.U
- **Address**: Partida Atalayes 20, 03570 Villajoyosa, Spain
- **Telephone**: +34 966 810 149
- **Telefax**: +34 966 852 304
- **Website**: http://www.simrad.es
- **E-mail address**: simrad.spain@simrad.com

France

- **Company name**: Simrad France
- **Address**: 5 rue de Men Meur, 29730 Guilvinec, France
- **Telephone**: +33 298 582 388
- **Telefax**: +33 298 582 388
- **Website**: http://www.simrad.fr
- **E-mail address**: simrad.france@simrad.com

USA

- **Company name**: Kongsberg Underwater Technology Inc / Simrad Fisheries
- **Address**: 19210 33rd Ave W, Lynnwood, WA 98036, USA
- **Telephone**: +1 425 712 1136
- **Telefax**: +1 425 712 1193
- **Website**: https://www.simrad.com
- **E-mail address**: fish.usa.support@simrad.com

Malaysia

- **Company name**: Kongsberg Maritime Malaysia Sdn. Bhd
- **Address**: Unit 27-5 Signature Offices, The Boulevard, Mid Valley City, Lingkaran Syed Putra, 59200 Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia
- **Telephone**: +65 6411 7488
- **Telefax**: +60 3 2201 3359
- **Website**: https://www.simrad.com
- **E-mail address**: simrad.asia@simrad.com

Korea

- **Company name**: Kongsberg Maritime Korea Ltd
- **Address**: #1101-Harbor Tower, 113-1, Nampodong 6-Ga, Jung-Gu, Busan 600-046 Korea
- **Telephone**: +82-51-242-9933
- **Telefax**: +82-51-242-9934
- **Website**: https://www.simrad.com
- **E-mail address**: simrad.korea@simrad.com

China

- **Company name**: Kongsberg Maritime China Ltd
- **Address**: 555 Chuanqiao Road, China (Shanghai) Pilot Free Trade Zone, 201206, China
- **Telephone**: +86-21-3127-9888
- **Telefax**: +86-21-3127-9555
- **Website**: https://www.simrad.com
- **E-mail address**: simrad.china@simrad.com

Preparations

Topics

Installation summary, page 41

About installation drawings, page 43

Tools, equipment and consumables required for ME70 installation, page 43

Personnel qualifications, page 44

Installation principles, page 45

Sonar room requirements, page 49

Where to install the transducer, page 55

Acoustic noise, page 60

Vessel coordinate system, page 65

Installation summary

Installation of the ME70 is a demanding task that requires careful preparations, a number of specific procedures, wiring and required system settings.

Context

An overall installation procedure is provided below. The procedure does not describe any detailed tasks, but refers to the relevant procedures in this manual.

Note

In order to obtain maximum safety and ME70 performance, it is very important that the installation procedures in this manual are complied to. You must do the tasks in the order they are described.

The vessel owner must make sure that the installation shipyard holds the applicable competence to perform the installation, and that the applicable maritime authorities are available to verify and certify the installation.

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures. If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the ME70 must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Whenever required, the installation shipyard must also have the transducer installation approved by the applicable maritime authorities.

Procedure

1 Prepare the sonar room to meet the installation requirements.

Installation principles, page 45

Sonar room requirements, page 49

2 Determine the physical location of the transducer.

Necessary considerations must be taken to avoid acoustic and electric disturbances.

Installation principles, page 45

Where to install the transducer, page 55

Acoustic noise, page 60

3 Install the transducer.

The transducer will penetrate the hull. For this reason, this is a crucial part of the installation.

Installing the transducer, page 68

4 Install the ME70 system units.

Note that some ME70 system units may be commercial. Unless ordered specifically these are not included in the delivery, and must be purchased locally.

Installing the system units, page 96

5 Do a dimensional survey to determine the necessary position and angle measurements of the transducer and the relevant sensors.

The ME70 has been designed for target strength measurements of objects in the water column, as well as bathymetric swath mapping. In order to obtain precision data that are both detailed and correct, it is necessary to align the transducer, measure the location and offset of each sensor in relation to the vessel's coordinate system, and calibrate the complete ME70 prior to use.

Modest accuracy requirements apply when your ME70 system is only used to investigate objects in the water column.

Dimensional surveying and alignment, page 187

6 Install the cables between the ME70 system units.

Observe the relevant cable plan, procedures, as well as the general requirements for cabling.

Cable layout and interconnections, page 113

7 Install the cables between the ME70 and the relevant peripheral devices.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the relevant cable plan, procedures, as well as the general requirements for cabling. For more information, refer to the end user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Cable layout and interconnections, page 113

8 Power up the ME70 for the first time, and set it to work.

Note

In order to power up of the ME70 in a safe and correct manner, the relevant procedures must be complied to!

Setting to work, page 195

9 Do a complete ME70 system test.

The tests are described in *Setting to work* chapter in this manual. They are also provided in the *Harbour Acceptance Test* and the *Sea Acceptance Test* documents.

Setting to work, page 195

Further requirements

Fill in and sign the *Installation Remarks* form, and send it to Simrad's support department as specified on the form.

About installation drawings

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures.

Note

If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the ME70 must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Kongsberg Maritime offers free advice for installation planning. Proposed arrangements may be sent for commentary or suggestions. The following drawings should be submitted should assistance be requested:

- General arrangement
- Body plan and drawings of the relevant compartment
- Lines plan

Relevant outline dimensions and production drawings can be download from our website. Most documents are available in PDF and/or AutoCad (DWG) formats.

- https://www.simrad.com

Tools, equipment and consumables required for ME70 installation

In order to do the ME70 installation, all necessary tools and equipment for mechanical work, cabinet installation and electrical wiring must be available.

It is not practical to provide a detailed list of all necessary tools and equipment. You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. However, you must make sure that the following specialized tools are available.

- All necessary tools and consumables required for welding
- All necessary tools and consumables required for physical installation of units, cabinets and racks
- All necessary tools and consumables required for electrical installations

Note

Whenever specific consumables or special tools or test instruments are required, these are identified in the relevant procedure(s).

Personnel qualifications

The installation of the ME70 is a demanding task. It is very important that the personnel involved in the installation tasks are competent and experienced craftsmen.

As a minimum, the following certified craftsmen must be available.

- Naval architects
- Welders
- Electricians
- Project manager

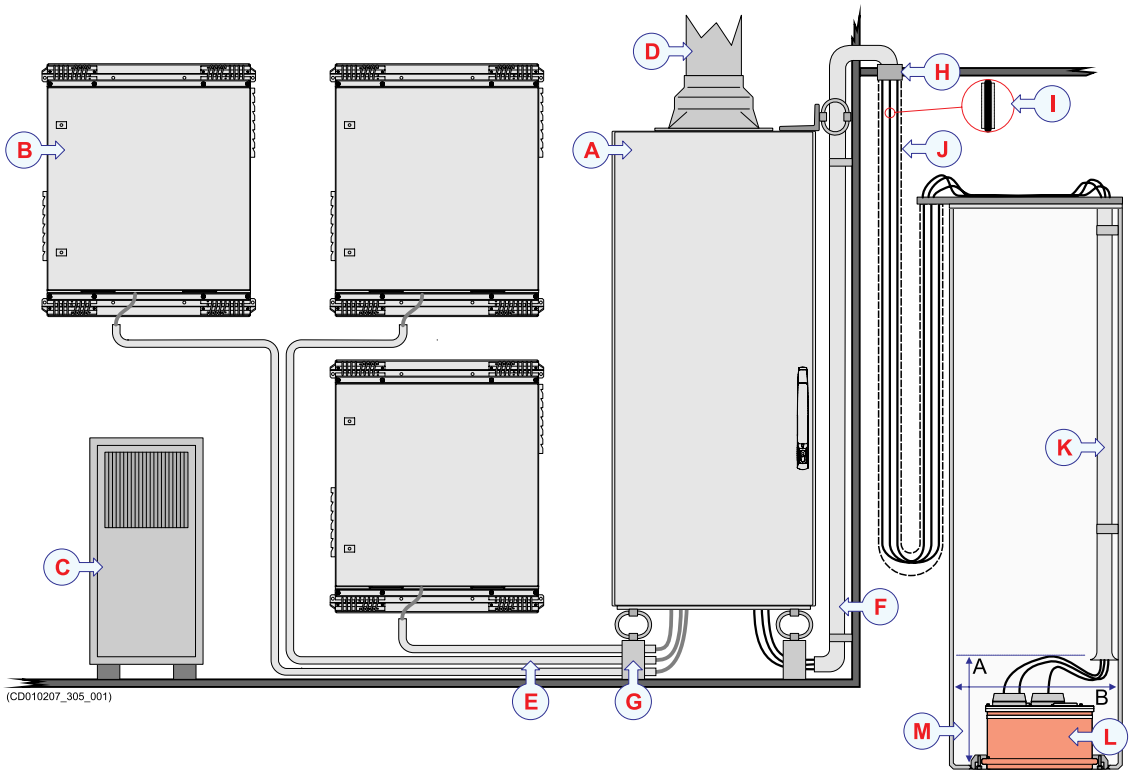
Note

The quality of the welding is critical to the safety of the vessel. Welding must only be done by a certified welder.

If applicable, the final installation welds must be approved by the vessel's national registry, the corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Observe the relevant rules and regulations related to welding.

Installation principles

Basic installation principles apply for the ME70 units. A drop keel is a superior platform for the ME70 transducer. The other main units are installed in a "sonar room". The Processor Unit with its display are installed "topside", for example on the bridge, in a laboratory or in an operator room.



A Transceiver Unit

The ME70 Transceiver Unit is housed in a 19 inch instrument rack. Easy access to the front and rear part of the rack is essential, as this allows for easy replacement of parts. In order to reduce the loss in the transducer cables, the Transceiver Unit is physically located as close as possible to the transducer.

The Transceiver Unit is designed to be installed next to a bulkhead. The cabinet is fitted with shock absorbers at the bottom, and on the side.

The top shock absorbers are by default located on the left side of the cabinet. If required, they may be moved to the other side. If you do this, you may also wish to move the hinges on the cabinet doors. These are also by default located on the left side, but are easily moved to the right side.

Preparing the Transceiver Unit installation, page 100

Installing the Transceiver Unit, page 103

Connecting the Transceiver Unit to the ventilation system, page 105

B Power Supply Unit

Preparing the Power Supply Unit installation, page 106

Installing the Power Supply Unit, page 109

C Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

It is important to ensure continuous operation of the ME70 independent of varying quality of the vessel's mains supply.

The Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) must have the capacity to independently maintain power to the ME70 for a minimum of 10 minutes. This ensures that the ME70 can be turned off in a controlled manner in the event of a power failure.

The uninterruptible power supply is not a part of the ME70 delivery. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

Installing the uninterruptible power supply (UPS), page 111

D During normal operation, the Transceiver Unit produces a lot of heat. The sonar room must be fitted with a proper ventilation system. In order to ensure proper operating temperature, the Transceiver Unit must be physically connected to the ventilation system.

The top of the Transceiver Unit cabinet is fitted with a dedicated adapter. A suitable ventilation duct must be connected to this adapter to allow the ventilation system to suck heated air out of the cabinet. The ventilation adapter will also prevent dust and other particles from falling into the Transceiver Unit cabinet.

Note

The connection to the ventilation system must be done in such a way that the heated air from the Transceiver Unit is sucked up and sent out by sonar room.

Connecting the Transceiver Unit to the ventilation system, page 105

E The power cables from the three Power Supply Unit to the Transceiver Unit must be run in steel conduits. These conduits serve the following purposes:

- Noise and interference protection
- Physical protection

The minimum internal diameter of the steel conduits is 5 cm. The maximum length of unprotected cable is 1 meter in each end of the conduit. For this reason, separate conduits for each Power Supply Unit is required.

Preparing the Power Supply Unit installation, page 106

Installing the Power Supply Unit, page 109

F Steel conduit

Unless the sonar room is located next to the drop keel, we recommend that the transducer cables are run in a steel conduit for the entire distance. The transducer cables may be run in a steel conduit inside the sonar room.

Note

The transducer cables must never be installed close to high voltage power cables. Keep safe distance from electric motors, generators or other devices or systems that may cause noise.

G All cables enter the Transceiver Unit through the bottom of the cabinet. Use U shaped steel profiles to add extra height. This allows room under the Transceiver Unit for transducer and interconnection cables. If necessary, you can use the space below the Transceiver Unit to install a cable tray for the transducer cables.

H Watertight seal

I If the transducer is installed in a drop keel, the transducer cables must be protected. Each cable must be fitted with a protective hose. The protective hose starts inside the transducer. Protection must be used along the entire length of the cables, and all the way up to where the cables penetrate the hull.

The protective is hose is fitted to the transducer cables during the production. For this reason, the length of the hose must be specified when you order the transducer.

Installing the transducer, page 68

J The cables must be permitted to move freely when the drop keel is lowered and hoisted. It is important to avoid sharp edges or protruding elements, as these may cause damage to the cables. Observe the limitations for the cable minimum bending radius. Any damage to a cable may cause water ingression. Water follows the cable cores into the transducer, and causes damage that can not be repaired. Wherever the cables are unprotected outside the drop keel, use a flexible conduit for protection.

K Steel conduit

L At the bottom of the drop keel, the ME70 can be installed with the transducer face flushed with the horizontal plating. The mounting ring is welded to the hole prepared for the transducer. Bolts through the clamping ring into the mounting ring will secure the transducer in place.

The installation of the transducer must be done with the correct inclination angle.

Installing the transducer, page 68

Ideally, the transducer face should be mounted in parallel with the sea surface when the vessel is in normal trim, as this will provide the most accurate echo information. However, it is also very important that the water flow over the transducer face is laminar. In order to ensure laminar flow, the transducer face must be tilted slightly upwards in relation to the water flow. This allows the flowing water to meet the face directly, and reduces laminar noise.

M Make sure that the drop keel is large enough to house the ME70 transducer as well as other hydroacoustic devices.

A: Minimum 600 mm is required for the ME70 transducer.

B: Adjust this distance to make room for other transducers and hydroacoustic devices.

Installing the transducer, page 68

Sonar room requirements

Topics

Sonar room requirements, page 49
Environmental requirements, page 49
Requirement for watertight integrity, page 50
Size and access requirements, page 51
Requirements for insulation, heating and ventilation, page 52
Requirements for electrical installations, cables and communication, page 53
Requirements for bilge pump and decking, page 53

Sonar room requirements

Minimum requirements are provided to obtain suitable working conditions for ME70 installation, use and maintenance.

The *sonar room* is the compartment in which the Transceiver Unit and the three Power Supply Units are installed.

Note

It is strongly recommended to use a dedicated compartment to house these units. They must also be installed relatively close to each other due to the limited length of the cables.

Related topics

Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Sonar room requirements, page 49

Environmental requirements

The ME70 units must be installed in a dry and dust-free environment. The units are not fully protected against humidity, dust or water.

It is important that the sonar room is kept dry. The ME70 units must not be exposed to excessive temperatures, moisture or humidity. Such conditions can cause corrosive attacks and subsequent failures to the electronic circuitry. Visit the sonar room at regular intervals to check temperature and humidity, and take the necessary actions if the environmental conditions are poor.

Observe the environmental specifications related to the ME70 units.

IP protection

The solid particle and liquid ingress protection conform to the following IP Codes.

- Transceiver Unit: IP20
- Power Supply Unit: IP32

IP code **20** means:

- Protection against medium size foreign bodies (larger than 12 mm in diameter).
- No special protection against water.

IP code **32** means:

- Protection against medium size foreign bodies (larger than 2.5 mm in diameter).
- Protection against water dripping off vertically (water drops falling at any angle up to 15 degrees with the vertical must not have any harmful effects).

  The IP Code, International Protection Marking, IEC standard 60529, sometimes interpreted as Ingress Protection Marking, classifies and rates the degree of protection provided against intrusion (body parts such as hands and fingers), dust, accidental contact, and water by mechanical casings and electrical enclosures. It is published by the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC). The equivalent British standard is EN 60529.

  The standard aims to provide users more detailed information than vague marketing terms such as waterproof. The digits (characteristic numerals) indicate conformity with the conditions summarized in the tables below. Where there is no data available to specify a protection rating with regard to one of the criteria, the digit is replaced with the letter X. The digit 0 is used where no protection is provided.

  https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IP_Code (October 2016)

Related topics

Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Sonar room requirements, page 49

Requirement for watertight integrity

The size, location and design of the sonar room must fulfil all the requirements to the vessel's watertight integrity.

In the event of a major leak in the sonar room, it must be possible to close all watertight hatches and/or doors to the sonar room to maintain the vessel stability and safety.

The physical size of the sonar room must be limited, so that in the event of a major leak, the flooding of the sonar room will not induce instability, or cause the vessel to capsize or sink.

Ensure that all watertight decks and bulkheads are inspected periodically to verify that there are no unprotected openings or improper penetrations that will allow progressive

flooding from the sonar room, and that the watertight doors and hatches are in place and in working order.

Ensure bilge high level alarms are arranged to provide the earliest warnings of abnormal accumulation. The high level bilge alarms must be set as low as possible to the deck or bilge well and positioned along the centre area of the compartment or in a location at which the fluids will gravitate to first.

All cables leading in and out of the sonar room must be run in steel conduits. These steel conduits must reach up and above the freeboard deck.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Sonar room requirements, page 49

Size and access requirements

A well designed sonar room with a well fitted size and easy access reduces the risk of corrosion, and simplifies maintenance. This increases system reliability.

Note

The physical size of the sonar room must be limited, so that in the event of a major leak, the flooding of the room will not induce instability, or cause the vessel to capsize or sink.

The sonar room must be large enough to house all the system units. The room must provide enough space to allow efficient maintenance. You must be able to keep all the cabinet doors fully open without undue restriction to your movements.

1 The room must not be used for any other heavy machinery.

2 The room must not be unnecessarily obstructed by girders, pipes etc, which may cause installation problems or impede maintenance.

3 The room must be accessible under all conditions at sea or at a berth.

4 All doors or hatches must be designed so that the tools and equipment can be removed without being disassembled.

5 All cables leading in and out of the sonar room must be run in steel conduits. These steel conduits must reach up and above the freeboard deck.

Note

The physical distance between the Transceiver Unit and the transducer is limited by the length of the transducer cables. The physical distance between the Transceiver Unit and the three power supplies is limited by the length of the power cables.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Sonar room requirements, page 49

Requirements for insulation, heating and ventilation

The bulkheads in the sonar room must be insulated and provided with an interior wall to the deck. The room must be equipped with heater, and it must be connected to the vessel's ventilation system.

Insulation requirements

The insulation in the sonar room should be the minimum equivalent of 50 mm of rock-wool. Piping passing through the space prone to condensation must be properly insulated.

Heating requirements

Heating is an effective method for reducing humidity. The heater in the sonar room must dimensioned to maintain the equipment within its environmental tolerances. Typical heating power is minimum 1000 W. The heater must be installed close to the deck.

Ventilation requirements

The sonar room must be connected to the vessel's ventilation system to ensure a supply of cooling air. If a ventilation system is not available, install two 3” pipes from the sonar room to a suitable fresh air location on deck.

The fresh air should enter the room as close to the floor as possible, and should be extracted from as high as possible. A funnel shaped drip-collector must be mounted below the vent pipes to divert moisture to the bilge. On the main deck, the best ventilation is provided when the outlet pipe is at least four meters higher than the inlet pipe. To keep out sea water, rain and spray, the ventilation pipes must be fitted with goosenecks or an equivalent design.

Note

If the vessel is likely to operate in tropical conditions, a suitable air conditioning system must be installed. The air conditioning system must be able to provide an ambient temperature that does not exceed the maximum operating temperatures of the ME70 units that are installed in the room.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Sonar room requirements, page 49

Requirements for electrical installations, cables and communication

The electrical installations in the sonar room must meet minimum requirements to provide suitable lights and supply power.

Light requirements

The sonar room must be equipped with suitable lighting to simplify the installation and to aid future maintenance.

Communication requirements

The sonar room must be equipped with a telephone, an intercom system, or any other means of oral communication between the sonar room and the bridge and/or control room(s).

Power requirements

Each unit in the sonar room should be provided with a separate circuit breaker on the mains supply.

A minimum number of additional electrical outlets must be provided for other equipment.

Proper vessel ground must be provided.

Cabling requirements

The sonar room units are connected to other ME70 units located in different compartments on the vessel. The units may also be connected to peripheral devices. If these cables pass through hatches or areas where they may be damaged, they must be run in conduits. Minimum 2” conduit is recommended.

Make sure that all system cables are properly connected and secured, and installed with some slack. The slack is essential to withstand vibrations, and to facilitate future maintenance and replacements.

Related topics

Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Sonar room requirements, page 49

Requirements for bilge pump and decking

If the sonar room is located below the water line, it must be connected to the vessel's bilge pump system.

Bilge pump requirement

If it is not possible to connect the sonar room to the vessel's bilge pump system, a separate bilge pump for the compartment must be installed.

Decking requirement

Once the installation has been completed, the sonar room must be suitably decked without restricting access to the equipment and the cables.

Related topics

Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Sonar room requirements, page 49

Where to install the transducer

Topics

Introduction to transducer location, page 55

Mount the transducer deep, page 55

Avoid protruding objects near the transducer, page 57

Keep the transducer far away from the propellers, page 57

Choose a transducer position far away from the bow thruster(s), page 58

Summary and general recommendations, page 58

Introduction to transducer location

A single answer to the question "where to install the transducer" cannot be given.

The physical location of the transducer depends on the vessel's design and construction, how the hull is shaped, and how the water runs along the hull. There are however a number of important guidelines, and some of these are even conflicting.

Note

The information here must be considered as general advice. Each ME70 installation must be handled separately depending on the hull design and the other electrical and mechanical systems installed on the vessel.

Related topics

Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Where to install the transducer, page 55

Mount the transducer deep

In order to achieve the best possible ME70 performance, mount the transducer as deep as possible under the vessel’s hull.

There are several reasons for this recommendation.

Tip

The ME70 transducer is designed to be mounted inside a keel box or a streamlined blister under the vessel's hull. It can also be mounted using a suitable hole in the hull plating. Drop keels are often used on larger research vessels. A drop keel will frequently protrude as far as three meters below the hull. At that depth, the water is free of air bubbles up, even during very high sea states. At the bottom of the drop keel, the ME70 can be installed with the transducer face flushed with the horizontal plating.

Flow noise

Consider the situations when the vessel is unloaded, and pitching in heavy seas. The vessel is riding high, and the bow may even be lifted out of the water. This will cause a lot of air to follow the shape of the hull.

The upper water layers of the sea contain a myriad of small air bubbles created by the breaking waves. In heavy seas the upper 5 to 10 metres may be filled with air, and the highest concentrations will be near the surface. Air bubbles absorb and reflect the sound energy, and they may in worst cases block the sound transmission altogether.

Cavitation

Cavitation is the formation of small air bubbles close to the transducer face. The bubbles appear because the local pressure becomes negative during parts of the acoustic pressure cycles. The cavitation threshold increases with the hydrostatic pressure. The noise is made when the bubbles implode.

Transmitting in air

The transducer must never be lifted free of the water surface. If the transducer is activated when out of water it may be damaged beyond repair. Mounting the transducer at a deep position on the hull will in normally prevent this.

Slamming

Slamming happens if the vessel hull climbs out of the water in heavy seas. The force of the water when the hull falls down may push the transducer up, and may cause damage both to the transducer and to its mounting. This is especially important for low frequency transducers with large faces. The effect of slamming can be reduced by mounting the transducer as deep as possible on the hull.

Note

Kongsberg Maritime AS takes no responsibility for any damages to the transducer, the cable or the mounting arrangement, caused by slamming.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Where to install the transducer, page 55

Avoid protruding objects near the transducer

Objects protruding from the hull will generate turbulence and flow noise. This will reduce the ME70 performance.

Protruding objects may be zinc anodes, transducers or even the vessel's keel. Holes and pipe outlets are also important noise sources, as well as rough surfaces caused by bad welding. Even traces of sealing compound, sharp edges, bolts or empty bolt holes will create noise. All these protruding objects may act as resonant cavities amplifying the flow noise at certain frequencies.

Do not place a transducer in the vicinity of protruding objects, and especially not close behind them. Make sure that the surface of the transducer face, the hull plating and putty around the transducer is as even and smooth as possible. Mounting screws or bolts must not be extruding from the transducer, the installation hardware or the hull plating. If necessary, grind and polish all surfaces.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Where to install the transducer, page 55

Keep the transducer far away from the propellers

The propulsion propellers is the dominant noise source on most vessels. The noise is easily transmitted through the water. This noise may often reduce the overall performance of your ME70.

The transducer must be installed as far away from the propellers as possible. The best positions are therefore on the fore part of the hull. Positions outside the direct line of sight from the propellers are best.

On small vessels we recommend mounting the transducer on that side of the keel where the propeller blades move *upwards*. This is because the propeller cavitation is weakest on that side. The cavitation starts when the water flows in the same direction as the propeller blades. This is where the propeller blades move downwards.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Where to install the transducer, page 55

Choose a transducer position far away from the bow thruster(s)

Bow thruster propellers are extremely noisy. When you decide where to place the transducer, you must consider the noise created by most bow thrusters.

When in operation, the noise and cavitation bubbles created by the thruster may make your ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder useless, almost no matter where the transducer is installed. When the bow thrusters are *not* in operation, the tunnel creates turbulence. If your vessel is pitching, the tunnel may be filled with air or aerated water in the upper position and release this in the lower position.

In general, the transducer should therefore be placed well away from the bow thruster(s).

However, this is not an invariable rule. Certain thruster designs - combined with their physical locations on the hull - may still offer a suitable location for the transducer, even close to the thruster. If you are in doubt, consult a naval architect.

Related topics

Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Where to install the transducer, page 55

Summary and general recommendations

Some of the installation guidelines provided for transducer location may be conflicting. For this reason, each vessel must be treated individually in order to find the best compromise.

In general, the most important factor is to avoid air bubbles in front of the transducer face. For this reason, the recommended transducer location is normally in the fore part of the hull, well ahead of the noise created by the bow wave.

The maximum distance from the bow is normally equal to one third of the total water line length of the hull.

If the vessel hull has a bulbous bow, this may well be a good transducer location, but also in this case the flow pattern of the aerated water must be taken into consideration. The foremost part of the bulb is often a good location.

This applies to the vessel in normal trim and speed.

Important

The transducer must never be tilted backwards when the vessel is moving at normal speed.

Do not place a transducer in the vicinity of protruding objects, and especially not close behind them.

Make sure that the surface of the resulting installation is as smooth and streamlined as possible.

Related topics

Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Where to install the transducer, page 55

Acoustic noise

Topics

Introduction to the acoustic noise challenge, page 60

Contributing factors, page 60

Electrical self noise, page 62

Ambient noise, page 62

Fishing gear noise, page 63

Some means to reduce acoustic noise, page 63

Introduction to the acoustic noise challenge

As with any other hydroacoustic systems, the quality of the ME70 echo data and presentations are subject to unwanted acoustic noise. The echoes from any large and small target must be detected inside the noise.

It is important that we keep the noise level as low as possible. The is necessary to obtain long range and dependable interpretations of the echoes.

Even with the advanced noise filtering offered by the ME70, we must address the noise challenge. This is important during the planning and preparations for the ME70 installation.

Related topics

Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Acoustic noise, page 60

Contributing factors

Several factors are contributing to the performance of the hydroacoustic equipment used on board a vessel.

Factors contributing to the performance of the hydroacoustic equipment used on board a vessel are:

- The quality and properties of the transmitted signal
- The quality of the receiving system
- The operational settings made during operation
- The properties of the target(s)
- The signal-to-noise ratio

The majority of these factors can neither be controlled nor improved by means of installation methods or transducer locations. The quality and properties of the transmitting and receiving systems are key factors during our product development, while our end user documentation aims to help the user to make the right filter settings during operation. As for the target properties, there is nothing any of us can do with those.

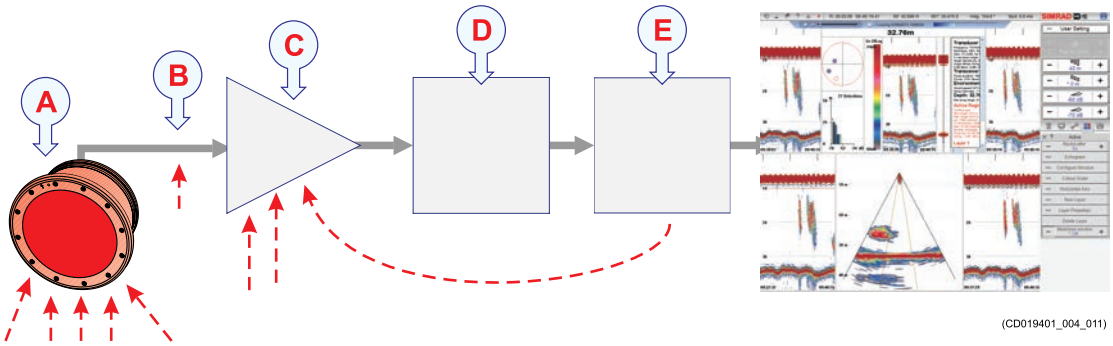
The *signal-to-noise ratio*, however, can be improved by making the correct choices during installation.

> Signal-to-noise ratio (often abbreviated SNR or S/N) is a measure used in science and engineering that compares the level of a desired signal to the level of background noise. It is defined as the ratio of signal power to the noise power, often expressed in decibels. A ratio higher than 1:1 (greater than 0 dB) indicates more signal than noise. While SNR is commonly quoted for electrical signals, it can be applied to any form of signal [...].
>
> *http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Signal_to_noise_ratio (September 2013)*

The *signal* is the echo that we want to know something about, while the *noise* is any unwanted signals or disturbances. The echo must be detected in the noise and therefore it is necessary to keep the noise level is as low as possible in order to obtain long range and dependable interpretation.

The noise that contributes to the signal to noise ratio may be divided into the following types of noise:

- Self noise
- Ambient noise
- Electrical noise
- Reverberation
- Fishing gear noise



A The transducer can pick up noise from

- Biological disturbances
- Interference
- Cavitation
- Propeller noise

- Flow noise
- Acoustic noise from other hydroacoustic systems

B The transducer cables are long, and may pick up electric noise from generators, pumps, cooling systems and other electric or electromechanical devices.

C The preamplifiers are very sensitive, and they can easily pick up electrical noise from internal and external power supplies. The preamplifiers are also vulnerable for analogue noise created by their own electronic circuitry. Digital noise created by the converter and processing circuitry can also create problems.

D Converters transform the analogue echoes to digital format.

E Signal processing circuitry can create digital noise.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Acoustic noise, page 60

Electrical self noise

Electrical or electronic self noise is picked up or generated in any other part of the equipment than the transducer.

Hum picked up by the transducer cable or picked up from the power supply is usually the most common source of electrical self noise. At higher frequencies – where rather wide bandwidths are necessary – the noise from components, transistors or other analogue electronic may be a limiting factor.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Acoustic noise, page 60

Ambient noise

Ambient noise is usually not a limiting factor for ME70 performance.

The ambient noise may be split up as follows:

- **Sea noise**: Air bubbles, seismic disturbances, waves, boundary turbulence, etc.
- **Biological noise**: Fish, mammals
- **Man made noise**: Other vessels, interference
- **Precipitation noise**: Heavy rain or hail

In some areas, where many vessels operate together, the engine and propeller noise from other vessels may be disturbing. Interference from hydroacoustic instruments located

in other vessels may also be a limiting factor. The sea noise depends on the weather conditions. In bad weather the sea noise can be quite high due to the waves.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Acoustic noise, page 60

Fishing gear noise

Whenever your fishing gear is in use, it will create noise.

A bottom trawl, for instance, is a considerable source of acoustic noise. Still, this noise from the fishing gear will seldom be a limiting factor for hull mounted sonars or echo sounders. However, for operation of a catch monitoring system or a trawl sonar, with the transducer placed on the trawl, the gear noise is one of the main contributors to the noise level.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Acoustic noise, page 60

Electrical self noise

Electrical or electronic self noise is picked up or generated in any other part of the equipment than the transducer.

Hum picked up by the transducer cable or picked up from the power supply is usually the most common source of electrical self noise. At higher frequencies – where rather wide bandwidths are necessary – the noise from components, transistors or other analogue electronic may be a limiting factor.

Related topics
Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Acoustic noise, page 60

Some means to reduce acoustic noise

Several factors are contributing to the performance of the hydroacoustic equipment used on board a vessel. Careful planning of the ME70 installation may reduce the acoustic noise.

Unfortunately, it is impossible to simply provide a number of specific procedures to reduce the noise.

An important factor is the physical location of the transducers. This depends on the vessel's design and construction, how the hull is shaped, and how the water runs along the hull. Other factors deal with other equipment mounted on board, and this will also be vessel dependant. At moderate ship speeds the machinery noise is usually dominant. At medium speeds the flow noise increases more rapidly and takes over, while at higher speed the propeller noise will be the main contributor.

Note

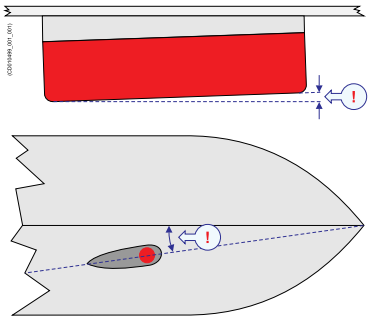
The information here must be considered as general advice. Each ME70 installation must be handled separately depending on the hull design and the other electrical and mechanical systems installed on the vessel.

Reducing flow noise

- The shape of the transducer (or dome around it) must be as streamlined as possible.
- The hull plating in front of the transducer must be as smooth as possible.

  Important

  Be especially aware of bilge keels and zinc alloy anodes. The keel must be rounded off without sharp edges. Neither extruding objects nor abrupt transitions must be present.



- The transducer must be mounted with a small inclination angle (approximately 2 degrees).

Reducing machinery noise

- The transducer must be installed as far away from the engine room as possible.
- The main engine and relevant auxiliary engines and equipment must be fixed to rigid foundations to avoid vibrations.
- Any hull structure that may vibrate should be damped or coated to reduce the vibrations.

The use of shock absorbers or floating rafts may sometimes reduce this noise. The structure-borne noise may be reduced by isolation, for example by providing vibration clamping between the transducer and the hull structure.

Reducing propeller noise

- The transducer must be installed as far away from the propellers as possible.
- Sufficient clearance between the propellers and the hull, the rudder and the keel must be provided.
- Place the zinc alloy anodes in places where the water flow is the least disturbed.

- Ensure that the propellers blades are correctly designed and without damages.
- The use of a baffle between the propellers and the transducer may reduce noise appreciably.
- Static discharges caused by the rotating propeller shaft may be removed by proper grounding or by mounting a coal brush from the shaft to vessel ground.

Reducing rattle noise

Ensure that no parts near the transducers can rattle as a result of water flow or vibrations.

Reducing interference

Interference from the transmission pulses from other hydroacoustic instruments on board the vessel is difficult to avoid. The problem may be reduced by choosing the working frequencies carefully and to some extent by separating the different transducers. On vessels with a large number of separate hydroacoustic systems installed and in simultaneous use, a separate synchronizing system (for example the K-Sync) should be considered.

Reducing electrical noise

- Place the transducer cables in a metal conduit from the transducer to the Transceiver Unit. Terminate the conduit as close to the transducers and Transceiver Unit as possible.
- Make sure that all units are properly grounded, as this is important to avoid electrical noise.
- Use shielded cables with correct grounding.
- Separate ME70 cables from other cables with high voltages, large currents or transients. Place all high voltage power cables in metal conduits.

Related topics

Installation summary, page 41
Installation principles, page 45
Acoustic noise, page 60

Vessel coordinate system

The vessel coordinate system is established to define the relative physical locations of systems and sensors.

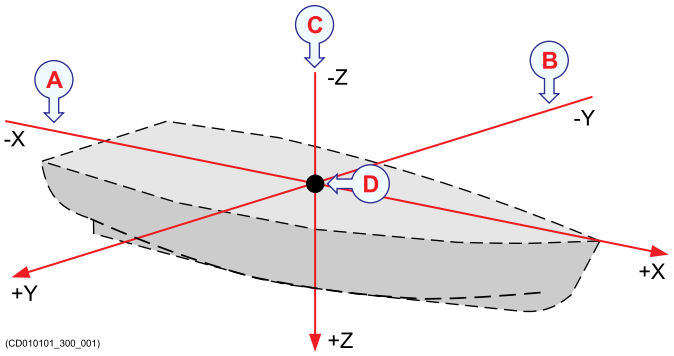
When you have several different sensors and transducers on your vessel, and you wish each of them to provide accurate data, you need to know their relative physical positions. The antenna of a position sensor is typically mounted high above the superstructure, while a motion sensor is located close to the vessel's centre of gravity. Both of these are physically positioned far away from the transducer on a depth sensor, which may be

located closer to the bow. Very often, the information from one sensor depends on data from an other. It is then important that the relevant measurements are compensated for these relative distances.

Example

If you wish to measure the actual water depth, you will need to know the vertical distance from the echo sounder transducer to the water line. Since the vessel's displacement changes with the amount of cargo, fuel etc, the physical location of the water line on the hull must either be measured at a regular basis, or measured with a second sensor.

In order to establish a system to measure the relative distance between sensors, a virtual coordinate system is established. This coordinate system uses three vectors; X, Y and Z.



A *The X-axis is the longitudinal direction of the vessel, and in parallel with the deck. A positive value for X means that a sensor or a reference point is located ahead of the reference point (origin).*

B *The Y-axis is the transverse direction of the vessel, and in parallel with the deck. A positive value for Y means that a sensor or a reference point is located on the starboard side of the reference point (origin).*

C *The Z-axis is vertical, and in parallel with the mast. A positive value for Z means that a sensor or a new reference point is located under the reference point (origin).*

D *Reference point (origin)*

Coordinate system origin

The *origin* is the common reference point where all three axis in the vessel coordinate system meet. All physical locations of the vessel's sensors (radar and positioning system antennas, echo sounder and sonar transducers, motion reference units etc) are referenced to the origin. In most cases, the location of the vessel's "official" origin has been defined by the designer or shipyard. This origin is normally identified with a physical marking, and also shown on the vessel drawings.

Frequently used locations are:

- Aft immediately over the rudder (frame 0)
- Vessel's centre of gravity
- The physical location of the motion reference unit (MRU)

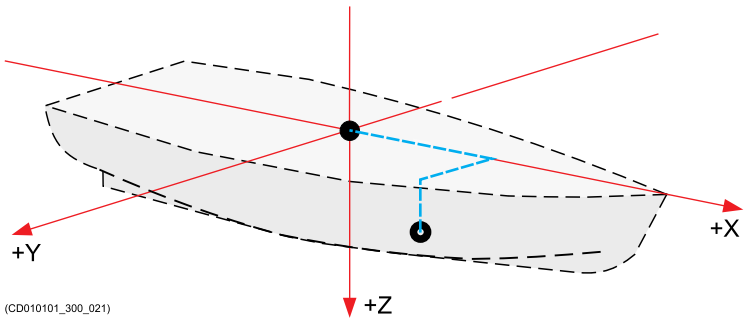
Coordinate system alternative origins

If necessary, other origin locations may be defined for specific products or purposes. One example is the *Navigation Reference Point* that is frequently used. Whenever a vessel is surveyed to establish accurate offset information, the surveyor may also establish an alternative origin location. Whenever relevant, any such alternative locations must be defined using offset values to the "official" origin established by the designer or shipyard. A commonly used alternative origin is the physical location of the vessel's motion reference unit (MRU).

Defining the physical location of each sensor

By means of the vessel coordinate system, the physical location of every sensor can be defined using three numerical values for X, Y and Z. These values must define the vertical and horizontal distances from a single reference point; the origin. The physical location of the motion reference unit (MRU) is often the most important sensor to define. For many systems, the vessel heading is also a critical measurement.

In this example, a second reference point has been established. It is defined with three positive offset values for X, Y and Z. All values are positive because the new reference point is in front of and below the origin, and on the starboard side.



The accuracy of the three numerical values for X, Y and Z defines the accuracy of the sensor data. If you require a high accuracy, for example for underwater positioning, underwater mapping or scientific measurements, you must have each sensor positioned using professional land surveying. For such use, a good alignment survey is critical for high quality results. Surveys are normally done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods.

Installing the transducer

Topics

Transducer description, page 69

Transducer installation principles, page 72

Transducer installation summary, page 78

Designing, manufacturing and mounting the installation blister, page 80

Unpacking the transducer from its transport crate, page 82

Installing the mounting ring, page 84

Lifting the transducer up towards its mounting location, page 86

Installing the transducer cables, page 88

Installing the transducer into the mounting ring, page 90

Painting the transducer face, page 92

Determining the location and installation angles of the transducer, page 94

Transducer description

The Simrad ME70 transducer is a short cylindrical container with 800 transducer elements. The transducer elements are located at the "bottom" of the transducer. When the transducer is mounted, the elements are facing down towards the seabed.The transducer cables are provided as 25 individual cables in three bundles. Each cable is terminated in a large male connector.

The Simrad ME70 transducer face is plane, and consists of a ceramic-polymer composite matrix. The matching transformer for each transducer element is located inside the transducer. This allows for a low impedance connection to the Transceiver Unit.

Note

The maximum length of the transducer cables is 30 meters, while the minimum length is 15 meters. The transducer cables can not be spliced. The required length of the cables to fit each specific installation must be determined before the transducer is ordered.

If the transducer is installed in a drop keel, the transducer cables must be protected. Each cable must be fitted with a protective hose. The protective hose starts inside the transducer. Protection must be used along the entire length of the cables, and all the way up to where the cables penetrate the hull.

Note

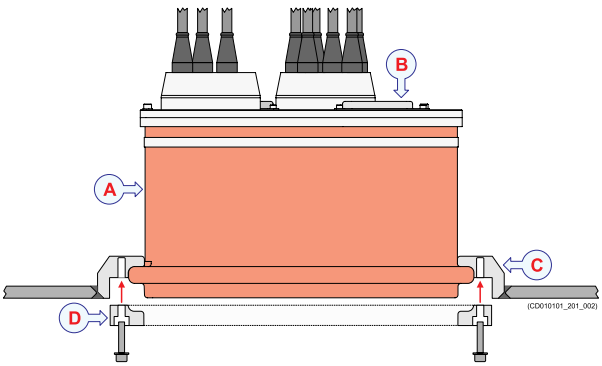
The transducer - with the cabling - is a delicate item. Great care must be shown during all handling. Even minor damages to the transducer cable may cause water to penetrate both the cable and the transducer body. A physical blow to the transducer face may easily damage one or more elements.

A *Transducer*

B *Sacrificial zinc anodes*

C *Mounting ring*

D *Clamping ring*



The transducer must be mounted so that it has a clear view within its coverage sector. It is also important that the transducer is mounted so that the water around it is not aerated.

A mounting ring must be welded to the lower blister plate. A clamping ring is then inserted from the bottom and up.

The transducer is secured with twelve -12- M12 bolts through the clamping ring, and fastened to the mounting ring. Both rings may be supplied with the ME70 delivery.

Note

An accurate measurement of the final position and angular orientation of the transducer is always required after installation.

The risk of galvanic corrosion must be taken into account in the design of the mounting structure. Periodic inspection of the mounting screws and use of sacrificial anodes is required.

Sacrificial zinc anodes

The transducer is provided with three sacrificial zinc anodes. These are mounted on its top surface (lid). The sacrificial zinc anodes must be replaced when 1/3 of their bodies have been spent.

If it is difficult to access the zinc anodes after the transducer has been installed, additional anodes must be mounted inside the blister. These additional anodes must be in electrical contact with the transducer, but not with the blister and/or the hull.

Transducer specifications

- **Diameter**: 677 mm
- **Height**: 313 mm
- **Minimum space required behind transducer**: 500 mm

Transducer cable specifications

- **Quantity**: 25
- **Length**:
  - **Maximum**: 30 m
  - **Minimum**: 15 m

  The transducer cables can not be spliced. The required length of the cables to fit each specific installation must be determined before the transducer is ordered.
- **Cable outer diameter:**
  - **Without protective hose**: 16 mm (Minimum)
  - **With protective hose**: 22 mm (Minimum)
- **Weight**:
  - **Transducer**: 250 kg (Without cables)
  - **Transducer cables**: 8,75 kg/m (Without protective hose)
  - **Transducer cables**: 12,5 kg/m (With protective hose)
  - **Total weight**: 382 kg (15 m)

- **Minimum bending radius**:
  - **Static**: 95 mm
  - **Dynamic**: 243 mm
- **Tensile strength**: 3000 N
- **Material**: Polyurethane (Outer sheet)

Rules for transducer handling

A transducer must always be handled as a delicate item. Wrongful actions may damage the transducer beyond repair. Observe these transducer handling rules:

- **Do not** activate the transducer when it is out of the water.
- **Do not** handle the transducer roughly, avoid impacts.
- **Do not** expose the transducer to direct sunlight or excessive heat.
- **Do not** use high pressure water, sand blasting, metal tools or strong solvents to clean the transducer face.
- **Do not** damage the outer protective skin on the transducer face.
- **Do not** lift the transducer by the cables.
- **Do not** step on the transducer cables.
- **Do not** damage the transducer cables, avoid sharp objects.

Related topics

Installing the transducer, page 68
208463 Transducer dimensions, page 337
208461 Transducer mounting ring, page 339
326431 Transducer clamping ring, page 341

Transducer installation principles

The physical installation of the ME70 transducer is basically made in the same way as for normal echo sounder transducers. We strongly recommend that the transducer is installed in a drop keel. Due to the functionality and scientific results required by the ME70, the transducer installation must be done with a high degree of accuracy.

The ME70 transducer is designed to be mounted inside a keel box or a streamlined blister under the vessel's hull. It can also be mounted using a suitable hole in the hull plating.

If your vessel is fitted with a drop keel, this is a superior platform for the ME70 transducer. Drop keels are often used on larger research vessels. A drop keel will frequently protrude as far as three meters below the hull. At that depth, the water is free of air bubbles up, even during very high sea states. The vessel is then able to do reliable acoustic measurements in open sea a larger part of the year. At the bottom of the drop keel, the ME70 can be installed with the transducer face flushed with the horizontal plating.

Note

Observe the installation principles.

Installation principles, page 45

Topics

Using a streamlined blister, page 72

Using a drop keel, page 74

Using a steel conduit to protect the transducer cables, page 74

Inclination angle, page 76

Cable protection in drop keels, page 76

Using a streamlined blister

For vessels travelling at high speeds, a blister installation is the recommended method. The blister will in many cases lower the transducers below the boundary layer. It will also prevent objects in the water from damaging the transducers face.

The blister must be designed to fit each individual ship. The quality of the materials used, as well as the quality of the workmanship must be defined by the vessel owner and the installation shipyard. If applicable, the design and installation of the blister must be approved by the appropriate classification society.

The best performance is obtained with a blister height of 50 cm or more. A streamlined shape and rounded edges reduce the flow noise. A vertical leading edge or front will guide the aerated water to the sides of the blister. The orientation of the blister should follow the water flow.

On a conventional hull shape, without a bulb, the front of the blister should have a few degrees toe-in towards the bow. The blister is placed to one side of the hull, and the distance from the keel is a trade off between a close distance giving a turbulent flow of water in a narrow passage, and a large distance bringing the transducer face higher up and blocking the view of the bottom.

The interior of the blister must be filled with sea water. Use drainage holes in the bottom and an air outlet on the top. The water pressure behind the transducer will then compensate for the outside pressure during vessel movements in rough sea. This is an important security precaution to prevent damage to the transducer.

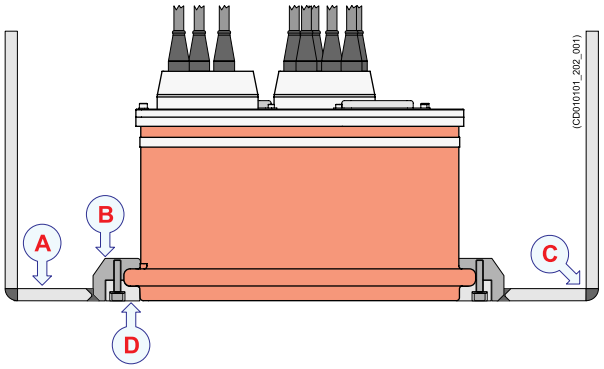
A typical streamlined blister is shown as an example. A common blister can be used to contain both the ME70 transducer as well as transducers for other acoustic systems. If many acoustic systems are used simultaneously, due care must be taken to prevent acoustic interference between the different instruments.

A *Blister bottom plate*

B *The mounting ring is welded to the bottom plate.*

C *The corners on the blister are rounded off.*

D *Clamping ring*



A *Blister side plate*

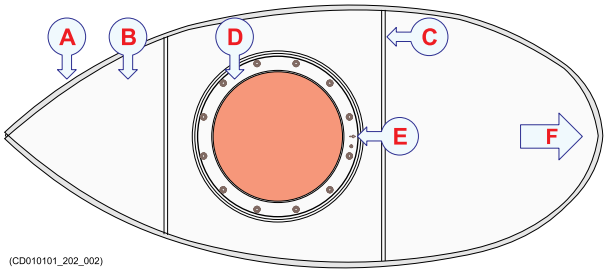
B *Blister bottom plate*

C *Internal vertical support plate*

D *Clamping ring*

E *Observe the arrow on the clamping ring indicating "forward".*

F *Front*



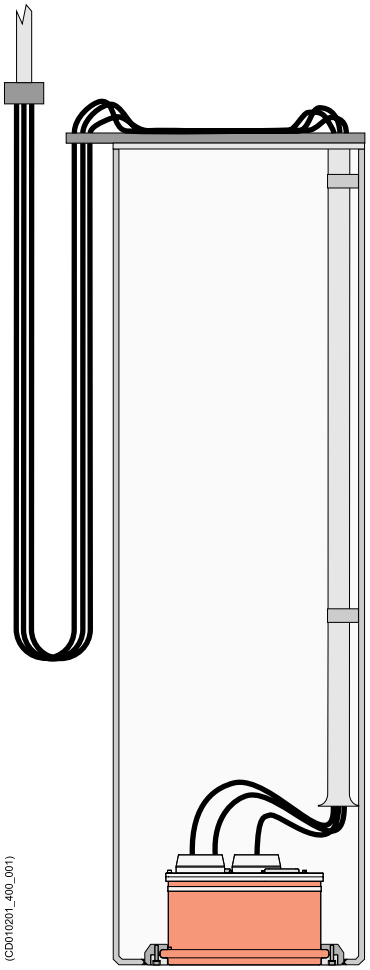
Related topics

Installing the transducer, page 68
Transducer installation principles, page 72

Using a drop keel

A drop keel is a superior platform for the ME70 transducer.

Drop keels are often used on larger research vessels. A drop keel will frequently protrude as far as three meters below the hull. At that depth, the water is free of air bubbles up, even during very high sea states. The vessel is then able to do reliable acoustic measurements in open sea a larger part of the year.



At the bottom of the drop keel, the ME70 can be installed with the transducer face flushed with the horizontal plating. The mounting ring is welded to the hole prepared for the transducer. Bolts through the clamping ring into the mounting ring will secure the transducer in place.

The drop keel is normally used for several echo sounder transducers.

The transducer cables must be properly fastened at the bottom of the drop keel, and fully supported while lowering and hoisting the drop keel.

Related topics

Installing the transducer, page 68
Transducer installation principles, page 72

Using a steel conduit to protect the transducer cables

A total of 25 transducer cables are used between the transducer and the Transceiver Unit. In order to ensure a safe installation, a steel conduit must be installed for the transducer cables. With a steel conduit the installation will satisfy the European Union regulations for electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) interference. Without a steel conduit, there is a risk of reduced ME70 performance.

The steel conduit must preferably be straight.

The transducer cables are provided as 25 individual cables in three bundles. Each cable is terminated in a large male connector. The maximum length of the transducer cables is 30 meters, while the minimum length is 15 meters. The required length of the cables to fit each specific installation must be determined before the transducer is ordered. The transducer cables can not be spliced.

Provide enough slack for maintenance and replacement purposes. Minimum two meters of cable must always be available for installation inside the Transceiver Unit.

Once the transducer is positioned, the transducer cables - with the transceiver plugs - must be pulled through the steel conduit.

Tip

If you must introduce bends on the steel conduit, take the size of the transceiver plugs and the minimum cable bending radius into consideration.

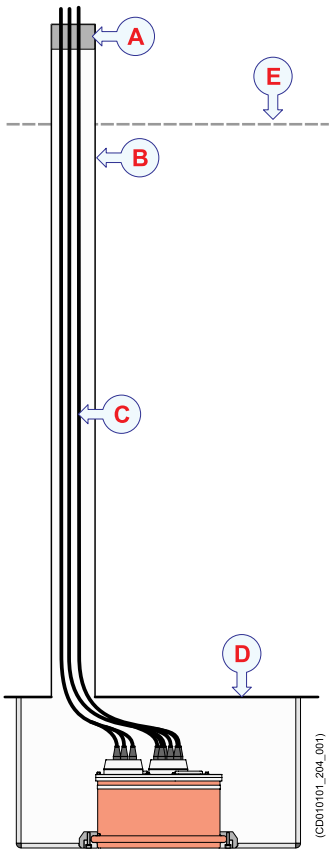
A *Watertight seal*

B *Steel conduit*

C *Transducer cables*

D *Hull plating*

E *First deck above the water line*



Start the conduit immediately above the transducer, and terminate it well above the water line. Secure the steel conduit to decks and/or bulkheads with welds. Ensure that the conduit is properly supported, strong and watertight. Once you have pulled the cable up through the steel conduit, seal the top of the conduit with a Roxtec (or similar) seal. If relevant, allow the maritime authority and/or classification society to inspect and approve the design and the installation of the steel conduit.

Observe the limitation introduced by the length of the transducer cables. If you have a large vessel, you may need to position the Transceiver Unit close to the top of the conduit.

Important

Finalize the steel conduit installation before you pull the transducer cables through it. Make sure that there are no spatter, sharp edges or protruding objects that can damage the transducer cables. If a cable is damaged, and penetrated by water, the transducer may be damaged beyond repair.

The steel conduit must be designed to fit each individual ship. The quality of the materials used to manufacture the conduit, as well as the quality of the workmanship must be defined by the vessel owner and the installation shipyard. The installation of the transducer and the cable conduit must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Related topics
Installing the transducer, page 68
Transducer installation principles, page 72

Inclination angle

The installation of the transducer must be done with the correct inclination angle.

Ideally, the transducer face should be mounted in parallel with the sea surface when the vessel is in normal trim, as this will provide the most accurate echo information. However, it is also very important that the water flow over the transducer face is laminar. In order to ensure laminar flow, the transducer face must be tilted slightly upwards in relation to the water flow. This allows the flowing water to meet the face directly, and reduces laminar noise.

Recommended inclination angle for the ME70 transducer face is: 2° (Approximately)

Note

Ensure that you do not mount the transducer with a negative inclination angle. This may cause turbulence on the transducer face, and reduced ME70 performance.

Related topics
Installing the transducer, page 68
Transducer installation principles, page 72

Cable protection in drop keels

If the transducer is installed in a drop keel, the transducer cables must be protected.

Each cable must be fitted with a protective hose. The protective hose starts inside the transducer. Protection must be used along the entire length of the cables, and all the way up to where the cables penetrate the hull.

Note

The protective is hose is fitted to the transducer cables during the production. For this reason, the length of the hose must be specified when you order the transducer.

The transducer cables must be properly fastened at the bottom of the drop keel, and fully supported while lowering and hoisting the drop keel. Proper arrangements must be made to handle the cable slack when the drop keel is in its upper position. Depending on the drop keel design, the cable slack can be kept on the outside of the drop keel, or inside it.

The cables must be permitted to move freely when the drop keel is lowered and hoisted. It is important to avoid sharp edges or protruding elements, as these may cause damage to the cables. Observe the limitations for the cable minimum bending radius. Any

damage to a cable may cause water ingression. Water follows the cable cores into the transducer, and causes damage that can not be repaired.

Note

Wherever the cables are unprotected outside the drop keel, use a flexible conduit for protection.

Observe the cable specifications and limitations.

- **Quantity**: 25
- **Length**:
  - **Maximum**: 30 m
  - **Minimum**: 15 m

  The transducer cables can not be spliced. The required length of the cables to fit each specific installation must be determined before the transducer is ordered.
- **Cable outer diameter:**
  - **Without protective hose**: 16 mm (Minimum)
  - **With protective hose**: 22 mm (Minimum)
- **Weight**:
  - **Transducer**: 250 kg (Without cables)
  - **Transducer cables**: 8,75 kg/m (Without protective hose)
  - **Transducer cables**: 12,5 kg/m (With protective hose)
  - **Total weight**: 382 kg (15 m)
- **Minimum bending radius**:
  - **Static**: 95 mm
  - **Dynamic**: 243 mm
- **Tensile strength**: 3000 N
- **Material**: Polyurethane (Outer sheet)

Related topics

Installing the transducer, page 68
Transducer installation principles, page 72

Transducer installation summary

The installation of the ME70 transducer requires careful planning and preparations. It is a key task for successful use of the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder. An overall installation procedure is provided below. The procedure does not describe any detailed tasks, but refers to the relevant procedures in this chapter.

Prerequisites

In order to prepare the installation of the ME70 transducer, the following prerequisites must be met:

- All relevant literature is available.
- All relevant vessel drawings are available.
- Detailed information is available about other systems on the vessel that may cause noise or interference.
- You have good knowledge about hydroacoustic systems and the challenges related to physical installation of these.

Context

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures.

Note

In order to obtain maximum safety and ME70 performance, it is very important that the installation procedures in this manual are complied to. You must do the tasks in the order they are described.

The vessel owner must make sure that the installation shipyard holds the applicable competence to perform the installation, and that the applicable maritime authorities are available to verify and certify the installation.

If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the ME70 must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

The outline dimensions of the ME70 transducer and the relevant installation items are found in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual. The source drawings (normally in AutoCad format) can be downloaded from our website.

- https://www.simrad.com/me70

Procedure

1 Determine the physical location of the transducer.

The decision must be based on:

- The vessel drawings
- Best practice
- Relevant literature
- The shape and properties of the hull

Make sure that all possible considerations are made to reduce noise.

Installation principles, page 45

Where to install the transducer, page 55

Acoustic noise, page 60

2 Determine the installation method.

The transducer can be installed using one of the following methods:

- Through the hull
- Installation blister (or a keel box) under the hull
- Drop keel

Transducer installation principles, page 72

3 Based on the chosen installation method, design the mounting hardware.

Designing, manufacturing and mounting the installation blister, page 80

4 Prepare a suitable hole in the vessel's hull.

- If the transducer will be mounted through the vessel's hull, the hole must be large enough to fit the mounting ring.
- If the transducer will be mounted in a blister below the hull, the hole must be large enough to fit the cables.
- If you use a drop keel, the top of the keel assembly must contain a hole large enough for the cables.

5 Prepare and install the necessary cable conduit from the top of the transducer to the sonar room.

Start the conduit immediately above the transducer, and terminate it well above the water line. Observe relevant requirements and guidelines from the maritime classification society.

Important

If you use a drop keel, the transducer cables must be properly fastened at the bottom, and fully supported while lowering and hoisting the drop keel. The cables must be permitted to move freely when the drop keel is lowered and hoisted. It is important to avoid sharp edges or protruding elements, as these may cause damage to the cables.

6 Unpack the transducer from its transport crate.

Unpacking the transducer from its transport crate, page 82

7 Position the mounting ring in the hole prepared for it, and weld it in place.

Installing the mounting ring, page 84

8 Position the transducer under the mounting location.

Lifting the transducer up towards its mounting location, page 86

9 Pull the transducer cables up through the steel conduit.

Installing the transducer cables, page 88

10 Mount the transducer.

Installing the transducer into the mounting ring, page 90

11 Consider applying a thin layer of anti-fouling paint to the transducer face.

This is recommended if your vessel will operate in waters with a lot of marine growth.

Painting the transducer face, page 92

12 Connect the transducer cables to the Transceiver Unit.

Cable layout and interconnections, page 113

13 Record the location and installation angles of the transducer.

The physical location and the installation angles of the ME70 transducer are important for the ME70 data accuracy.

Determining the location and installation angles of the transducer, page 94

Related topics

Installing the transducer, page 68

Designing, manufacturing and mounting the installation blister

Once the physical location of the transducer has been determined, the installation blister must be designed, manufactured and mounted. This task describes an optional method for transducer installation. Use this task only if it is relevant for your installation.

Prerequisites

In order to do this task, the following prerequisites must be met.

- All relevant vessel and transducer drawings must be available.
- All relevant work instructions, procedures and standards must be available.
- All relevant drawings have been approved by the classification society.
- The physical location of the transducer has been determined.
- The installation method has been determined.

- All relevant personnel (naval architects, designers, skilled shipyard workers) and tools must be available.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for mechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, adjustable spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the tasks at hand, additional tools may be required. Observe the relevant rules and regulations related to welding. The quality of the welding is critical to the safety of the vessel. Welding must only be done by a certified welder.

Context

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures. If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the ME70 must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

The outline dimensions of the ME70 transducer and the relevant installation items are found in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual.

End user manuals and source drawings (normally in AutoCad format) can be downloaded from our website.

- https://www.simrad.com/me70

Procedure

1 Based on the vessel drawings, the physical properties of the hull, and the functionality required by the ME70, design the mounting hardware.

  Observe the relevant transducer drawings to design the necessary hole(s) in the plating.

2 Manufacture the hardware according to the relevant production standards.

3 Mount the hardware under the vessel's hull.

  Note

  Make sure that the surface of the resulting installation is as smooth and streamlined as possible. If necessary, grind and polish all surfaces.

  Mounting screws or bolts must not be extruding from the hull or from the installation hardware, blister or keel box Obstructions on these surfaces will create problems with turbulent flow, and may cause noise.

4 If relevant, allow the relevant maritime authority and/or classification society to inspect and approve the design and installation.

Related topics
Installing the transducer, page 68

Unpacking the transducer from its transport crate

The ME70 transducer is shipped in a wooden box. Prior to installation, the transducer must be unpacked from its box, and placed under the mounting location.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for mechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, adjustable spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. The following specific tools and items are required for this task:

- Adjustable spanner
- Crowbar
- Hammer
- Wooden protective plate (for the transducer face)
- Wooden beams with height minimum 15 cm
- Lifting eye bolt (10 mm) x 3
- Lifting device (Crane)
- Ropes and tackles
- Transportation cart

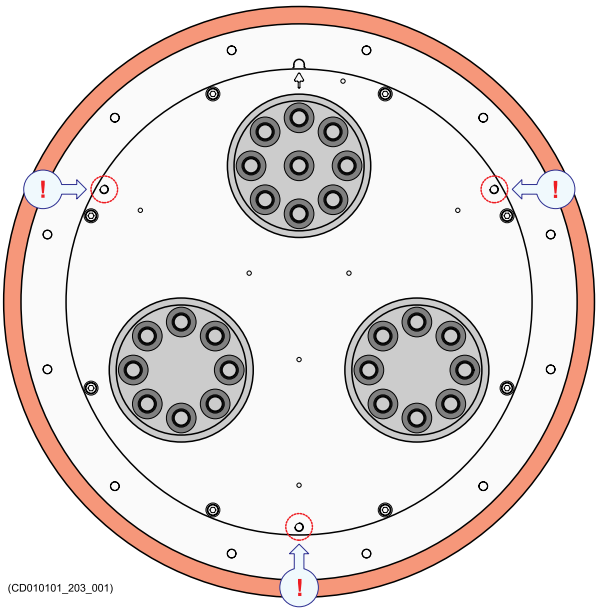
Context

The shipping box has two “rooms”, one to house the transducer, and one to house the cables. The transducer is placed with its “face” downwards. It rests on a protective cushion shaped to fit the transducer face. A wooden beam is placed across the top of the transducer body. It secures that the transducer stays in place during transportation.

Note

A transducer must always be handled as a delicate item. Wrongful actions may damage the transducer beyond repair.

The transducer cables must also be handled with care. Avoid sharp objects, and do not exceed the minimum bending radius. Any damage to a cable may cause water ingression. Water follows the cable cores into the transducer, and causes damage that can not be repaired.

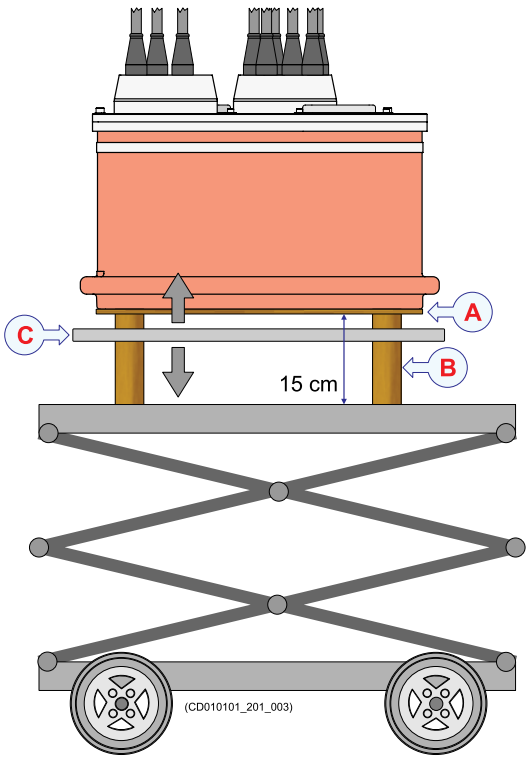


The three M10 lifting eye bolts are inserted into these threaded holes.

A *Wooden protective plate (for the transducer face)*

B *Wooden beams with height minimum 15 cm*

C *Clamping ring*



Procedure

1 Prepare a cart or any other type of suitable transport vehicle.

Ensure that all relevant protection is used to prevent damage to the transducer.

2 Open the shipping box.

Note

Be careful! Do not use heavy tools. Do not use excessive force. Make sure that you do not damage the transducer or any of the cables.

3 Remove the transport beam.

4 Mount the lifting eye bolts.

5 Lift the transducer straight up and out of the box.

Note

DO NOT lift it by the cables! Support the cables during the lift to keep the transducer body from tilting sideways.

6 Place the clamping on the top of the cart, then the two wooden beams, and finally the transducer on the top of these.

Ensure that the wooden protective plate is still in place!

Make sure that the clamping ring can me moved freely upwards, and that it will fit around the outer rim of the transducer.

7 Transport the transducer carefully to its mounting location.

Related topics

Installing the transducer, page 68

Installing the mounting ring

The mounting ring has been designed to offer a reliable and maintenance friendly installation method for the ME70 transducer. You can use the mounting ring in a suitable hole in a blister, in a keel box, through the hull plating, or in a drop keel. Once the transducer is installed in the mounting ring, it can also easily be removed for maintenance purposes.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for mechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, adjustable spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the tasks at hand, additional tools may be required. Observe the relevant rules and regulations related to welding. The quality of the welding is critical to the safety of the vessel. Welding must only be done by a certified welder.

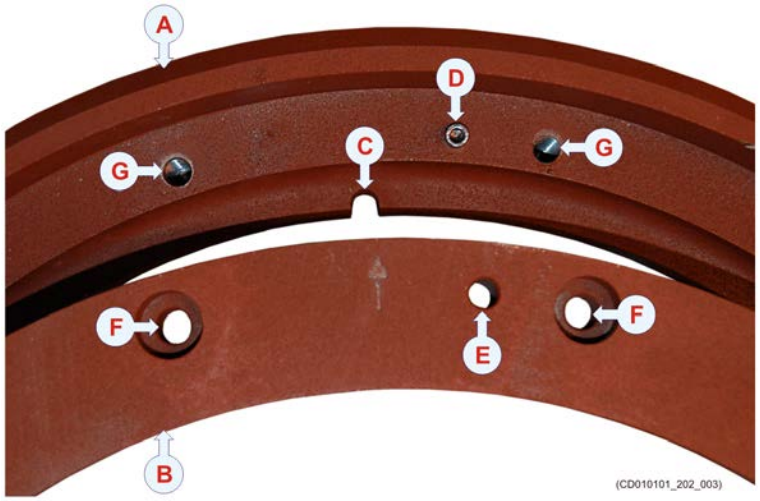
In order to do this task, the following prerequisites must be met.

- All relevant vessel and transducer drawings must be available.
- All relevant work instructions, procedures and standards must be available.
- The physical location of the transducer has been determined.
- The blister, keel box or drop keel has been mounted, and the design has been prepared to accept the mounting ring.

- All relevant personnel (skilled shipyard workers) and their tools must be available.

Context

The mounting ring is welded to the hole prepared for the transducer. Bolts through the clamping ring into the mounting ring will secure the transducer in place.



A *Mounting ring*

B *Clamping ring*

C *This is the guidance notch on the mounting ring. This notch must point FORWARD!*

D *This is the guidance bolt on the mounting ring (M6).*

E *This is the guidance hole on the clamping ring (M6). The guides shall ensure that the clamping ring fits correctly on the mounting ring.*

F *Holes for two of the mounting bolts.*

G *Self-locking threads to accept the mounting bolts.*

Note

The installation of the mounting ring must be done with the correct inclination angle.

Ideally, the transducer face should be mounted in parallel with the sea surface when the vessel is in normal trim, as this will provide the most accurate echo information. However, it is also very important that the water flow over the transducer face is laminar. In order to ensure laminar flow, the transducer face must be tilted slightly upwards in relation to the water flow. This allows the flowing water to meet the face directly, and reduces laminar noise.

Recommended inclination angle for the ME70 transducer face is: 2° (Approximately)

Note

Ensure that you do not mount the transducer with a negative inclination angle. This may cause turbulence on the transducer face, and reduced ME70 performance.

Procedure

1 Position the mounting ring in the hole prepared for it.

Note

Observe the guidance notch on the mounting ring. This notch must point FORWARD!

2 Weld the mounting ring in place.

3 After the welding has been completed, inspect the mounting ring closely.

Note

Make sure that the surface of the resulting installation is as smooth and streamlined as possible. If necessary, grind and polish all surfaces.

Mounting screws or bolts must not be extruding from the hull or from the installation hardware, blister or keel box Obstructions on these surfaces will create problems with turbulent flow, and may cause noise.

Related topics

Installing the transducer, page 68

Lifting the transducer up towards its mounting location

Once the transducer has been unpacked, it must be safely transported to the mounting location under the hull. A secure location must be then found for the transducer while the cables are pulled up through the steel conduit. Due to its weight, a specific method is recommended to lift the transducer up and in under its mounting location.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. The following specific tools are required for this task:

- Adjustable spanner
- Protective mat (for the transducer face)
- Lifting device
- Ropes and tackles
- Transportation cart

WARNING

The transducer is heavy. Take all necessary precautions related to lifting. Observe the local rules and regulations related to the use of lifting equipment.

Context

The main purpose of this task is to position the transducer close to its mounting position. This makes it possible to pull the cables through the steel conduit while leaving a certain amount of slack immediately behind the transducer. This slack allows maintenance access without disconnecting all the cables.

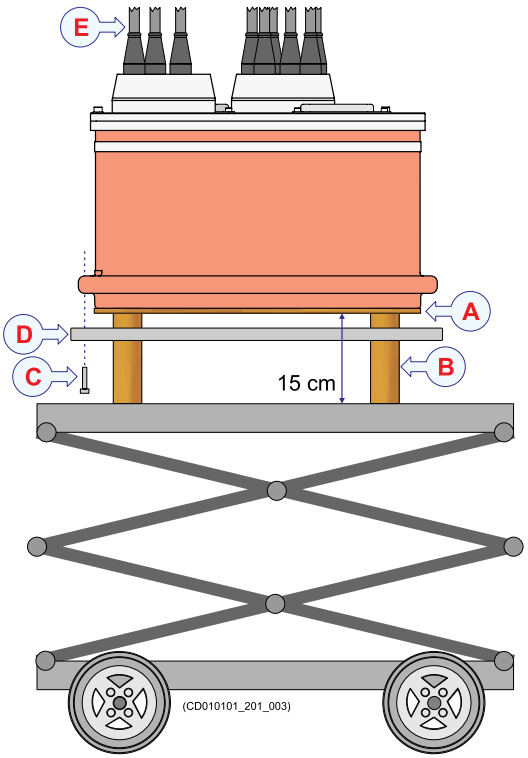
A *Wooden protective plate (for the transducer face)*

B *Wooden beams with height minimum 15 cm*

C *Bolts through the clamping ring into the mounting ring will secure the transducer in place.*

D *Clamping ring*

E *Pull the cables through the blister or drop keel and into the hull before the transducer is mounted.*



Note

The transducer - with the cabling - is a delicate item. Great care must be shown during all handling. Even minor damages to the transducer cable may cause water to penetrate both the cable and the transducer body. A physical blow to the transducer face may easily damage one or more elements.

Procedure

1 Ensure that the height between the vessel's hull and the dry dock floor is sufficient to allow access.

2 Make sure that the protecting plate is properly positioned under the transducer at all times.

3 Remove the lifting eye bolts from the transducer.

4 Make sure that the clamping ring can me moved freely upwards, and that it will fit around the outer rim of the transducer.

5 Under the mounting location, lift the transducer to a suitable height.

Related topics
Installing the transducer, page 68

Installing the transducer cables

When the transducer has been placed under its mounting location, the cables can be pulled through the steel conduit up to the Transceiver Unit.

Prerequisites

In order to do this task, the following prerequisites must be met.

- All relevant work instructions, procedures and standards must be available.
- The mounting ring has been installed.
- The steel conduit is mounted with all installation work finalized.
- All relevant drawings have been approved by the classification society.
- All relevant personnel (skilled shipyard workers, ship electricians) and their tools must be available.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

The following tools and consumables are required.

- Fish tape (wire pulling tool) with suitable length
- Electrician's tape

Context

All necessary precautions must be made to avoid damage to the cables while pulling them through the steel conduit.

Note

Make sure that all welding has been finalized before you pull the cables through the steel conduit. Heat may cause serious damage to the cables and the transducer.

If you use a drop keel, the transducer cables must be properly fastened at the bottom, and fully supported while lowering and hoisting the drop keel. Proper arrangements must be made to handle the cable slack when the drop keel is in its upper position. Depending on the drop keel design, the cable slack can be kept on the outside of the drop keel, or inside it.

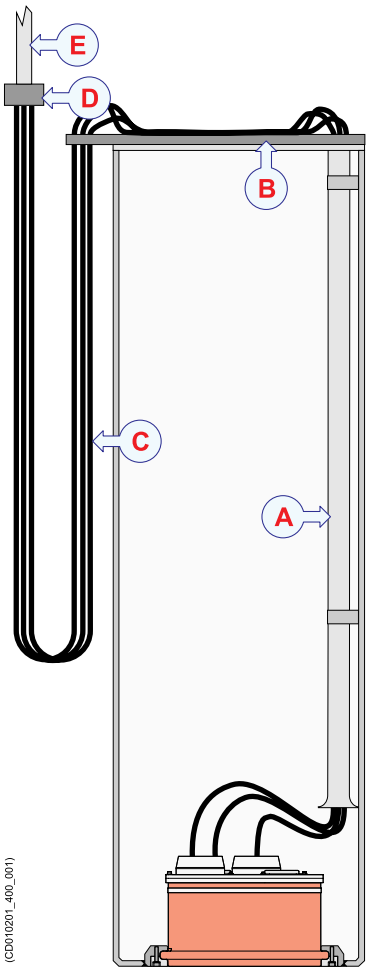
A *Steel conduit*

B *Watertight seal*

C *Allow the transducer cables to move freely when the drop keel moves up and down. The cables can be placed inside or outside the drop keel depending on the keel design.*

D *Secure the cables here.*

E *Steel conduit*



The cables must be permitted to move freely when the drop keel is lowered and hoisted. It is important to avoid sharp edges or protruding elements, as these may cause damage to the cables. Observe the limitations for the cable minimum bending radius. Any damage to a cable may cause water ingression. Water follows the cable cores into the transducer, and causes damage that can not be repaired.

Procedure

1 Verify that the steel conduit has been finished, and that all welding has been finalized.

2 Lower the fish tape (wire pulling tool) down from the top of the steel conduit.

3 Fasten the end of the fish tape to the transducer cables using electrician's tape.

4 Pull the cables carefully up through the steel conduit.

Continue until you reach the Transceiver Unit. Leave some slack close to the Transceiver Unit. Allow the transducer cables to form a service loop close to the transducer.

Note

Be careful! Make sure that you do not damage neither the outer surface of the transducer cables nor the Transceiver Unit connectors. If water leaks into a cable, it may damage the transducer beyond repair.

5 If applicable, seal the top of the steel conduit with a Roxtec (or similar) multi-diameter cable sealing.

6 Inspect the transducer cables as closely as permitted.

a Verify that the transducer cables have not been damaged during installation.

b Verify that the steel conduit used to secure the transducer cables does not have sharp edges or protruding items that may cause damage.

c Verify that enough slack has been provided for the transducer cables to allow maintenance and replacements.

7 If the transducer has been installed in a drop keel:

a Verify that the cables can move freely during lowering and hoisting of the drop keel.

b Verify that there are no sharp edges or protruding elements that may cause damage to the cables during lowering and hoisting.

c Verify that the cables are not bent too tightly under during lowering and hoisting.

Related topics

Installing the transducer, page 68

Installing the transducer into the mounting ring

When all the preparations have been made, the transducer must be installed into the mounting ring.

Prerequisites

In order to do this task, the following prerequisites must be met.

- The mounting ring has been installed.
- The steel conduit is mounted with all installation work finalized.
- The transducer cables are installed. A service loop is provided immediately over the transducer.
- All relevant drawings have been approved by the classification society.
- All relevant personnel (skilled shipyard workers) and their tools must be available.

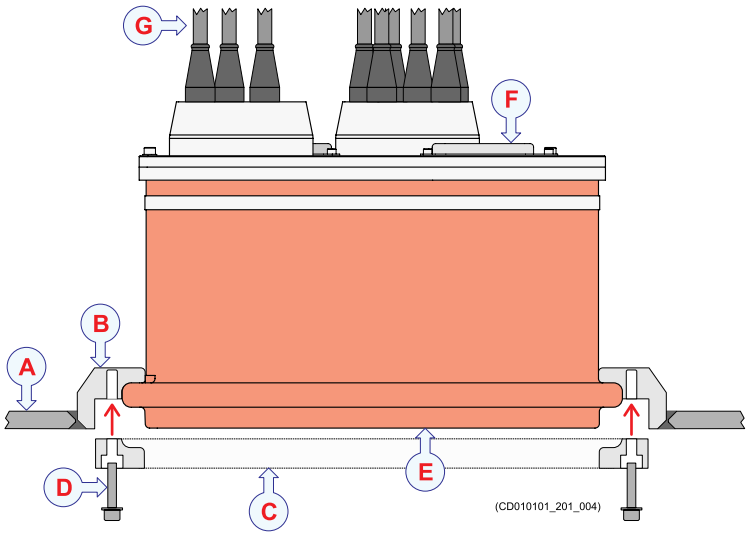
You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for mechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, adjustable spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

The following specific tools and items are required for this task:

- Torque wrench
- Loctite 270 (permanent high-strength threadlocker)
- Lifting device
- Ropes and tackles

Context

This circular transducer is designed to be mounted using clamping and mounting rings. The mounting ring is welded to the hole prepared for the transducer. Bolts through the clamping ring into the mounting ring will secure the transducer in place.



A *Blister bottom plate*

B *Mounting ring*

C *Clamping ring*

D *Mounting bolts(12 x M12)*

E *Transducer face*

F *Sacrificial zinc anodes*

G *Transducer cables*

Observe the guidance notch on the mounting ring. This notch must point FORWARD! Observe the arrow on the clamping ring indicating "forward". The clamping ring is also fitted with a guide bolt to ensure correct fit.

Note

Observe the physical size and weight of the transducer. Unless a suitable lifting device available, make sure that enough manpower is available to lift, hold and fasten the transducer.

A transducer must always be handled as a delicate item. Wrongful actions may damage the transducer beyond repair.

Procedure

1 Lift the transducer up into its location.

2 Align the holes on the clamping ring to the holes in the mounting ring.

Note

Observe the direction of the transducer. The "forward" marking must point towards the bow of the vessel!

3 Mount the transducer using stainless steel bolts.

Use bolts M12x55, stainless steel, A4 Class 80. Bolts and washers are included with the clamping ring.

Apply Loctite 270 to secure the bolts. Use maximum torque: 76 Nm

4 When the transducer has been fastened, inspect the plating around the transducer face.

a Fill the space around the mounting bolts with a a suitable filling compound (putty).

b Make sure that the surface of the transducer face, as well as the plating and putty around the transducer is as even and smooth as possible.

c Verify that there are no spatter, sharp edges or protruding objects. If necessary, grind and polish all surfaces.

Objects protruding from the hull will generate turbulence and flow noise. This will reduce the ME70 performance. Protruding objects may be zinc anodes, transducers or even the vessel's keel. Holes and pipe outlets are also important noise sources, as well as rough surfaces caused by bad welding. Even traces of sealing compound, sharp edges, bolts or empty bolt holes will create noise.

5 If required, allow the relevant maritime authority and/or classification society to inspect and approve the transducer installation.

Related topics

Installing the transducer, page 68

Painting the transducer face

Marine growth (biological fouling) on the transducer face reduces the ME70 performance. We recommend that you paint the transducer face immediately after installation, and then again as often as required to maintain the protection.

Prerequisites

The following tools and consumables are required.

- Personal protection
- Fresh water
- A mild synthetic detergent and a plastic brush
- Fine-grade sandpaper (240 inch grit size)
- Primer
- Anti-fouling paint
- Wet film gauge

Context

The transducer has not been designed with any protection against biological fouling. Anti-fouling paint may therefore be applied to the transducer face.

To minimize the negative acoustical effects the layer of anti-fouling paint must be as thin as possible.

Note

The anti-fouling paint will reduce the acoustical performance of the transducer. The surface roughness of the transducer substrate and the thickness of the paint may also influence the performance. Kongsberg Maritime can not be held responsible for any negative consequences of the anti-fouling paint.

Observe the relevant instructions and safety information provided by the paint manufacturer.

Procedure

1 Clean the transducer thoroughly.

   Make sure that you remove all oil grease residues, as well as salt and other contamination.

2 Allow the transducer surface to dry.

3 Abrade the transducer surface using a sanding paper with 240 inch grit size.

   Note

   Do not exceed a surface roughness (R_{max}) of 35 microns as this can influence the ME70 performance.

4 Remove all dust.

5 Apply the primer, and let it dry.

6 Apply the paint.

   Note

   We strongly recommend that you do not use a paintbrush and/or a roller.

   Observe the instructions provided by the paint manufacturer. Use airless spray. Apply the minimum specified film thickness per coat and for the complete layer. It is not possible to measure dry film thickness on transducer surface. You must therefore use a wet film gauge to frequently measure the paint thickness.

7 Allow the paint to dry.

Further requirements

The contractor or shipyard must keep a daily paint log recording all relevant information from the surface treatment.

Related topics
Installing the transducer, page 68

Determining the location and installation angles of the transducer

The physical location and the installation angles of the ME70 transducer are important for the ME70 data accuracy.

Prerequisites

In order to do this task, the following prerequisites must be met.

- The vessel is in dry dock.
- All relevant vessel drawings are available.

Context

In order to obtain precision data that are both detailed and correct, it is necessary to align the transducer, and measure its location and offset in relation to the vessel's coordinate system. Modest accuracy requirements apply when your ME70 system is only used to investigate objects in the water column.

Determining the relative positions and orientations of the sensors and the transducer with high accuracy is important. This requires professional land surveying done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods . We recommend that you use third party consultants with well proven experience with vessel dimensional control. Sufficient time and satisfactory work conditions must be given to the survey work. The installation engineers from Kongsberg Maritime are neither equipped nor trained to do dimensional surveying.

Procedure

1 Obtain the transducer installation drawings.

2 Extract the information related to transducer position and installation angles.

3 Check the information by making the relevant measurements under the hull.

4 Fill in the result tables.

Result

Installation angles		
Rotation Around X	**Rotation Around Y**	**Rotation Around Z**

Location in the vessel's coordinate system		
Forward (X-axis)	**Starboard (Y-axis)**	**Downward (Z-axis)**

Further requirements

Do a dimensional survey to determine the necessary position and angle measurements of the transducer and the relevant sensors. The information provided by the dimensional survey is entered into the ME70 software as installation parameters.

Installing the system units

Topics

Installing the display, page 97

Installing the Enix Processor Unit, page 98

Preparing the Transceiver Unit installation, page 100

Installing the Transceiver Unit, page 103

Connecting the Transceiver Unit to the ventilation system, page 105

Preparing the Power Supply Unit installation, page 106

Installing the Power Supply Unit, page 109

Installing the uninterruptible power supply (UPS), page 111

Installing the display

A display is a required part of the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder. For best readability, the display must be located so that it is protected from glare, and with the correct height and angle. The display is normally not included with the ME70 delivery. A generic procedure is provided.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

A suitable location for the display must be defined prior to installation. If you place the unit on the bridge, observe the compass safe distance.

Procedure

1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.

2 Observe the installation requirements.

   a Position the display so that it is best protected from glare which reduces readability.

   b Mount the display as recommended by the manufacturer; recessed in a panel, on the desktop or bulkhead, or overhead.

   c Observe the compass safe distance.

   d Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.

   e Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.

   f Ensure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

   Note

   In order to allow for future maintenance, we recommend to mount the unit with its cables and connectors available for easy access.

3 Verify that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.

4 Install the display as described in the applicable documentation provided by the manufacturer.

5 Connect the cables.

   Note

   When you connect the cables, make sure that they are all properly secured, and able to withstand the vibration and movements of the vessel.

Related topics

Display description, page 20
Weight and outline dimensions, page 281
Power requirements, page 283
Environmental requirements, page 283
Compass safe distance, page 284

Installing the Enix Processor Unit

The Processor Unit can be installed inside a console, inside a suitable cabinet, in a 19" rack or on a desk. When mounted on a horizontal foundation, for example inside a cabinet, rack or console, use the bottom plate with the two base rails. These are fitted with shock absorbers.

Prerequisites

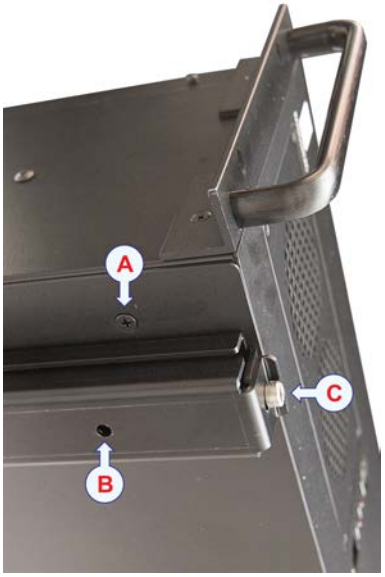
You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

A suitable location for the Processor Unit must be defined prior to installation. Observe the compass safe distance.

A *The bottom plate is mounted with six bolts through the computer chassis.*

B *Each rail provides two holes for mounting to a flat surface.*

C *Remove this bolt to release the rail from the bottom plate.*



Context

If you intend to mount the Enix Processor Unit in a 19” rack, you can disregard this procedure. However, you may then wish to remove the bottom plate and shock absorbers as described in this procedure, as these will not be required.

Procedure

1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.

2 Observe the installation requirements.

   a Depending on its physical properties, install the computer inside a console, in a cabinet or 19” rack, or on a desk.

b Choose a position to fit the available cable lengths between the computer and the other units it connects to.

c Observe the compass safe distance.

d Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.

e Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.

f Ensure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

Note

In order to allow for future maintenance, we recommend to mount the unit with its cables and connectors available for easy access.

3 Verify that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.

4 Provide ample space around the computer.

You must be able to reach and use the front and rear mounted connectors and on/off switches. It is also important that you allow for easy access to all the cables, and enough space for inspection, maintenance and parts replacement. If relevant, make sure that the space allows you to open the computer for unobstructed access to its internal parts.

Note

Make sure that you can access both the rear and front side of the computer after it has been installed.

5 Install the computer.

a Turn the Processor Unit cabinet upside down, and remove the bottom plate (A) with the shock absorbers.

b Observe the four holes in the shock absorbers and the bottom plate (B).

c Using the bottom plate as a template, mark the position of the mounting bolts on the foundation.

d Mount the bottom plate back on the Processor Unit cabinet.

e Disassemble the two base rails from the Processor Unit by removing the two front Allen bolts (C).

f Remove the bolts, lift the Processor Unit up and forward.

g Mount the two base rails on the foundation.

h Place the Processor Unit onto the rails at their rear end.

i Press it down.

j Secure the Processor Unit with the two front Allen bolts (C).

6 Connect the cables.

Note

When you connect the cables, make sure that they are all properly secured, and able to withstand the vibration and movements of the vessel.

Related topics

Processor Unit description, page 21
Weight and outline dimensions, page 281
Power requirements, page 283
Environmental requirements, page 283
Compass safe distance, page 284
385609 Processor Unit dimensions, page 329

Preparing the Transceiver Unit installation

The ME70 Transceiver Unit is housed in a 19 inch instrument rack. Easy access to the front and rear part of the rack is essential, as this allows for easy replacement of parts. In order to reduce the loss in the transducer cables, the Transceiver Unit is physically located as close as possible to the transducer.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for mechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, adjustable spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the tasks at hand, additional tools may be required. Observe the relevant rules and regulations related to welding. The quality of the welding is critical to the safety of the vessel. Welding must only be done by a certified welder.

If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the ME70 must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Note

Observe the installation principles.

Installation principles, page 45

Context

The Transceiver Unit is designed to be installed next to a bulkhead. The cabinet is fitted with shock absorbers at the bottom, and on the side.

The top shock absorbers are by default located on the left side of the cabinet. If required, they may be moved to the other side. If you do this, you may also wish to move the hinges on the cabinet doors. These are also by default located on the left side, but are easily moved to the right side.

All cables enter the Transceiver Unit through the bottom of the cabinet. Use U shaped steel profiles to add extra height. This allows room under the Transceiver Unit for transducer and interconnection cables. If necessary, you can use the space below the Transceiver Unit to install a cable tray for the transducer cables.

You may find it useful to design, manufacture and mount a bulkhead support bracket for the shock absorbers on the top of the cabinet.

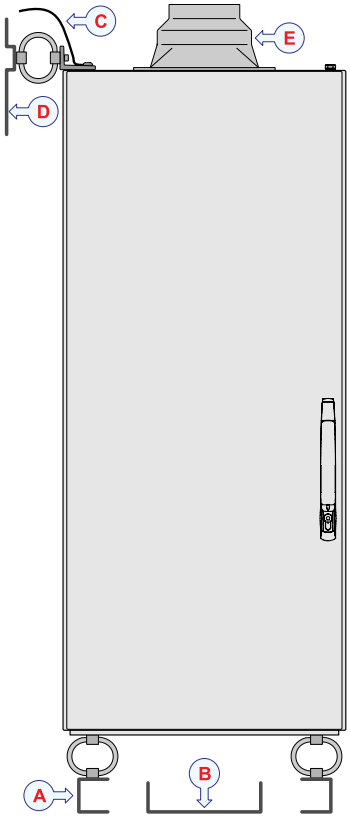
A *U-shaped profiles*

B *Cable tray*

C *The grounding cable is a special braided wire that is physically connected to the cabinet.*

D *Bulkhead support bracket*

E *Adapter for ventilation duct*



The Transceiver Unit must be connected to AC mains, and it must be properly grounded. The grounding cable is a special braided wire that is physically connected to the cabinet.

Note

Observe the limitations due to the cable lengths. The distance between the transducer and the Transceiver Unit is restricted by the length of the transducer cables. The distance from a power outlet is restricted by the length of the power cables. If required, you may need to move the power outlet, or replace the power cables with longer types.

Procedure

1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.

Observe the outline dimensions drawing. The drawing is located in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual. It can also be downloaded from our website.

2 Observe the installation requirements.

- The position must be chosen to fit the available cable lengths between the Transceiver Unit and the other units it connects to.
- Provide ample space around the unit to allow for inspection, maintenance and parts replacement.

Minimum space requirements:

- Front: 100 cm
- Rear: 60 cm
- Below 10 cm (Below the shock absorbers)

- Make sure that the space allows the unit door to be fully dismounted for unobstructed access to its internal parts.
- Verify that the installation does not cause problems with existing cabling, ventilation ducts, piping etc. Check both sides of the bulkhead.
- Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.
- Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.
- Ensure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

3 Verify that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.

4 Mount the "U" shaped profiles.

a Design, manufacture and mount the U-shaped steel profiles.

b Make sure that the profiles can withstand the full weight of the cabinet.

c Make the required mounting holes to accept the bottom frame (with shock absorbers).

d Position the profiles on the deck, and mount them using bolts or welds.

5 If relevant, mount the bulkhead support bracket.

a Design and manufacture the bulkhead bracket.

b Make the required mounting holes to accept the top shock absorbers.

c Position the brackets on the bulkhead, and mount them using bolts or welds.

6 Design, manufacture and mount a suitable cable tray that fits under the Transceiver Unit

Further requirements

Installing the Transceiver Unit, page 103

Related topics

Transceiver Unit description, page 22
Weight and outline dimensions, page 281
Power requirements, page 283
Environmental requirements, page 283
Compass safe distance, page 284
374454 Transceiver Unit dimensions, page 325

Installing the Transceiver Unit

The ME70 Transceiver Unit is normally positioned in a dedicated room in the vicinity of the transducer. The physical length of the cables limit the distance between the transducer and the Transceiver Unit.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for mechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, adjustable spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the tasks at hand, additional tools may be required.

In order to do this task, the following prerequisites must be met.

- The U-shaped profiles are installed.
- The cable tray is installed.

Note

Observe the installation principles.

Installation principles, page 45

Context

The Transceiver Unit is heavy. Make sure that the necessary manpower and lifting equipment are available before you start the installation work.

The Transceiver Unit must be mounted as a complete unit. The door must not be opened until the unit is securely fastened to the bulkhead.

Procedure

1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.

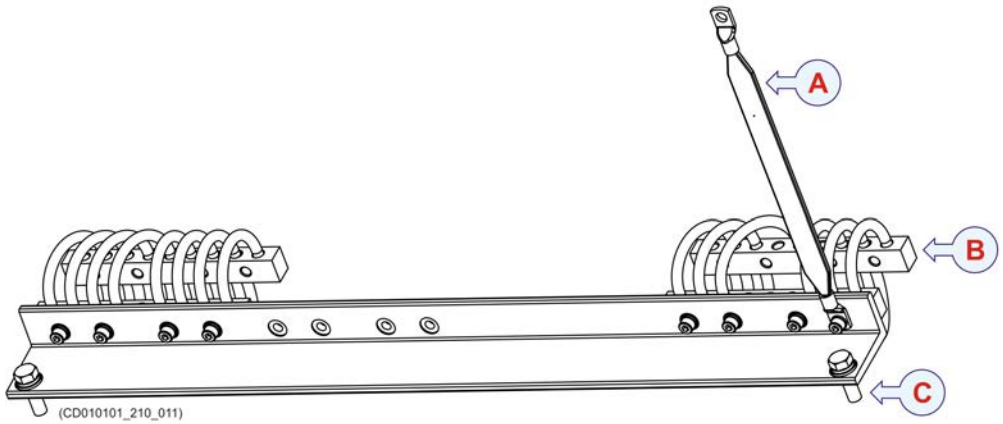
  Observe the outline dimensions drawing. The drawing is located in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual. It can also be downloaded from our website.

2 Mount the top shock absorber assembly.

  a Remove the four lifting lugs.

  b Mount the top shock absorber assembly using two of the same holes.

  c Use spare bolts to close the remaining lifting lug holes.



A *Earth strap*

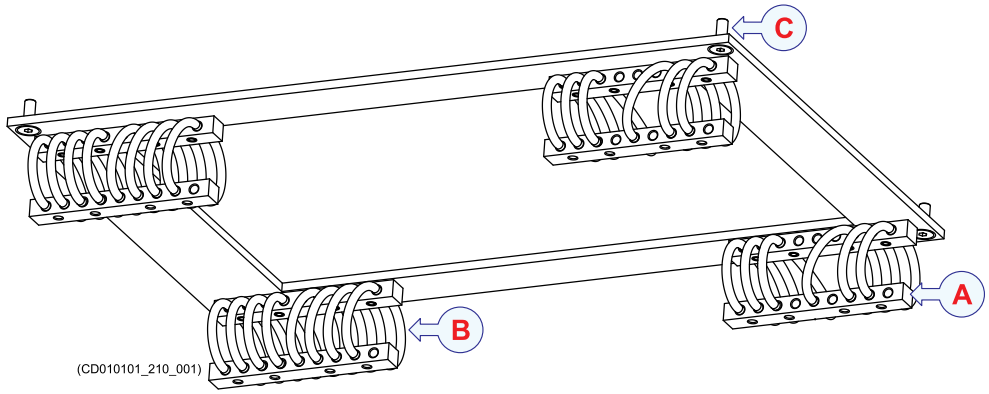
B *Bolt this shock absorber to the bulkhead.*

C *Secure the shock absorber assembly to the top of the cabinet using these two bolts.*

3 Place cabinet in its correct position on the bottom frame.

a Use four bolts through the bottom frame to secure the cabinet.

b Mount the top shock absorbers to the bulkhead support bracket(s).



A *Bolt this shock absorber to the "U" shaped profiles*

B *Make sure that the largest shock absorber is used under the front of the cabinet.*

C *Secure the shock absorber assembly to the bottom of the cabinet using these bolts.*

4 Fasten the earth strap.

5 Do not connect any other cables. This will be done later in the installation process.

Further requirements

Connecting the Transceiver Unit to the ventilation system, page 105

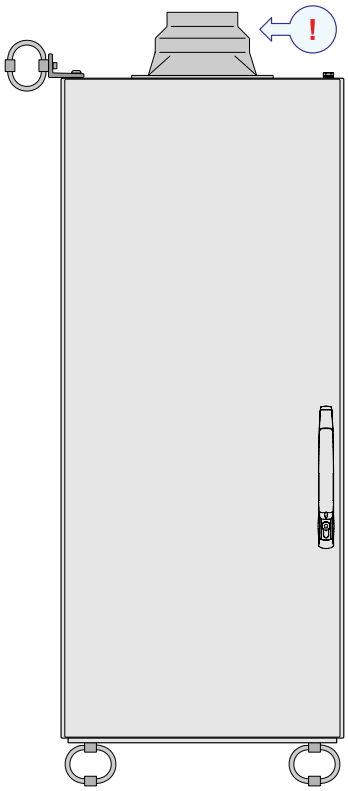
Related topics

Transceiver Unit description, page 22
Weight and outline dimensions, page 281
Power requirements, page 283
Environmental requirements, page 283
Compass safe distance, page 284
374454 Transceiver Unit dimensions, page 325

Connecting the Transceiver Unit to the ventilation system

During normal operation, the Transceiver Unit produces a lot of heat. The sonar room must be fitted with a proper ventilation system. In order to ensure proper operating temperature, the Transceiver Unit must be physically connected to the ventilation system.

Prerequisites



You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for mechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, adjustable spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the tasks at hand, additional tools may be required.

The following specific item is required for this task:

- Suitable ventilation duct

Note

Observe the installation principles.

Installation principles, page 45

Context

The top of the Transceiver Unit cabinet is fitted with a dedicated adapter. A suitable ventilation duct must be connected to this adapter to allow the ventilation system to suck heated air out of the cabinet. The ventilation adapter will also prevent dust and other particles from falling into the Transceiver Unit cabinet.

Note

The connection to the ventilation system must be done in such a way that the heated air from the Transceiver Unit is sucked up and sent out by sonar room.

Procedure

1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.

2 Make the necessary modification to the ventilation system to allow for the physical connection to the adapter on the Transceiver Unit.

3 Design and manufacture a suitable ventilation duct that can make the connection.

4 Connect the adapter on the Transceiver Unit to the ventilation system.

5 Verify that the ventilation system is in fact sucking the heated air out of the Transceiver Unit.

Related topics

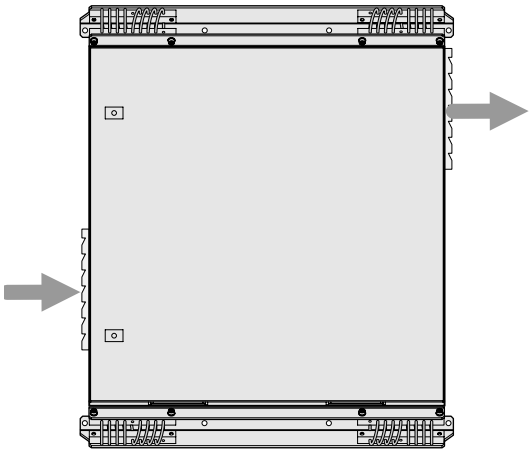
Transceiver Unit description, page 22
Weight and outline dimensions, page 281
Power requirements, page 283
Environmental requirements, page 283
Compass safe distance, page 284
374454 Transceiver Unit dimensions, page 325

Preparing the Power Supply Unit installation

The three Power Supply Units are mounted in the vicinity of the Transceiver Unit. The physical distance is limited by the length of the power cables between the units.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electromechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the chosen installation method, additional tools may be required. Observe the relevant rules and regulations related to welding. The quality of the welding is critical to the safety of the vessel. Welding must only be done by



a certified welder.

Air flow

If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the ME70 must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Note

Observe the installation principles.

Installation principles, page 45

Context

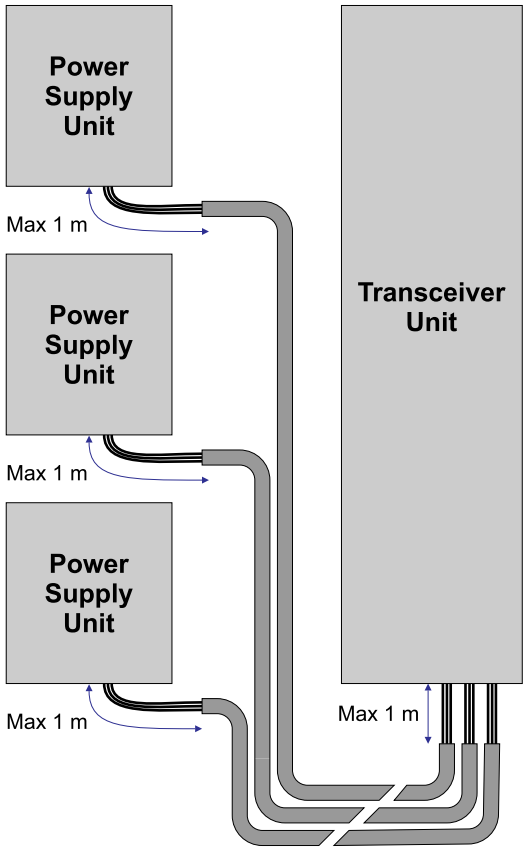
Each cabinet can be installed side by side or over of each other. Make sure that enough space is provided between the cabinets to allow for ventilation, maintenance and parts replacements. You may find it useful to design, manufacture and mount bulkhead support brackets for the shock absorbers.

Alternatively, the three cabinets can be installed together using a dedicated frame. The frame must be ordered separately. It is mounted vertically on the bulkhead by means of shock absorbers.

The power cables from the three Power Supply Unit to the Transceiver Unit must be run in steel conduits. These conduits serve the following purposes:

- Noise and interference protection
- Physical protection

The minimum internal diameter of the steel conduits is 5 cm. The maximum length of unprotected cable is 1 meter in each end of the conduit. For this reason, separate conduits for each Power Supply Unit is required.



Procedure

1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.

Observe the outline dimensions drawing. The drawing is located in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual. It can also be downloaded from our website.

2 Observe the installation requirements.

The power cables from the three Power Supply Unit to the Transceiver Unit must be run in steel conduits.

- The position must be chosen to fit the available cable lengths between each Power Supply Unit and the other units it connects to.
- The position must comply to the limited cable lengths between each Power Supply Unit and the Transceiver Unit. Short distance to the Transceiver Unit is always first priority.
- Provide ample space around the unit to allow for inspection, maintenance and parts replacement.

  Minimum space requirements:

  – Front: 80 cm
  – Rear: 0 cm
  – Below: 0 cm
- Make sure that the space allows the unit door to be fully dismounted for unobstructed access to its internal parts.
- Verify that the installation does not cause problems with existing cabling, ventilation ducts, piping etc. Check both sides of the bulkhead.
- Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.
- Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.
- Ensure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

3 Verify that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.

4 If relevant, install the mounting frame.

a Observe the outline dimensions drawing.

  The drawing is located in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual. It can also be downloaded from our website.

b Remove the shock absorbers from the power supply cabinets.

c Mount four of these shock absorbers on the mounting frame using the same bolts and nuts.

d Bolt or weld the mounting frame to the bulkhead.

5 If relevant, mount the bulkhead support brackets.

a Design and manufacture the bulkhead brackets.

b Make the required mounting holes to accept the shock absorbers.

c Position the brackets on the bulkhead, and mount them using bolts or welds.

6 Design, manufacture and mount the steel conduits for the power cables.

Further requirements

Installing the Power Supply Unit, page 109

Related topics

Power Supply Unit, page 23
Weight and outline dimensions, page 281
Power requirements, page 283
Environmental requirements, page 283
Compass safe distance, page 284
311237 Power Supply Unit dimensions, page 333
308337 Power Supply Unit mounting bracket, page 335

Installing the Power Supply Unit

The three Power Supply Units are mounted in the vicinity of the Transceiver Unit. The physical distance is limited by the length of the power cables between the units.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electromechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the chosen installation method, additional tools may be required.

In order to do this task, the following prerequisites must be met.

- The optional mounting frame is installed.
- The optional bulkhead support brackets are installed.
- The steel conduits are prepared.

Note

Observe the installation principles.

Installation principles, page 45

Context

A suitable location for the unit must be defined before the installation can start. Free bulkhead space is required. Any location can be used, provided that the cables are long enough, end that the ventilation is adequate. The chosen location must allow ample space for installation and maintenance tasks. Make sure that the cabinet doors can be fully opened for unobstructed access to its internal parts.

The Power Supply Unit must be mounted as a complete unit. The door must not be opened until the unit is securely fastened to the bulkhead.

Note

Observe the physical size and weight of the Power Supply Unit. Unless a suitable lifting device available, make sure that enough manpower is available to lift, hold and fasten the Power Supply Unit.

Procedure

1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.

Observe the outline dimensions drawing. The drawing is located in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual. It can also be downloaded from our website.

2 If relevant, mount the cabinets side by side, or over each other.

a Observe the eight 8.5 mm mounting holes through the rear side of the shock absorbers.

b Lift each cabinet up to its correct position.

c Align the holes in the shock absorbers with the holes in the support brackets.

d Mount the cabinet using stainless steel bolts.

3 If relevant, mount the cabinets on the mounting frame.

a Observe the mounting holes through the back wall on each cabinet.

b Lift each cabinet up to its correct position.

c Align the holes in the back wall with the holes on the mounting frame.

d Mount the cabinet using stainless steel bolts, spring washers and nuts.

Related topics

Power Supply Unit, page 23
Weight and outline dimensions, page 281
Power requirements, page 283
Environmental requirements, page 283
Compass safe distance, page 284
311237 Power Supply Unit dimensions, page 333
308337 Power Supply Unit mounting bracket, page 335

Installing the uninterruptible power supply (UPS)

It is important to ensure continuous operation of the ME70 independent of varying quality of the vessel's mains supply. The Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) must have the capacity to independently maintain power to the ME70 for a minimum of 10 minutes. This ensures that the ME70 can be turned off in a controlled manner in the event of a power failure.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electromechanical tasks, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners and wrenches. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the chosen installation method, additional tools may be required.

Context

Two uninterruptible power supply (UPS) systems are normally required:

- One UPS is required to power the bridge/control room equipment.
- One UPS is required to power the sonar room equipment.

The minimum specifications for the uninterruptible power supply are:

- **Input voltage**: The input voltage must fit vessel supply voltage
- **Output voltage**: 230 VAC, 50 Hz
- **Output power**:
  - Processor Unit and display: 1000 W
  - Transceiver Unit: 500 W
  - Power Supply Unit: 800 W (Each)
- **Output form**: The output AC voltage must be a sine wave

Note

Uninterruptible power supply units are not included in the standard ME70 delivery. These items must be purchased locally.

Procedure

1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.

2 Observe the installation requirements.

- For the relevant environmental requirements and specifications, refer to the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

- Provide ample space around the unit to allow for inspection, maintenance and parts replacement.
- Make sure that the space allows the unit door to be fully dismounted for unobstructed access to its internal parts.
- Verify that the installation does not cause problems with existing cabling, ventilation ducts, piping etc. Check both sides of the bulkhead.
- Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.
- Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.
- Ensure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

3 Verify that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.

4 For a complete installation procedure, refer to the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Cable layout and interconnections

Topics

Read this first, page 114
Cable plans, page 116
List of ME70 cables, page 119
IP addresses in the ME70 system, page 121
Installing the ME70 cables, page 122
Connectors, page 141
Processor Unit serial adapter, page 145
Processor Unit graphic adapter, page 151
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153
Internal transceiver cables, page 168
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Read this first

Detailed information about cable specifications, termination and connectors is provided. Unless otherwise specified, all cables are supplied by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the ME70 delivery.

Detailed drawings are provided for relevant cables. Each drawing provides additional information, and may, when applicable, include minimum specifications, connector terminations and the required number of cores. Drawings are generally not provided for standard commercial cables. Cables fall into three categories.

1 **System cables**: These cables are provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the ME70 delivery.

2 **Shipyard cables**: These cables must be provided by the shipyard performing the installation, or the shipowner. It is very important that the cables used meet the minimum specifications provided in this manual.

3 **Commercial cables**: These cables may be provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the ME70 delivery. They may also be included with third party items that are used with the ME70.

All electronic installations and corresponding wiring must be in accordance with the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. If no such guidelines exist, we recommend that Det Norske Veritas (DNV GL) Report No. 80-P008 "Guidelines for Installation and Proposal for Test of Equipment" is used as a guide.

Note

It is very important that all cables are properly installed and correctly terminated. Observe the relevant regulations and work standards. Always leave enough cable slack close to system units and cabinets to allow for maintenance.

Only skilled and authorized personnel can install the ME70 cables.

Kongsberg Maritime accepts no responsibility for damage to the system, or reduced operational performance, when this is caused by improper wiring.

Before you perform the ME70 cabling, ensure that the mains circuit breaker for the system is switched off.

Related topics

Basic cable requirements, page 178
Cable trays, page 178
Radio frequency interference, page 179
Physical protection of cables, page 179
Grounding of system cables, page 180
Cable connections and terminations, page 180
Cable identification, page 181
Cable glands and termination procedures, page 181
About cable glands, page 181
Preparing cables for termination, page 182
Securing and terminating cables, page 184
Using multi-diameter cable sealing, page 185

Cable plans

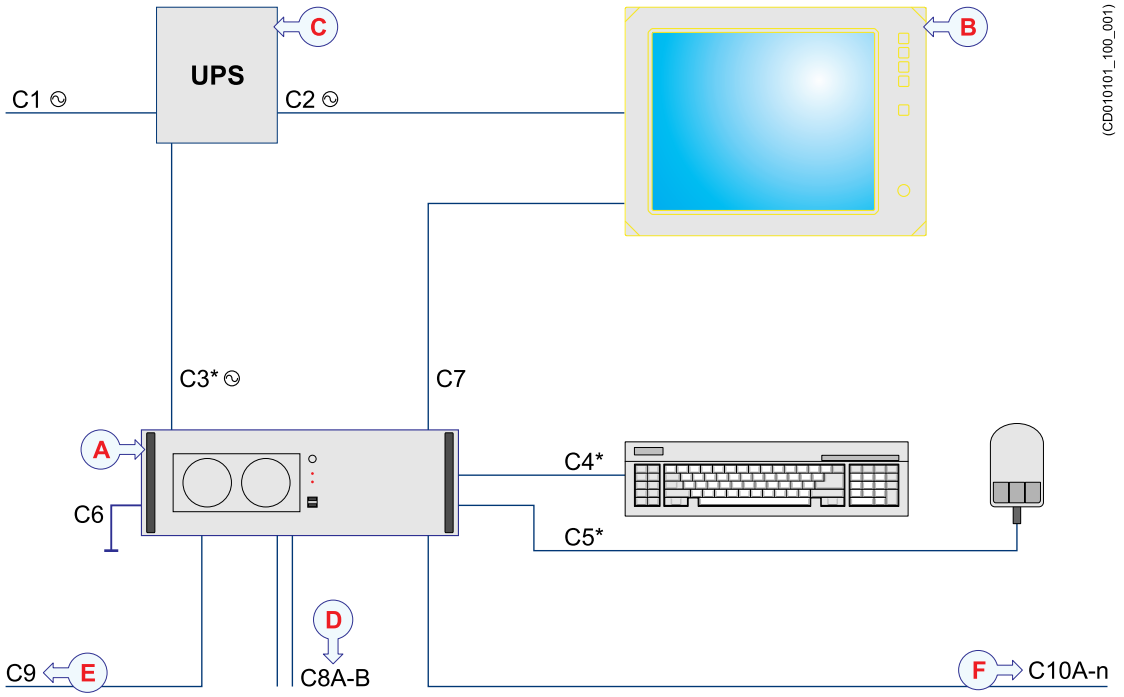
Topics

Topside cable plan, page 117

Sonar room cable plan, page 118

Topside cable plan

The topside/bridge cables include those used to connect the ME70 Processor Unit (computer) and the display to each other, to AC mains power, and to external devices. Two high capacity Ethernet cables connect the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit.



A Processor Unit

B Display

C Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

D From Processor Unit to local area network (LAN)

E From Processor Unit to Transceiver Unit

F From Processor Unit to external device(s)

Cables identified with an asterisk (*) are system cables. These cables are supplied with the ME70 delivery.

It is very important that a high quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using a cable with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce the ME70 performance. Do not connect the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit using an existing local area network (LAN).

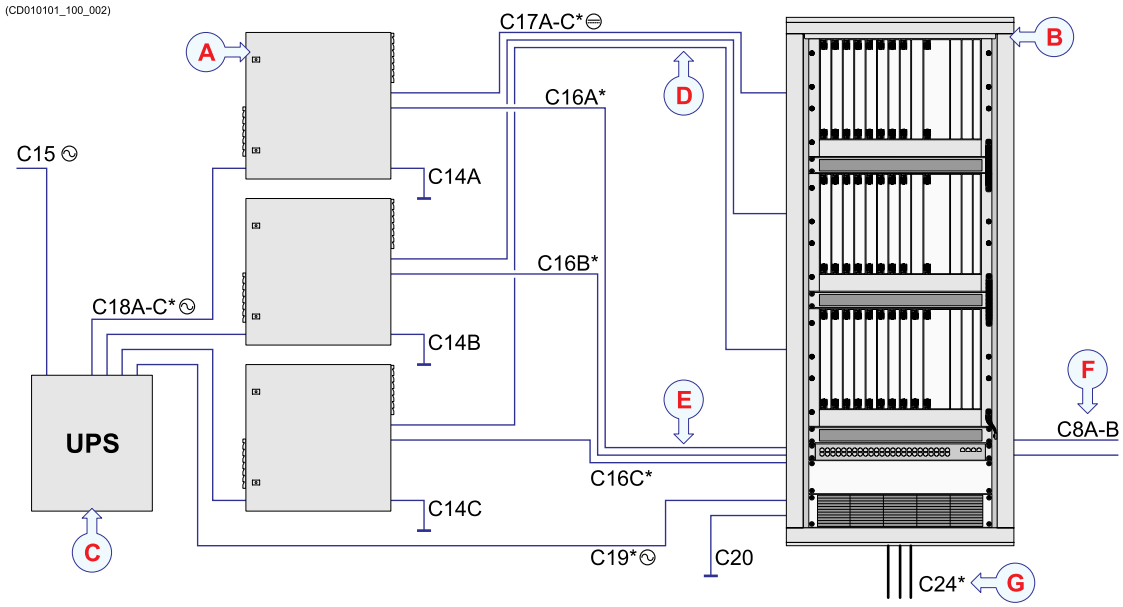
More than one serial line cable may be required to connect the Processor Unit to external devices. To identify these cables, use postfix letters. (C10A, C10B, C10C...).

Related topics

Cable plans, page 116
List of ME70 cables, page 119

Sonar room cable plan

The sonar room cables include those used to connect the ME70 units to AC mains power, as well as the control cables between the units. Two high capacity Ethernet cables connect the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit.



A Power Supply Unit

B Transceiver Unit

C Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

D From Power Supply Unit to Transceiver Unit (Power cables)

E From Transceiver Unit to Power Supply Unit (Ethernet cables)

F From Transceiver Unit to Processor Unit (Ethernet cables)

G Transducer cables

Cables identified with an asterisk (*) are system cables. These cables are supplied with the ME70 delivery.

It is very important that a high quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using a cable with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce the ME70 performance. Do not connect the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit using an existing local area network (LAN).

Related topics

Cable plans, page 116
List of ME70 cables, page 119

List of ME70 cables

A set of cables is required to connect the ME70 units to each other, and to the relevant power source(s).

Cable	Signal	From/To	Minimum requirements
C1	AC power cable	From uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to AC power outlet	2 x 1.5 mm² + Ground
C2	AC power cable	From display to uninterruptible power supply (UPS)	2 x 1.5 mm² + Ground
C3	AC power cable	From Processor Unit to uninterruptible power supply (UPS)	2 x 1.5 mm² + Ground
C4	Computer cable	From Processor Unit to keyboard	
C5	Computer cable	From Processor Unit to mouse (or another similar device)	
C6	Ground cable	From Processor Unit to vessel ground	1 x 6 mm²
C7	Video cable	From Processor Unit to display	
	This is a commercial cable. The display cable is often physically attached to the display, and terminated in the “computer end” with a male connector. If the cable is not attached, it is normally provided with the display.		
C8	Ethernet cables	From Processor Unit to Transceiver Unit	CAT5-E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair)
	Two Ethernet cables are required to provide the necessary bandwidth. It is very important that high quality Ethernet cables are used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using cables with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce the ME70 performance. Do not connect the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit using an existing local area network (LAN).		
C9	Ethernet cables	From Processor Unit to local area network (LAN)	CAT5-E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair)
C10	Serial cable	From Processor Unit to external device(s)	2 x 4 x 0.5 mm²
	More than one serial line cable may be required to connect the Processor Unit to external devices. To identify these cables, use postfix letters. (C10A, C10B, C10C...).		
C11-13	Not used		
C14	Ground cable	From Power Supply Unit to vessel ground	1 x 6 mm²
C15	AC power cable	From uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to AC power outlet	2 x 1.5 mm² + Ground
C16	Ethernet cable	From Transceiver Unit to Power Supply Unit	CAT5-E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair)

Cable	Signal	From/To	Minimum requirements
C17	DC power cable	From Power Supply Unit to Transceiver Unit	
	The cables are included in the ME70 delivery, and they are provided readily connected to the terminal blocks in the Power Supply Units. The cables must be run in steel conduits. The power cables can not be spliced. If the cables are too long, cut them down to a suitable length. If you wish to keep long cables, do not coil them.		
C18	AC power cable	From Power Supply Unit to uninterruptible power supply (UPS)	2 x 1.5 mm² + Ground
C19	AC power cable	From Transceiver Unit to uninterruptible power supply (UPS)	2 x 1.5 mm² + Ground
C20	Ground cable	From Transceiver Unit to vessel ground	1 x 6 mm²
C21-23	Not used		
C24	Transducer cables	From Transceiver Unit to transducer	
	The maximum length of the transducer cables is 30 meters, while the minimum length is 15 meters. The transducer cables can not be spliced. The required length of the cables to fit each specific installation must be determined before the transducer is ordered. If the transducer is installed in a drop keel, the transducer cables must be protected. Each cable must be fitted with a protective hose. The protective hose starts inside the transducer. Protection must be used along the entire length of the cables, and all the way up to where the cables penetrate the hull.		

Comments

The ME70 is often a part of a project delivery. For such deliveries, specific project cable drawings are established to show all the main cables, and how the various products are connected. In such project cable drawings, the ME70 cables are identified as **ME70/Cx**.

Related topics

Topside cable plan, page 117
Sonar room cable plan, page 118
Prerequisites for cable installation, page 122
Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Connecting AC mains and ground to the Power Supply Unit, page 127
Connecting DC power to the Transceiver Unit, page 128
Cable bundles, page 128
Steel conduits, page 129
Connecting the DC power cables, page 130
Connecting the Ethernet cables between the Transceiver Unit and each Power Supply Unit, page 132
Connecting the transducer cables to the Transceiver Unit, page 134
Pin configuration, page 135
Termination, page 136
Cable limitations, page 137

Connecting the transducer cables, page 137
Connecting the ME70 as a client to the K-Sync Synchronization system, page 139

IP addresses in the ME70 system

The communication between the ME70 units is made using high speed Ethernet. Each port on each system unit has a dedicated IP address.

Processor Unit

- **Processor Unit => Transceiver Unit**: 192.168.1.30
- **Processor Unit => Local Area Network (LAN)**: 192.168.63.2

Transceiver Unit

- **Transceiver Unit** (Ethernet switch): 192.168.1.100

The transceiver boards are not set up with defined IP addresses. The first card to boot up will have IP address 192.168.1.1, the next card will take the next available addresses. The last card will take IP address 192.168.1.25.

Power Supply Unit

- **Power Supply Unit 0**: 192.168.1.106
- **Power Supply Unit 1**: 192.168.1.107
- **Power Supply Unit 2**: 192.168.1.108

Installing the ME70 cables

Topics

Prerequisites for cable installation, page 122

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123

Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125

Connecting AC mains and ground to the Power Supply Unit, page 127

Connecting DC power to the Transceiver Unit, page 128

Connecting the Ethernet cables between the Transceiver Unit and each Power Supply Unit, page 132

Connecting the transducer cables to the Transceiver Unit, page 134

Connecting the ME70 as a client to the K-Sync Synchronization system, page 139

Prerequisites for cable installation

Correct wiring is crucial for the operational performance of the ME70. Electrical connections can only be made by skilled personnel (ship electricians, technicians or engineers). The installation shipyard must prepare detailed drawings of the electrical system, and identify each cable. Observe the basic cable requirements.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for cable installation, such as different screwdriver types, pliers, a cable stripper and a soldering iron. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the tasks at hand, additional tools may be required.

Refer to the cable plans and the list of cables. Detailed information about cable specifications, termination and connectors are provided in the relevant cable drawings. Unless otherwise specified, all cables are provided with the ME70 delivery. In order to ease the access for maintenance purposes, and to allow for vibration, make sure that some slack is provided for each cable.

Note

All electronic installations and corresponding wiring must be in accordance with the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. If no such guidelines exist, we recommend that Det Norske Veritas (DNV GL) Report No. 80-P008 "Guidelines for Installation and Proposal for Test of Equipment" is used as a guide.

Only skilled and authorized personnel can install the ME70 cables.

Kongsberg Maritime will not accept any responsibility for errors, malfunctions or damage to system or personnel caused by improper wiring.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Installing the ME70 topside cables

The topside/bridge cables include those used to connect the ME70 Processor Unit (computer) and the display to each other, to AC mains power, and to external devices. Two high capacity Ethernet cables connect the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit.

Procedure

1 Connect the power cables.

   a Connect the power cable from the uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to the AC power outlet. (C1)

   b Connect the power cable from the display to the power outlet on the uninterruptible power supply (UPS). (C2)

   c Connect the power cable from the Processor Unit to the power outlet on the uninterruptible power supply (UPS). (C3)

   Standard commercial AC mains cables are used. Each cable is supplied with the relevant unit. The typical cable length is between 1,5 and 2 meters. If this is too short you must use an extension cable (not recommended), mount a new power outlet within range, or make your own power cable with sufficient length.

   Processor Unit rear connectors (Enix 2680), page 142

   AC power cable using IEC C13 inline socket, page 154

2 Connect the ground cables.

   a If applicable, connect the ground cable from the display to vessel ground.

   b Connect the ground cable from the Processor Unit to vessel ground. (C6)

These cables must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Processor Unit rear connectors (Enix 2680), page 142

Ground cable, page 156

3 Connect the video cable from the Processor Unit to the display. (C7)

The display cable is often physically attached to the display, and terminated in the "computer end" with a male connector. If the cable is not attached, it is normally provided with the display.

The graphic adapter on the rear side of the Processor Unit provides two DVI connectors, one for HDMI and two for DisplayPort. Choose the connector that fits your display cable. If you have two displays both can be connected simultaneously, and can use the operating system functionality to set up different presentations.

Keep the display cable as short as possible. If the cable is too long, it may pick up electric noise, and this will reduce the image quality.

Processor Unit rear connectors (Enix 2680), page 142

Processor Unit graphic adapter, page 151

To learn more about the various video standards, explore these Wikipedia pages.

- DVI
- HDMI
- DisplayPort

4 Connect the cable from the Processor Unit to the keyboard. (C4)

5 Connect the cable from the Processor Unit to the mouse (or another similar device). (C5)

6 Connect the Ethernet cables from the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit. (C8)

Processor Unit rear connectors (Enix 2680), page 142

Ethernet switch connectors, page 144

RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable (1000Base-t), page 157

Note

It is very important that a high quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using a cable with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce the ME70 performance. Do not connect the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit using an existing local area network (LAN).

7 Connect the Ethernet cable from the Processor Unit to the local area network (LAN). (C9)

Processor Unit rear connectors (Enix 2680), page 142

RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable (1000Base-t), page 157

8 Connect the serial cables from the Processor Unit to the relevant external devices. (C10)

For more information, see the cable details:

Processor Unit serial adapter, page 145

RS-232 serial line connection using three wires, page 158

RS-232 serial line connection using five wires, page 159

RS-422 serial line connection using five wires, page 160

RS-232 used as synchronization trigger (input or output), page 161

RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires, page 147

9 If applicable, connect the signal cable from the Processor Unit to the K-Sync Synchronization Unit. (C10)

K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input, page 163

Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Installing the Transceiver Unit cables

The Transceiver Unit cables include those used to connect the ME70 units to AC mains power, as well as the control cables between the units. Two high capacity Ethernet cables connect the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit.

Procedure

1 Connect the ground cables.

a Connect the ground cable from the Transceiver Unit to vessel ground.

b Connect the ground cable from each Power Supply Unit to vessel ground.

These cables must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Ground cable, page 156

2 Connect the power cable from each Power Supply Unit to the power outlet on the uninterruptible power supply (UPS).

Connecting AC mains and ground to the Power Supply Unit, page 127

3 Connect the power cables between the three Power Supply Units and the Transceiver Unit.

Connecting DC power to the Transceiver Unit, page 128

The cables are included in the ME70 delivery, and they are provided readily connected to the terminal blocks in the Power Supply Units. The cables must be run in steel conduits.

Note

The power cables can not be spliced. If the cables are too long, cut them down to a suitable length. If you wish to keep long cables, do not coil them.

4 Connect the power cable from the Transceiver Unit to the power outlet on the uninterruptible power supply (UPS).

AC Mains to the Transceiver Unit, page 176

5 Connect the three Ethernet cables from the Power Supply Units to the Ethernet switch in the Transceiver Unit.

Ethernet switch connectors, page 144

Connecting the Ethernet cables between the Transceiver Unit and each Power Supply Unit, page 132

6 Connect the transducer cables to the Transceiver Unit.

Connecting the transducer cables to the Transceiver Unit, page 134

The maximum length of the transducer cables is 30 meters, while the minimum length is 15 meters. The transducer cables can not be spliced.

Note

The required length of the cables to fit each specific installation must be determined before the transducer is ordered.

If the transducer is installed in a drop keel, the transducer cables must be protected. Each cable must be fitted with a protective hose. The protective hose starts inside the transducer. Protection must be used along the entire length of the cables, and all the way up to where the cables penetrate the hull.

Related topics

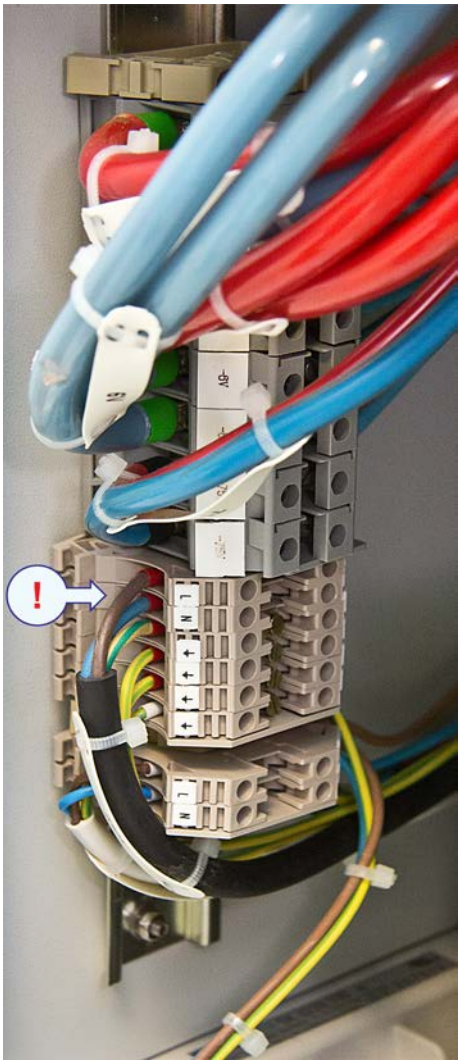
Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Connecting AC mains and ground to the Power Supply Unit

Each ME70 Power Supply Unit must be connected to AC mains. The units must also be properly grounded.

Context

The mains voltage for the Power Supply Unit is 230 VAC. It is connected to the uninterrupted power supply (UPS) for this supply power. The Power Supply Unit cabinet is connected to vessel ground. Two cables are used.



- AC power cable

  This cable is supplied with the ME70 delivery. The cable is readily connected to the terminal block inside each Power Supply Unit.

- Ground cable

  This cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Note

In order to prevent unwanted grounding loops, the mains power for both the Power Supply Unit and the Transceiver Unit must be connected to the same source. We recommend that the same contact block is used.

Procedure

1 Open the Power Supply Unit.

2 Observe the terminal block on the left hand side.

3 Verify that the AC mains cable has been connected to the top three slots on the "small" terminal block.

4 Connect the other end of the power cable to the AC output on the uninterruptible power supply (UPS).

5 Close the Power Supply Unit.

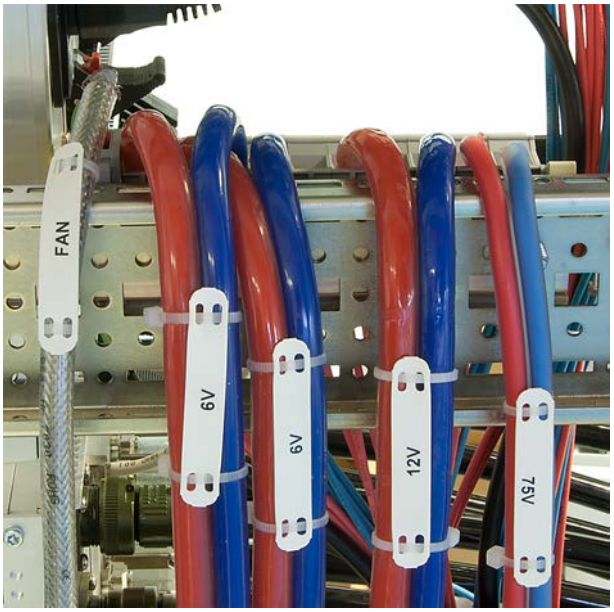
Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Connecting DC power to the Transceiver Unit

Dedicated power cables are used to connect the DC power from the Power Supply Units to the TRXU subracks in the Transceiver Unit. The physical connections are made from the terminal block in each Power Supply Unit to the terminal block on the rear side each TRXU subrack.

The power cables transfer the DC and AC power from the Power Supply Units to the Transceiver Unit. The cables must be installed in steel conduits to remove electric noise, avoid interference, and offer physical protection. The cables are included in the ME70 delivery, and they are provided readily connected to the terminal blocks in the Power Supply Units.



Note

Do not connect any AC or DC power to the Transceiver Unit or Power Supply Units until explicitly instructed to do so in the relevant procedure.

Topics

Cable bundles, page 128

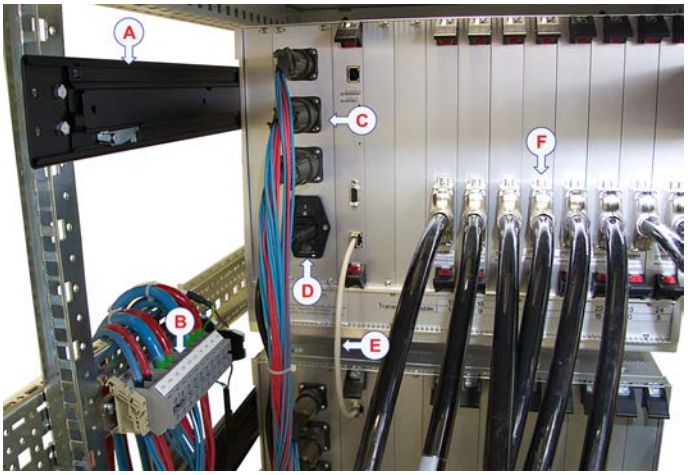
Steel conduits, page 129

Connecting the DC power cables, page 130

Cable bundles

The DC cables from the three Power Supply Units to the Transceiver Unit are all separate conductors in a bundle. 230 VAC is also included in order to power the fans in each TRXU subrack.

Inside the Transceiver Unit, the power cables are terminated in three TRXU Terminal blocks, one for each subrack. From these terminal blocks, the three DC cable bundles are fed up to the rear side of the subrack, and terminated with plugs on the Power Connector Panel. The AC power provided by the Power Supply Units is also terminated on the Power Connector Panel.



A *Mounting rail for the TRXU subrack*

B *TRXU Terminal block for the power cables from the Power Supply Unit*

C *Three "Amphenol" plugs connect the DC power cables to the rear side of the TRXU subrack.*

D *AC input for the fans in the TRXU subrack*

E *Synchronisation cables between the TRXU subracks*

F *Transducer cables*

The following cables are included in the bundle:

- 230 VAC to TRXU subrack fans
- +6 VDC (two red cables)
- –6 VDC (two blue cables)
- +12 VDC (one red cable)
- –12 VDC (one blue cable)
- +75 VDC (one red and one blue cable)

Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Steel conduits

The power cables from the three Power Supply Unit to the Transceiver Unit must be run in steel conduits.

These conduits serve the following purposes:

- Noise and interference protection
- Physical protection

The minimum internal diameter of the steel conduits is 5 cm.

Note

The maximum length of unprotected cable is 1 meter in each end of the conduit. For this reason, separate conduits for each Power Supply Unit is required.

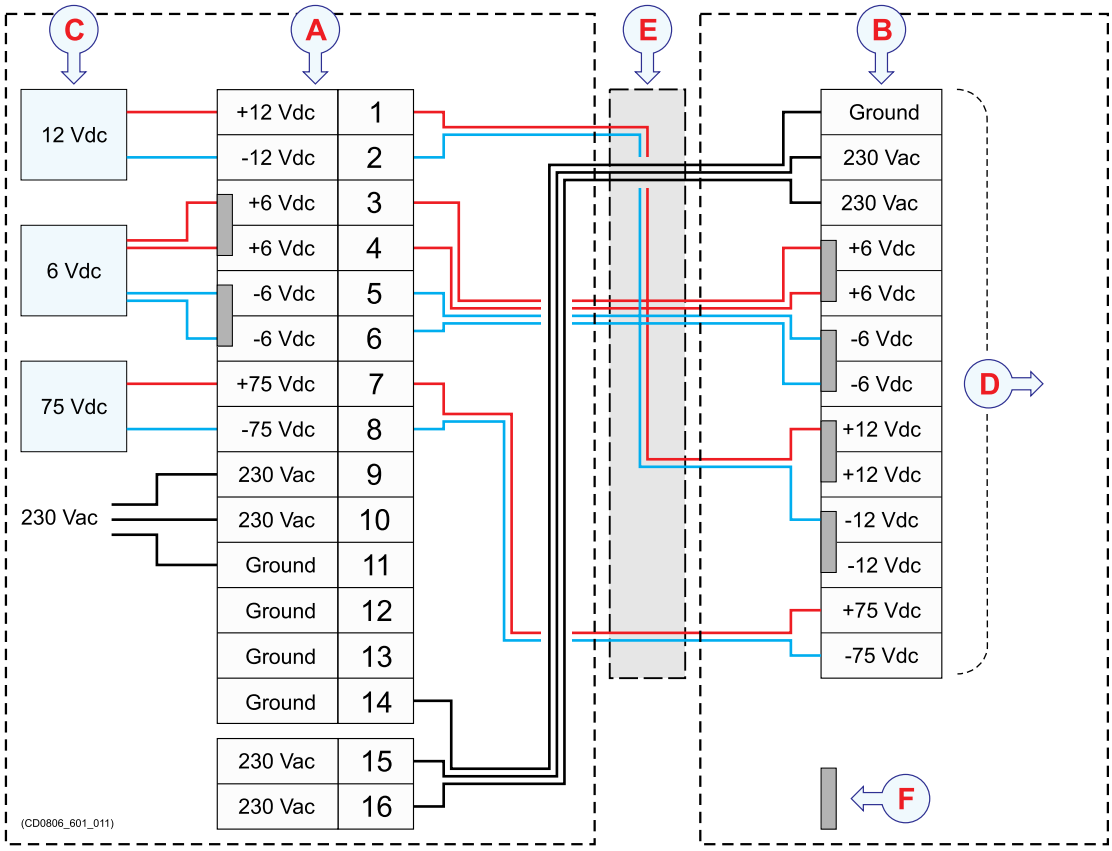
Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Connecting the DC power cables

Each of the three transmitter racks in the Transceiver Unit is powered by DC voltages from a dedicated Power Supply Unit.

Context



A *PSU Terminal block (on the left side of the Power Supply Unit)*

B *TRXU Terminal block (on the rear side of each subrack inside the Transceiver Unit)*

C *Power supplies*

D *The cables from the TRXU Terminal block are connected to the Power Connector Panel on the rear side of the TRXU subrack.*

E *The power cables are run in steel conduits.*

F *This symbol means that the terminals are connected with a conductive rail.*

Procedure

1 Design, prepare and build the steel conduits between the three Power Supply Units and the Transceiver Unit.

2 Locate the DC power cable bundle from each Power Supply Unit.

Observe the colour coding and the identification labels.

3 Pull each bundle through the relevant steel conduit.

4 Connect each cable in the bundles to the terminal blocks on the rear side of the Transceiver Unit.

If the cables are too long, you may wish to cut them shorter.

Note

If you wish to keep long cables, do not coil them.

The current flowing in a cable generates heat. This causes the temperature of the conductors to rise until the heat lost balances the heat generated. If you coil a cable with high current, the heat dissipation suffers. This will result in a higher temperature at a given current. If the temperature gets too high the insulation on the cable softens and eventually melts.

If you coil a cable it will also generate electric noise. Any coil may act as an inductor or transformer, and it will have a certain resonant frequency. As the cable that makes up the coil passes a variable current, a varying magnetic field exists around the coil. Forces due to this magnetic field can cause vibration of the coil wires or the core of the coil.

5 Use a standard multimeter to verify that the correct connections are made, and that there are no short circuits.

Further requirements

Do not connect any AC or DC power to the Transceiver Unit or Power Supply Units until explicitly instructed to do so in the relevant procedure.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Connecting the Ethernet cables between the Transceiver Unit and each Power Supply Unit

Three high speed Ethernet cables are used between the Ethernet switch in the Transceiver Unit and the Network Power Switch units inside the three Power Supply Units.

Context

The Ethernet cables are provided with the ME70. They are readily connected to the Network Power Switches, and fed out through a dedicated cable gland at the bottom of each power cabinet. The length of each cable is 10 meters.

A **[37]+[38]**: From Transceiver Unit to Processor Unit

B **[45]**: From Transceiver Unit to Power Supply Unit (1)

C **[46]**: From Transceiver Unit to Power Supply Unit (2)

D **[47]**: From Transceiver Unit to Power Supply Unit (3)

Note

The Ethernet cables must not be installed in the same steel conduit as the power cables.

Procedure

1 Open the Power Supply Unit.

2 Observe the single Ethernet connector on each Network Power Switch.

3 Verify that the cable is properly connected.

4 Close the Power Supply Unit.

5 Locate the Ethernet cables provided with the ME70 delivery.

6 Connect the cables.

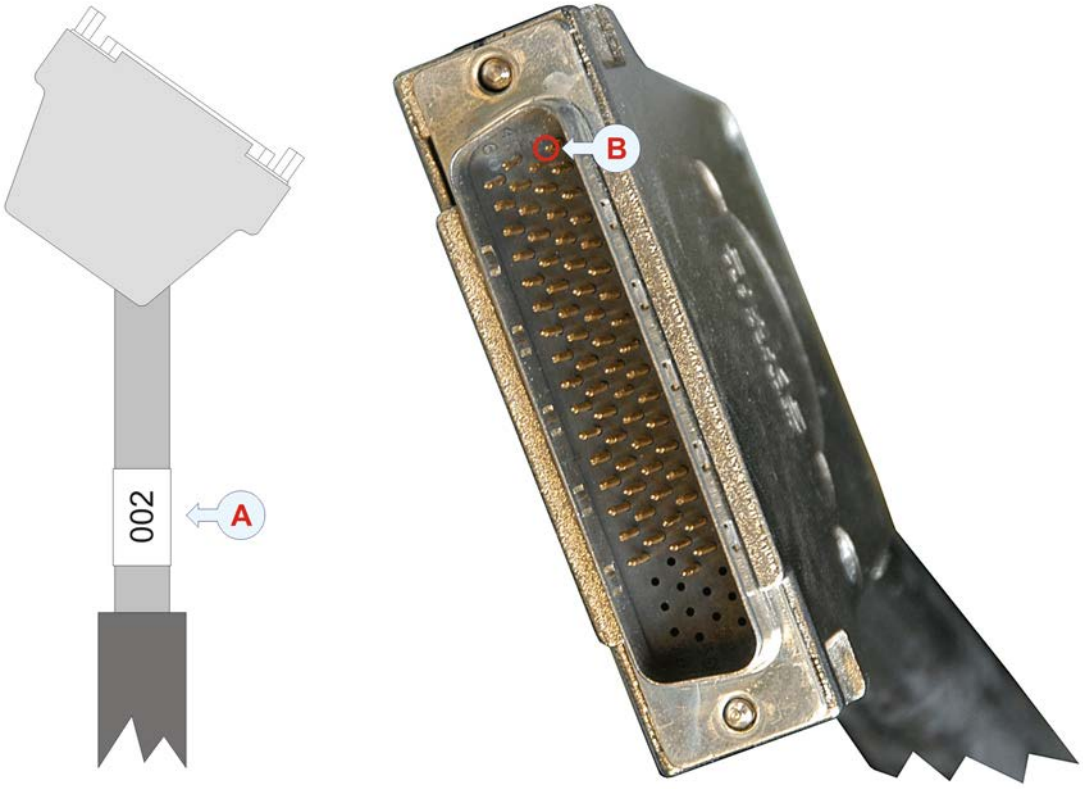
If the cables are too long, you may wish to cut them shorter. You must then mount new plugs. For more information, see the cable details: If you wish to keep long cables, do not coil them. If you coil the cables they may generate electric noise.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122
RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable (1000Base-t), page 157

Connecting the transducer cables to the Transceiver Unit

The transducer cables are permanently connected to the transducer. On the other end, each cable is terminated with a large connector. The connectors are plugged in on the transducer interface boards on the rear side of each TRXU subrack.



A *Cable identification*

B *Pin 1*

Topics

Pin configuration, page 135

Termination, page 136

Cable limitations, page 137

Connecting the transducer cables, page 137

Pin configuration

The transducer is connected to the rear side of the three TRXU subracks in the Transceiver Unit using 25 cables. Each transducer plug has 33 cable pairs, and each cable pair is colour coded.It is very important that the transducer cables are connected to the correct sockets!

Pair	Pin numbers		Cable colours	
1	1	21	White	Brown
2	40	60	Green	Yellow
3	2	22	Grey	Pink
4	41	61	Blue	Red
5	3	23	Black	Violet
6	42	62	Grey/Pink	Red/Blue
7	4	24	White/Green	Brown/Green
8	43	63	White/Yellow	Yellow/Brown
9	5	25	White/Grey	Grey/Brown
10	44	64	White/Pink	Pink/Brown
11	6	26	White/Blue	Brown/Blue
12	45	65	White/Red	Brown/Red
13	7	27	White/Black	Brown/Black
14	46	66	Grey/Green	Yellow/Green
15	8	28	Pink/Green	Yellow/Pink
16	47	67	Green/Blue	Yellow/Blue
17	9	29	Green/Red	Yellow/Red
18	48	68	Green/Black	Yellow/Black
19	10	30	Grey/Blue	Pink/Blue
20	49	69	Grey/Red	Pink/Red
21	11	31	Grey/Black	Pink/Black
22	50	70	Blue/Black	Red/Black
23	12	32	White	Brown
24	51	71	Green	Yellow
25	13	33	Grey	Pink
26	52	72	Blue	Red
27	14	34	Black	Violet
28	53	73	Grey/Pink	Red/Blue
29	15	35	White/Green	Brown/Green
30	54	74	White/Yellow	Yellow/Brown
31	16	36	White/Grey	Grey/Brown
32	55	75	White/Pink	Pink/Brown
33	17	37	White/Blue	Brown/Blue

Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Termination

The transducer cables are permanently connected to the transducer. On the other end, each cable is terminated with a large connector. The connectors are plugged in on the transducer interface boards on the rear side of each TRXU subrack. It is very important that the transducer cables are connected to the correct sockets!

TRXU0 terminations (top subrack)

Circuit board number (from left)	Circuit board identification (logical)	Transducer connector number
1	17	014
2	18	009
3	19	004
4	20	025
5	21	020
6	22	015
7	23	010
8	24	005
It is very important that the transducer cables are connected to the correct sockets!		

TRXU1 terminations (middle subrack)

Circuit board number (from left)	Circuit board identification (logical)	Transducer connector number
1	9	002
2	10	023
3	11	018
4	12	013
5	13	008
6	14	003
7	15	024
8	16	019
It is very important that the transducer cables are connected to the correct sockets!		

TRXU2 terminations (bottom subrack)

Circuit board number (from left)	Circuit board identification (logical)	Transducer connector number
1	0	021
2	1	016
3	2	011
4	3	006

Circuit board number (from left)	Circuit board identification (logical)	Transducer connector number
5	4	001
6	5	022
7	6	017
8	7	012
9	8	007
It is very important that the transducer cables are connected to the correct sockets!		

Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Cable limitations

The transducer cable must be handled with care. Observe the physical limitations.

- **Minimum bending radius**:
  - **Static**: 95 mm
  - **Dynamic**: 243 mm
- **Tensile strength**: 3000 N
- **Material**: Polyurethane (Outer sheet)

Note

Make sure that you do not damage the outer surface of the transducer cables. If water leaks into a cable, it may damage the transducer beyond repair. Make sure that you do not damage the Transceiver Unit connectors.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Connecting the transducer cables

The transducer cables are provided as 25 individual cables in three bundles. Each cable is terminated in a large male connector.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

The transducer cables are provided with the ME70 delivery. The transducer cables are numbered "001" to "025".

Procedure

1 For each transducer cable, locate the identification number.

2 Pull the transducer cables carefully up through the bottom of the Transceiver Unit cabinet.

Note

The transducer cable must be handled with care. Observe the physical limitations. Make sure that you do not damage the Transceiver Unit connectors.

3 Connect each plug to the socket on the correct interface board on the rear side of the TRXU subrack, and tighten the bolts.

Note

It is very important that the transducer cables are connected to the correct sockets!

4 Collect the transducer cables in bundles, and secure these to the wired frame inside the Transceiver Unit cabinet using wire wraps.

   In order to ease the access for maintenance purposes, and to allow for vibration, make sure that some slack is provided for each cable.

5 Verify that the transducer cables are all connected to the correct sockets.

Related topics
Installing the ME70 cables, page 122

Connecting the ME70 as a client to the K-Sync Synchronization system

The Simrad ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder can be connected as a client to the K-Sync for transmission synchronization.

Context

Multiple hydroacoustic systems operating simultaneously on the same vessel may cause interference. In order to minimize this interference the K-Sync Synchronization system can be used.

The interface between the K-Sync and the ME70 is made using a cable from the IO Module in the Synchronization Unit to a serial line connector on the ME70 Processor Unit. Only the "handshake" signals (CTS (Clear To Send) and RTS (Request To Send)) are used.

Note

The K-Sync is an optional delivery for the ME70.

The interface between the two systems is made by means of a cable from the IO Module in the Synchronization Unit to a serial line connector on the ME70 Processor Unit.

A *Connectors 1 through 6 as indicated by the arrows.*

Note that each of the two connector elements can be pulled out of the IO Module for easy access.

B *Configuration board*

Each IO Module in the K-Sync Synchronizing Unit provides six connectors and a configuration board for physical adjustments of the communication parameters.

Procedure

1 In the K-Sync Synchronization Unit, locate the IO Module you wish to use.

2 Connect a serial line cable from the chosen IO Module to a serial line communication port on the ME70 Processor Unit.

3 Verify that the connections have been made as detailed in the cable drawing.

Further requirements

Once the connection has been made and verified, you must set up the physical interface parameters on the IO Module's configuration board. You must also define the interface and the relevant transmission sequence in the K-Sync program. Finally, you must define the communication port in the ME70 user interface, and set the ME70 to operate in *Slave* mode.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 cables, page 122
K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input, page 163

Connectors

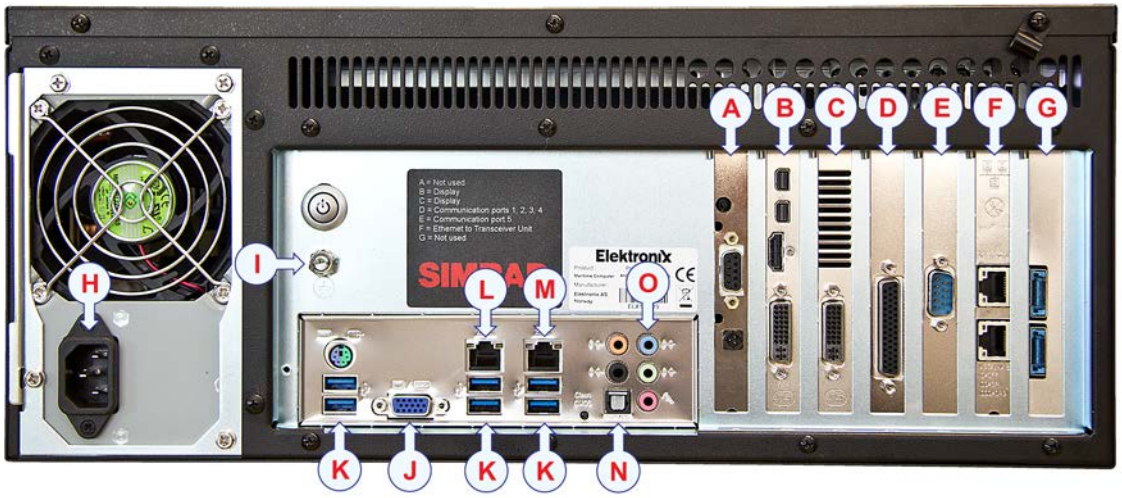
Topics

Processor Unit rear connectors (Enix 2680), page 142

Ethernet switch connectors, page 144

Processor Unit rear connectors (Enix 2680)

The rear panel of the Enix Processor Unit holds all the connectors used by the computer to communicate with external devices. It also holds the power input socket and a mains power switch.



A Not used

B Video cable: From Processor Unit to display (C7)

This is a commercial cable. The display cable is often physically attached to the display, and terminated in the "computer end" with a male connector. If the cable is not attached, it is normally provided with the display.

If you need to use a DVI-to-SVGA adapter to connect your display, you must use the left DVI-I output. This is the only output that supports the SVGA signals.

C Video cable (C7)

D Serial cables: From Processor Unit to external device(s) (C10)

E Serial cable: From Processor Unit to external device(s) (C10)

F Ethernet cable: From Processor Unit to Transceiver Unit (C8)

It is very important that a high quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using a cable with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce the ME70 performance. Do not connect the Processor Unit to the Transceiver Unit using an existing local area network (LAN).

G Not used

H AC power cable: From Processor Unit to uninterruptible power supply (UPS) (C3)

I Ground cable: From Processor Unit to vessel ground (C6)

J Not used

K USB interface connectors

L Not used

M Ethernet cable: From Processor Unit to local area network (LAN) (C9)

N SPDIF Audio cable: Not used

O Audio cables: Not used

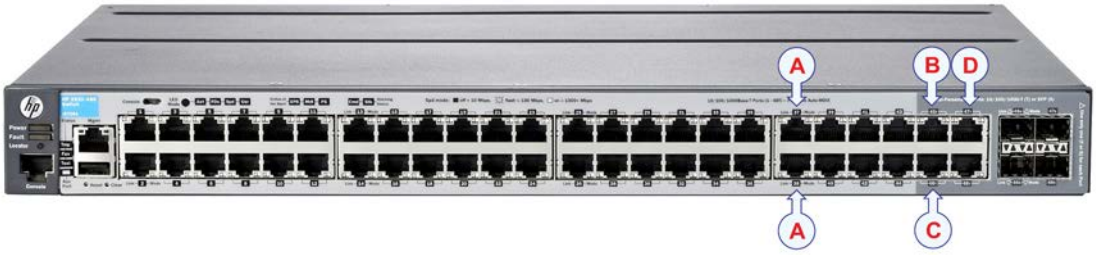
If you need to use a DVI-to-SVGA adapter to connect your display, you must use the left DVI-I output. This is the only output that supports the SVGA signals.

The Ethernet adapter is located in Slot F on the rear side of the Processor Unit cabinet. Both Ethernet sockets are used to communicate with the Ethernet switch in the Transceiver Unit.

If you wish to connect the Processor Unit to the ship's local area network, use the right Ethernet socket on the connection panel. Do not use the adapter in Slot F.

Ethernet switch connectors

The main data connections to and from the Transceiver Unit are made directly on the large Ethernet switch. On the Ethernet switch, standard RJ-45 sockets are used to connect the cables that handle the communication between the various ME70 units.



A **[37]+[38]**: From Transceiver Unit to Processor Unit

B **[45]**: From Transceiver Unit to Power Supply Unit (1)

C **[46]**: From Transceiver Unit to Power Supply Unit (2)

D **[47]**: From Transceiver Unit to Power Supply Unit (3)

The rear panel holds a power connector for AC mains. The switch does not have a power switch; it is powered on when connected to an active AC power source. The switch will automatically adjust to any voltage between 100–127 and 200–240 volts and either 50 or 60 Hz. There are no voltage range settings required.

Processor Unit serial adapter

The **Moxa CP114EL-I** serial adapter board is used in the ME70 Processor Unit to provide serial communication.

Topics

Processor Unit serial adapter, page 145

RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires, page 147

Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter, page 148

Setting up the Moxa CP114EL-I serial ports in Windows 7, page 150

Processor Unit serial adapter

The **Moxa CP114EL-I** serial adapter board is used in the ME70 Processor Unit to provide serial communication. The board provides four serial lines. The serial lines are connected using a large D-connector on the rear side of the Processor Unit cabinet.

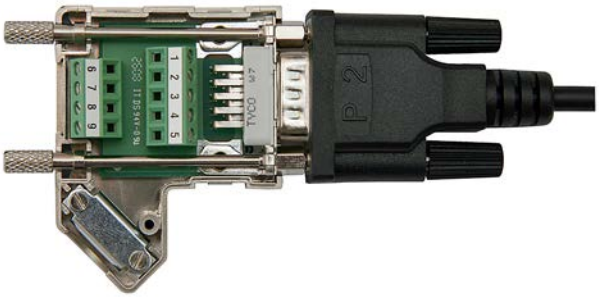
The Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter supports RS-232, RS-422 and RS-485 (both 2 and 4-wire).

The connections to the board are made using a converter cable with four 9-pin male D-connectors. The converter cable is supplied with the Processor Unit.

- **Manufacturer**: Moxa
- **Manufacturer's website**: http://www.moxa.com

Adapter

A dedicated adapter cable is provided with the ME70 delivery. It splits the large front mounted connector to four 9–pin D-connectors.



To make the individual connections easier, four 9-pin D-sub connectors with screw terminals, and a number of adapter nuts for connection to the adapter cable, are also included in the delivery.

Serial line support

The Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter supports the following interface formats:

- **Port 1**: RS-232 / RS-422 / RS-485

- **Port 2**: RS-232 / RS-422 / RS-485
- **Port 3**: RS-232 / RS-422 / RS-485
- **Port 4**: RS-232 / RS-422 / RS-485

A dedicated software utility in the device driver is used to set up the ports to match your requirements. For this reason, there are neither jumpers nor DIP switches on the circuit board.

Pin assignments

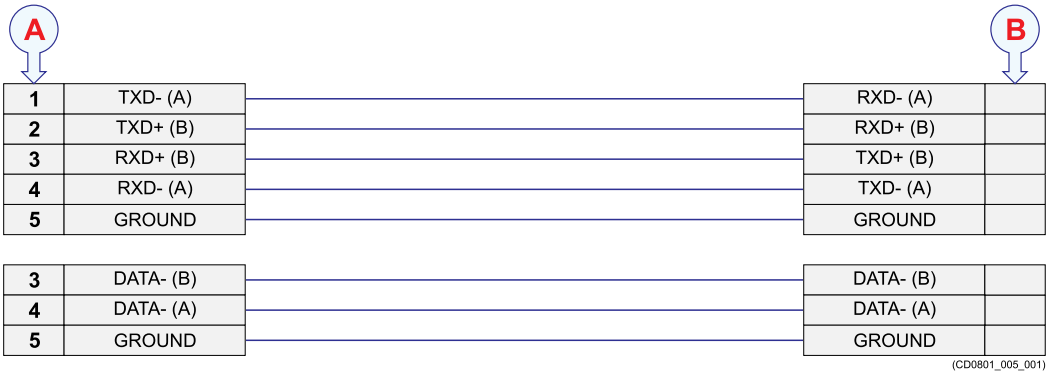
Moxa CP114EL-I 9-pin D-connector converter				
Pin	**RS-232**	**RS-422**	**RS485 (4–wire)**	**RS485 (2–wire)**
1	DCD	TXD-(A)	TXD-(A)	
2	RxD	TXD+(B)	TXD+(B)	
3	TxD	RXD+(B)	RXD+(B)	Data-(B)
4	DTR	RXD-(A)	RXD-(A)	Data-(A)
5	GND	GND	GND	GND
6	DSR			
7	RTS			
8	CTS			
9				

Related topics

RS-232 serial line connection using three wires, page 158
RS-232 serial line connection using five wires, page 159
RS-422 serial line connection using five wires, page 160
About serial lines, page 165

RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires

An RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires is common way to connect the ME70 to external devices. This format is recommended if the serial cable needs to be very long.

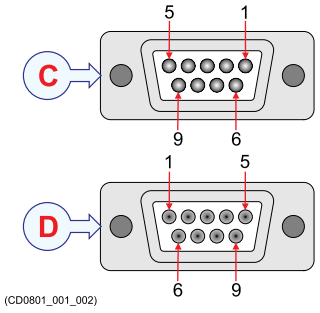


A *Local connection to the serial adapter*

B *Connection on remote device (For more information, refer to the end user documentation provided by the manufacturer.)*

C *Female 9-pin D-connector*

D *Male 9-pin D-connector*



Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 2 x 5 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen**: Overall braided
- **Voltage**: 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

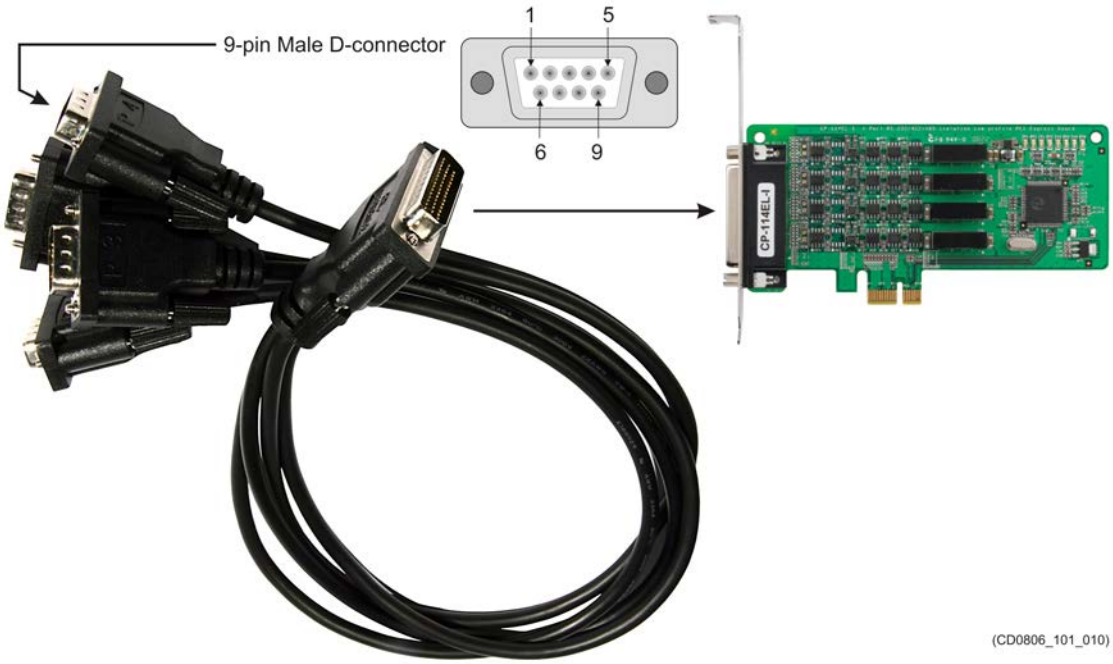
If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

RS-232 serial line connection using three wires, page 158
RS-232 serial line connection using five wires, page 159
RS-422 serial line connection using five wires, page 160
About serial lines, page 165

Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter

The Processor Unit is equipped with a Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter board. The board provides four serial lines. The serial lines are connected using a large D-connector on the rear side of the Processor Unit cabinet.



The Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter supports RS-232, RS-422 and RS-485 (both 2 and 4-wire).

The connections to the board are made using a converter cable with four 9-pin male D-connectors. The converter cable is supplied with the Processor Unit.

- **Manufacturer**: Moxa
- **Manufacturer's website**: http://www.moxa.com

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Note

Observe that long runs of unshielded cable will pick up noise easily. This is because the RS-232 signals are not balanced.

Maximum length for an RS-232 serial cable is typically 60 meters with 2400 bps data rate, however this depends on the cable quality. Always check the cable manufacturers specifications for the actual "shunt capacitance". A common figure is 47.5 pF/m, which gives a maximum cable length of about 50 meters.

Even though a standard exist for RS-232 pin configuration, certain manufacturer may still choose their own connector pins for the various signals used. In order to make the RS-232 connection to your peripheral device work properly, you must always consult the relevant instructions provided by the device manufacturer.

Pin assignments

Moxa CP114EL-I 9-pin D-connector converter				
Pin	**RS-232**	**RS-422**	**RS485 (4–wire)**	**RS485 (2–wire)**
1	DCD	TXD-(A)	TXD-(A)	
2	RxD	TXD+(B)	TXD+(B)	
3	TxD	RXD+(B)	RXD+(B)	Data-(B)
4	DTR	RXD-(A)	RXD-(A)	Data-(A)
5	GND	GND	GND	GND
6	DSR			
7	RTS			
8	CTS			
9				

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 2 x 5 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen**: Overall braided
- **Voltage**: 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

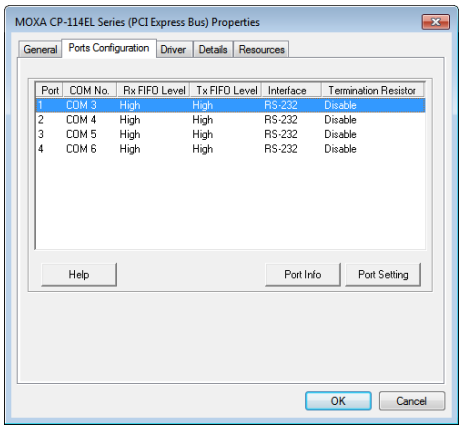
RS-232 serial line connection using three wires, page 158
RS-232 serial line connection using five wires, page 159
RS-422 serial line connection using five wires, page 160
About serial lines, page 165

Setting up the Moxa CP114EL-I serial ports in Windows 7

The interface ports provided by the **Moxa CP114EL-I** serial adapter board are configured using a dedicated driver application in Windows 7.

Context

This dedicated software utility is incorporated in the device driver, and you can access it from the operating system's **Control Panel**.



Note

This information is intended for certified maintenance technicians and service engineers from Kongsberg Maritime, or from a certified dealer, distributor or agent. It is assumed that you are familiar with the Windows® operating systems, computer technology, and interface principles. We strongly advise our end users not to alter the parameters described.

Procedure

1 Click **Start→Control Panel→System**.

2 On the left side, click **Device Manager**.

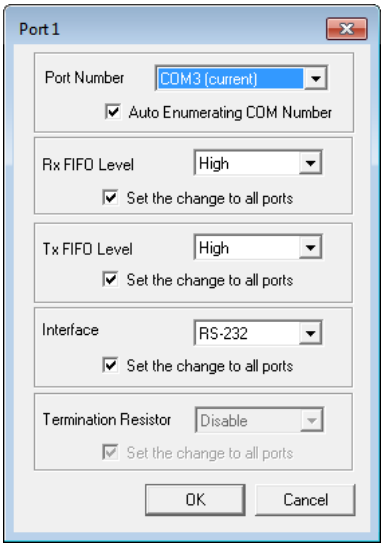
3 In the **Device Manager** dialog box, expand the **Multi-port serial adapters** option, and double-click **Moxa CP114EL Series (PCI Express Bus)** to open the configuration utility.

4 Observe that the dedicated properties dialog box opens.

5 Click tab **Ports Configuration**, and click the serial port you wish to configure.

6 Click **Port Setting** to open the configuration dialog box

7 Set up the interface parameters for the chosen port to suit your preferences.



Tip

Unless you a familiar with interface parameters offered, change only the **Interface** *parameter to the required format. Leave the other settings with their default values.*

8 Click **OK** repeatedly to save you settings and exit the utility.

Processor Unit graphic adapter

The graphic adapter used by the Enix Processor Unit is the **ER93F** manufactured by TUL Embedded.

Description

The manufacturer's website offers the following description of the ER39F graphic adapter.

(Photo downloaded from www.tulembedded.com, 2015)

> The ER93F Graphic Card is provided with two DVI, two Mini DP and one HDMI port, allowing system customers to implement multi-display output without additional video converters or splitters. The graphic card's complete range of output ports is perfect for developing new system products or upgrading an existing product. The ER93F is particularly suitable for upgrading existing digital signage equipment or arcade machine. Apart from the variety of output ports, the two sets of Mini DP and DVI outputs allow old systems to be upgraded directly to multi-display solutions.
>
> The ER93F Graphic Card uses the embedded E6760 graphics chip from AMD and incorporates 128-bit 1GB GDDR5 memory in MCM BGA packaging. Industrial-grade passive electronic components are used throughout the entire card and it has been tested between -20 ~ 55°C to e nsure ideal system compatibility and reliability. For industrial and automation industry customers, this resolves any doubt about compatibility and stability on production selection and system configuration.
>
> *www.tulembedded.com, March 2015*

- **Manufacturer**: TUL Embedded
- **Manufacturer's website**: http://www.tulembedded.com

Important

Keep the display cable as short as possible. If the cable is too long, it may pick up electric noise, and this will reduce the image quality.

Graphic output formats

The outputs from the graphic adapters are positioned as follows:

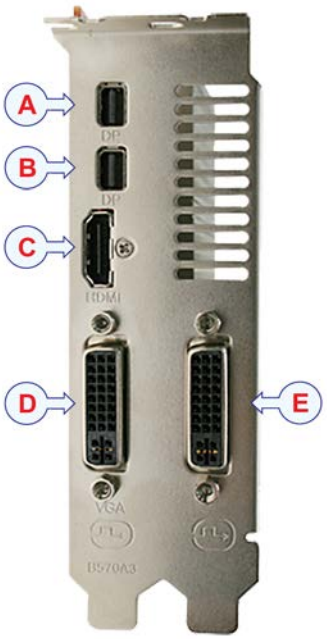
A *DisplayPort output*

B *DisplayPort output*

C *HDMI output*

D *DVI-I output*

E *DVI-D output*



(Photo downloaded from www.tulembedded.com, 2015)

Note

The two DVI outputs are not identical. If you wish to connect a standard VGA display using a DVI-to-VGA adapter, you must use the left output (D).

Graphic output resolutions

The following output resolutions are provided.

- **Display Port**: Maximum resolution 2560 x 1600 px
- **HDMI**: Maximum resolution 1920 x 1200 px
- **DVI-I/D**: Maximum resolution 2560 x 1600 px
- **VGA** (using adapter): Maximum resolution 2048 x 1536 px

Tip

To learn more about the various video standards, explore these Wikipedia pages.

- *DVI*
- *HDMI*
- *DisplayPort*

Cable drawings and specifications

Topics

AC power cable using IEC C13 inline socket, page 154

Ground cable, page 156

RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable (1000Base-t), page 157

RS-232 serial line connection using three wires, page 158

RS-232 serial line connection using five wires, page 159

RS-422 serial line connection using five wires, page 160

RS-232 used as synchronization trigger (input or output), page 161

RS-232 serial cable between ME70 and the ITI Transceiver Unit, page 162

K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input, page 163

About serial lines, page 165

AC power cable using IEC C13 inline socket

This cable is used to connect any unit or device to AC mains supply. It is commercial, and normally used for 115 and 230 VAC. The inline socket and plug comply to the IEC60320 standard.

A *IEC13 line socket - may be fitted with a locking device*

B *CEE 7/7 male power plug*

C *Live (normally identified with Blue insulation)*

D *Neutral (normally identified with Brown insulation)*

E *Ground (normally identified with Yellow or Yellow/Green insulation)*

A standard commercial AC mains cable is used. The power cable is normally terminated with an female IEC C13 inline socket. The AC mains end is terminated in an AC connector suitable for the local standard and/or the output sockets on an uninterruptible power supply (UPS). If this is not the case, you must replace the AC connector.

The typical cable length is between 1,5 and 2 meters. If this is too short you must use an extension cable (not recommended), mount a new power outlet within range, or make your own power cable with sufficient length. If you use an uninterruptible power supply (UPS), you can also move the UPS to a different location within range.

Note

There are substantial differences between American and British nomenclature related to power plugs and sockets. Observe local standards and regulations.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 2 x 1.5 mm² + Ground
- **Screen**: None
- **Voltage**: 750 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

Related topics

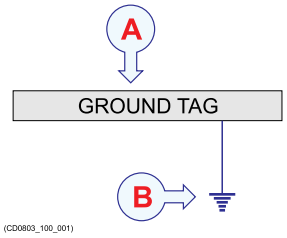
Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153

Ground cable

Correct grounding is essential for safe operation and maximum performance.

A *Ground tag on unit*

B *Vessel ground*



The ground connection is made using a thick stranded (or yellow/green) cable making a solid connection between the cabinet and the bulkhead. It is normally provided with a green/yellow colour. The grounding cable must be connected to vessel ground in the fuse box, or other common grounding point.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 1 x 6 mm²
- **Screen**: None
- **Voltage**: 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Not applicable

Related topics

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153

RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable (1000Base-t)

Most high speed data connections between the ME70 system units are made using Ethernet cables. These cables are also often used between the ME70 and peripheral equipment.

A *Local Ethernet connection*

B *Connection on external network device*

Ethernet cables are available commercially in different lengths, colours and categories. Normally, CAT-5E and CAT-6 cables are used in local area networks with bandwidths exceeding 100 Mbit.

Note

It is very important that high quality Ethernet cables are used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using cables with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce the ME70 performance.

Minimum cable requirements

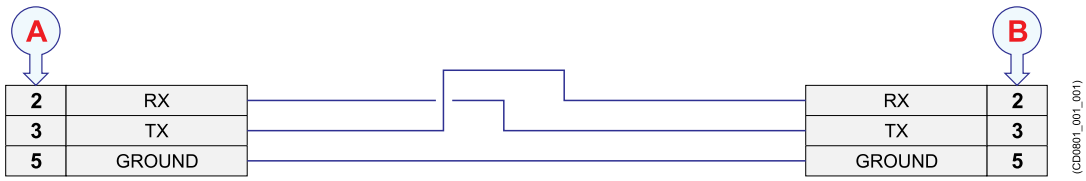
Not applicable. This is a commercial cable.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153
Connecting the Ethernet cables between the Transceiver Unit and each Power Supply Unit, page 132

RS-232 serial line connection using three wires

An RS-232 serial line connection using three (3) wires and NMEA datagrams is a common way to connect the ME70 to external devices.

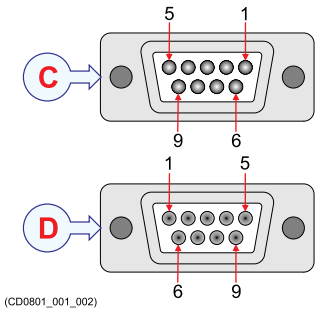


A *Local connection*

B *Connection on remote device*

C *Female 9-pin D-connector*

D *Male 9-pin D-connector*



Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard. Note that this cable does not support all the signals in the standard RS-232 specification.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 2 x 4 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen**: Overall braided
- **Voltage**: 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

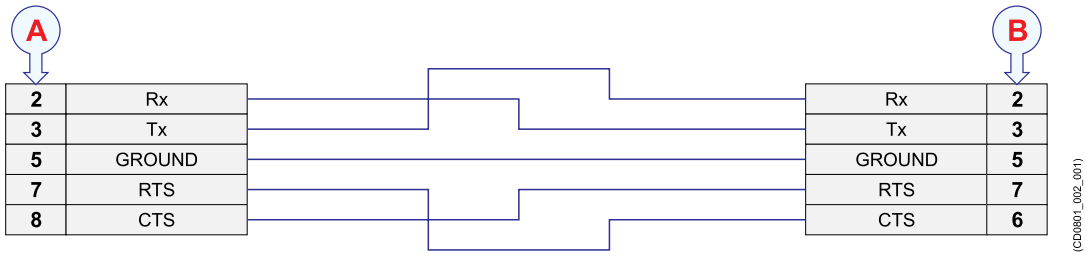
If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153
Processor Unit serial adapter, page 145
RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires, page 147
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter, page 148
About serial lines, page 165

RS-232 serial line connection using five wires

An RS-232 serial line connection using five (5) wires and NMEA datagrams is a common way to connect the ME70 to external devices.

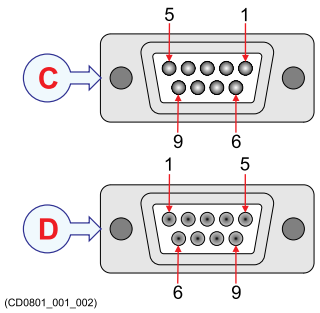


A *Local connection*

B *Connection on remote device*

C *Female 9-pin D-connector*

D *Male 9-pin D-connector*



Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard. Note that this cable does not support all the signals in the standard RS-232 specification.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 2 x 4 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen**: Overall braided
- **Voltage**: 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

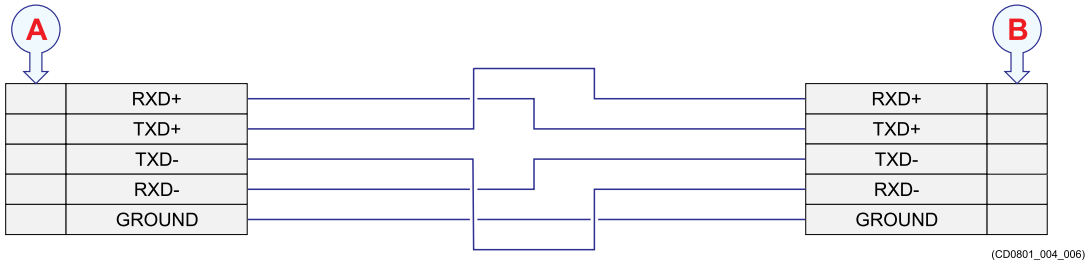
If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153
Processor Unit serial adapter, page 145
RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires, page 147
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter, page 148
About serial lines, page 165

RS-422 serial line connection using five wires

An RS-422 serial line connection can transmit data at rates as high as 10 million bits per second, and may be sent on cables as long as 1500 meters.



A *Local connection*

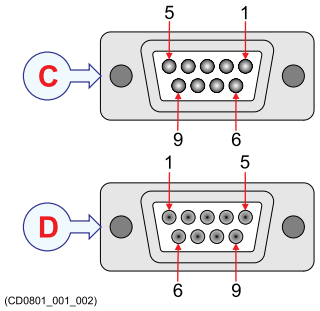
Processor Unit serial adapter, page 145

B *Connection on remote device*

For more information, refer to the end user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

C *Female 9-pin D-connector*

D *Male 9-pin D-connector*



Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 2 x 4 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen**: Overall braided
- **Voltage**: 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

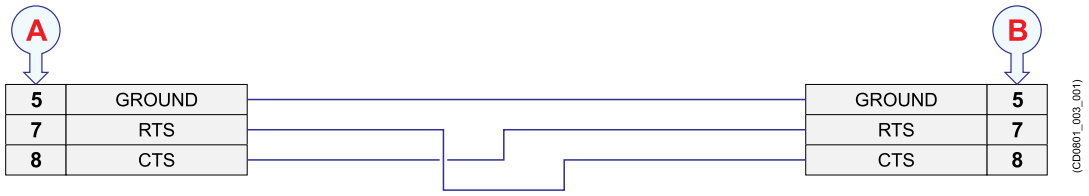
If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153
Processor Unit serial adapter, page 145
RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires, page 147
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter, page 148
About serial lines, page 165

RS-232 used as synchronization trigger (input or output)

An RS-232 serial line connection using the Request To Send (RTS) and Clear To Send (CTS) signals is common way to connect the ME70 to external devices for synchronization purposes.

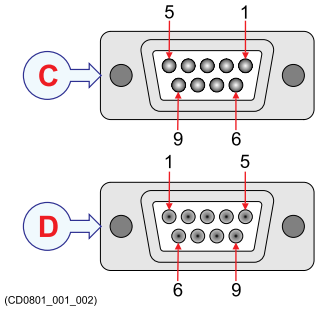


A *Local connection*

B *Connection on remote device*

C *Female 9-pin D-connector*

D *Male 9-pin D-connector*



This cable takes the control signals on a RS-232 serial line, and uses these as an external trigger. It provides interface with any peripheral unit that requires or controls transmit/receive synchronization. Note that this cable does not support all the signals in the standard RS-232 specification.

Note

This synchronization method can only be used with RS-232 communication. You can only connect two systems together.

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 2 x 4 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen**: Overall braided
- **Voltage**: 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

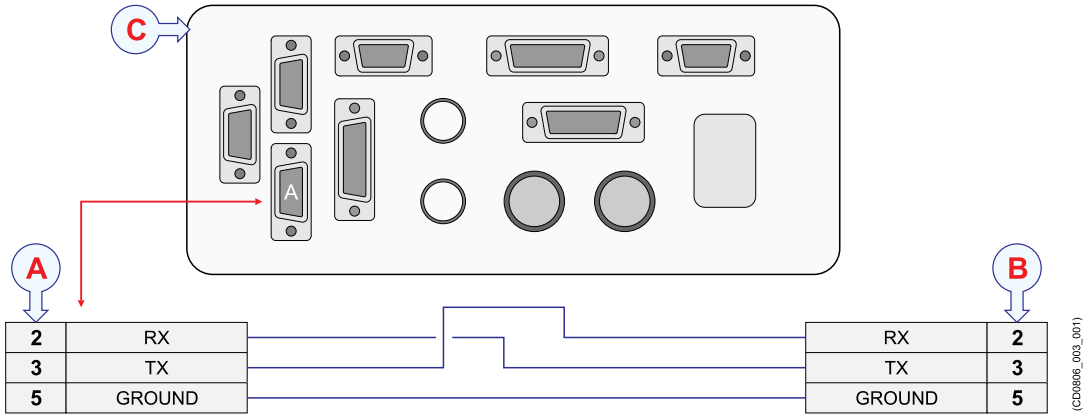
If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153
About serial lines, page 165

RS-232 serial cable between ME70 and the ITI Transceiver Unit

An RS-232 serial line connection using three (3) wires and NMEA datagrams is a common way to connect the ME70 to external devices. This serial cable is used to provide a two-way communication between the ME70 Processor Unit and the ITI Transceiver Unit.



A *Socket "Serial A" on the ITI transceiver*

B *Serial line connector on the Processor Unit*

C *Connector panel on the ITI transceiver*

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard. Note that this cable does not support all the signals in the standard RS-232 specification.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 2 x 4 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen**: Overall braided
- **Voltage**: 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153
About serial lines, page 165

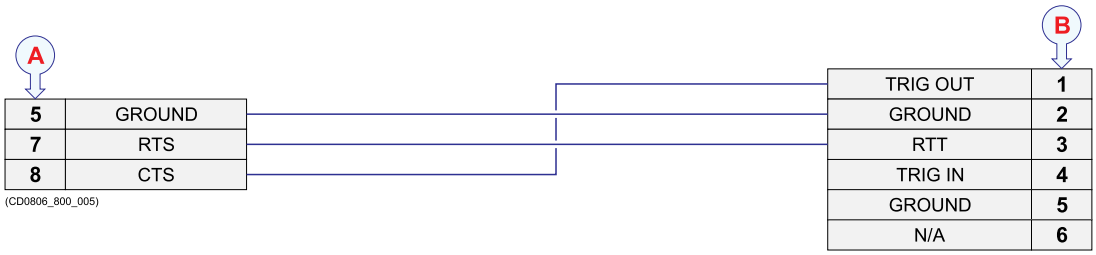
K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input

For transmission synchronization purposes, the K-Sync will interface a generic RS-232 serial line communication port using the CTS (Clear To Send) and RTS (Request To Send) signals.

The external device is connected to the IO Module inside the K-Sync Synchronizing Unit.

The pin configuration on the K-Sync IO Module follows:

Pin no.	Signal	Description
1	TRIG OUT	Trigger out – Signal to external device enabling it to transmit
2	GROUND	Mandatory – connected to pin 5 inside the module
3	RTT	Ready to transmit – Input from external device when it is ready for the next trigger pulse
4	TRIG IN	Trigger in – Input from external device, active while the device is transmitting
5	GROUND	Mandatory – connected to pin 2 inside the module
6	Not used	



A *Local connection on the Processor Unit*

B *Connections on the K-Sync IO Module*

Each IO Module in the K-Sync Synchronizing Unit provides six connectors and a configuration board for physical adjustments of the communication parameters.

A *Connectors 1 through 6 as indicated by the arrows.*

Note that each of the two connector elements can be pulled out of the IO Module for easy access.

B *Configuration board*

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors**: 2 x 5 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen**: Overall braided
- **Voltage**: 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter**: Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153
Connecting the ME70 as a client to the K-Sync Synchronization system, page 139
About serial lines, page 165

About serial lines

A preferred method to establish communication between the ME70 and peripheral devices, is by means of serial lines. Several serial line standards are available, each with different qualities.

Unless otherwise specified, these cables must be provided by the installation shipyard.

RS-232 serial communication

> An RS-232 serial port was once a standard feature of a personal computer, used for connections to modems, printers, mice, data storage, uninterruptible power supplies, and other peripheral devices. However, RS-232 is hampered by low transmission speed, large voltage swing, and large standard connectors. [...] Nevertheless, RS-232 devices are still used, especially in industrial machines, networking equipment and scientific instruments.
>
> *https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RS-232 (September 2015)*

Maximum length for an RS-232 serial cable is typically 60 meters with 2400 bps data rate, however this depends on the cable quality. Always check the cable manufacturers specifications for the actual "shunt capacitance". A common figure is 47.5 pF/m, which gives a maximum cable length of about 50 meters.

Note

Most RS-232 cables do not support all the signals in the standard RS-232 specification. Observe that long runs of unshielded cable will pick up noise easily. This is because the RS-232 signals are not balanced.

Even though a standard exist for RS-232 pin configuration, certain manufacturer may still choose their own connector pins for the various signals used. In order to make the RS-232 connection to your peripheral device work properly, you must always consult the relevant instructions provided by the device manufacturer.

For more information about the RS-232 serial communication standard, see (for example):

- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RS-232

RS-422 serial communication

While RS-232 is the most common serial interface for communicating with external devices using the NMEA standard, it only allows for one transmitter and one receiver on each line.

RS-422 provides a mechanism for transmitting data up to 10 Mbits/s. This interface format uses a balanced signal on two wires. This increases both the maximum baud rate and the physical length of the cable, and it reduces the noise. With a high quality cable, you can use RS-422 on distances up to 1500 meters even in noisy environments. RS-422 is also specified for multi-drop applications. This means that one transmitter can send data to up to 10 receivers.

Note

There are no common standard for RS-422 pin configuration. Any manufacturer may choose their own connector pins for the various signals used. In order to make the RS-422 connection to your peripheral device work properly, you must always consult the relevant instructions provided by the device manufacturer.

For more information about the RS-422 serial communication standard, see (for example):

- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RS-422

RS-485 serial communication

RS-485 (also known as TIA-485–A) is a standard defining the electrical characteristics of drivers and receivers for use in balanced digital multipoint systems. The standard is published by the Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance (TIA/EIA). Digital communications networks implementing the RS-485 standard can be used effectively over long distances and in electrically noisy environments. Multiple receivers may be connected to such a network in a linear, multi-drop configuration.

RS-485 offers data transmission speeds of 35 Mbit/s up to 10 m and 100 kbit/s at 1200 m. Since it uses a differential balanced line over twisted pair (like RS-422), it can span relatively large distances (typically up maximum 1200 m). In contrast to RS-422, which has a single driver circuit which cannot be switched off, RS-485 drivers need to be put in transmit mode explicitly by asserting a signal to the driver. This allows RS-485 to implement linear bus topologies using only two wires. The equipment located along a set of RS-485 wires are interchangeably called nodes, stations or devices.

RS-485, like RS-422, can be made full-duplex by using four wires. Since RS-485 is a multi-point specification, however, this is not necessary in many cases.

Note

There are no common standard for RS-485 pin configuration. Any manufacturer may choose their own connector pins for the various signals used. In order to make the RS-485 connection to your peripheral device work properly, you must always consult the relevant instructions provided by the device manufacturer.

For more information about the RS-485 serial communication standard, see (for example):

- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RS-485

Related topics

Installing the ME70 topside cables, page 123
Installing the Transceiver Unit cables, page 125
Cable drawings and specifications, page 153
Processor Unit serial adapter, page 145
RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires, page 147
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter, page 148
RS-232 serial line connection using three wires, page 158
RS-232 serial line connection using five wires, page 159
RS-422 serial line connection using five wires, page 160
RS-232 used as synchronization trigger (input or output), page 161
RS-232 serial cable between ME70 and the ITI Transceiver Unit, page 162
K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input, page 163

Internal transceiver cables

The ME70 Transceiver Unit contains a number of internal cables, as well as that must be connected as a part of the system installation.

Topics

TRXU Ethernet interface cables, page 169

TRXU Synchronization cables, page 171

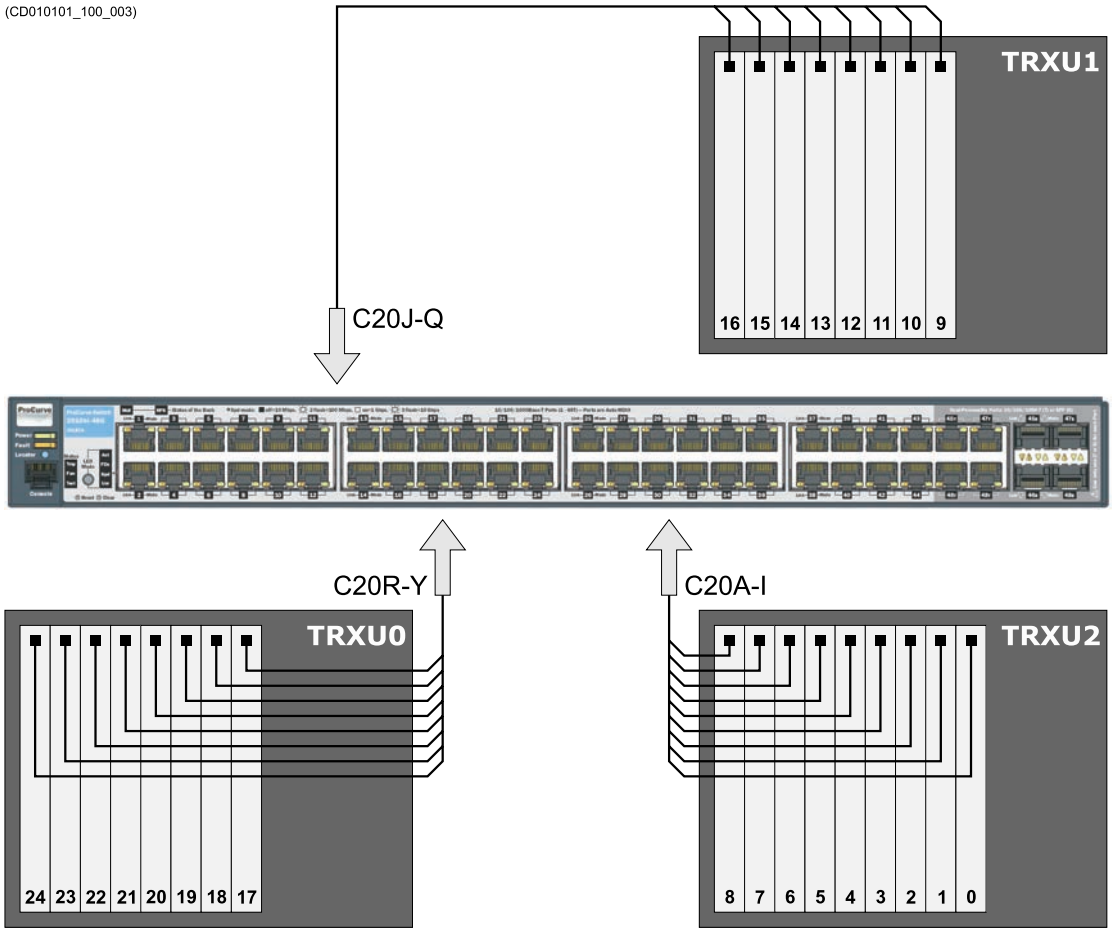
TRXU Terminal blocks, page 172

TRXU Power connector panel, page 173

AC Mains to the Transceiver Unit, page 176

TRXU Ethernet interface cables

On the Ethernet switch, standard RJ-45 sockets are used to connect the cables that handle the communication between the various ME70 units. 25 sockets are used to interface the 25 transceiver boards.



All 25 Ethernet cables between the Ethernet switch and the transceiver boards are provided with the ME70 delivery.

Ethernet cables from TRXU0 (top) to the Ethernet switch

Cable	Transceiver board	Ethernet switch
C20R	17	2
C20S	18	4
C20T	19	6
C20U	20	8
C20V	21	10
C20W	22	12
C20X	23	14
C20Y	24	16

Ethernet cables from TRXU1 (middle) to the Ethernet switch

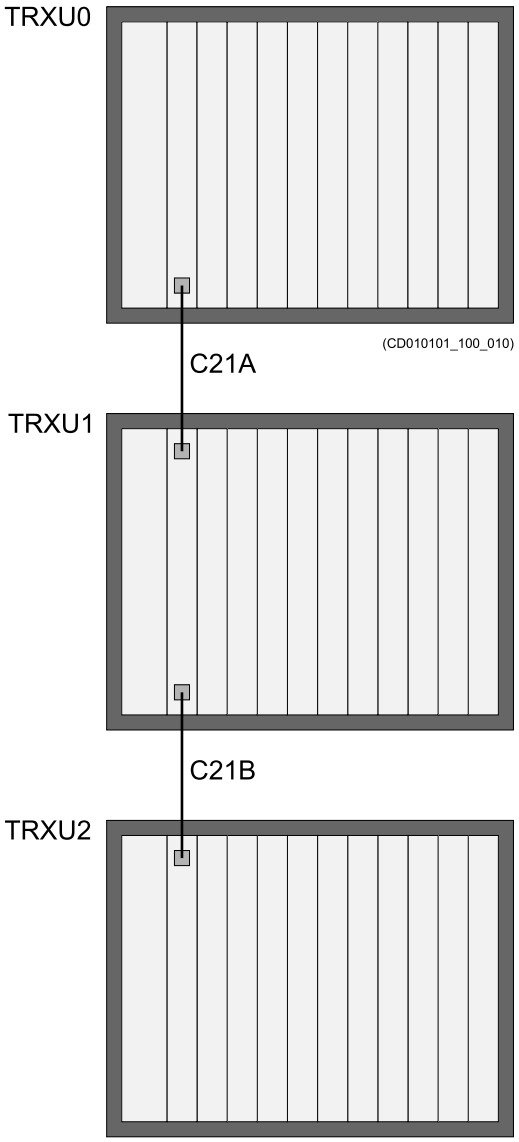
Cable	Transceiver board	Ethernet switch
C20J	9	1
C20K	10	3
C20L	11	5
C20M	12	7
C20N	13	9
C20O	14	11
C20P	15	13
C20Q	16	15

Ethernet cables from TRXU2 (bottom) to the Ethernet switch

Cable	Transceiver board	Ethernet switch
C20A	0	17
C20B	1	18
C20C	2	19
C20D	3	20
C20E	4	21
C20F	5	22
C20G	6	23
C20H	7	24
C20I	8	25

TRXU Synchronization cables

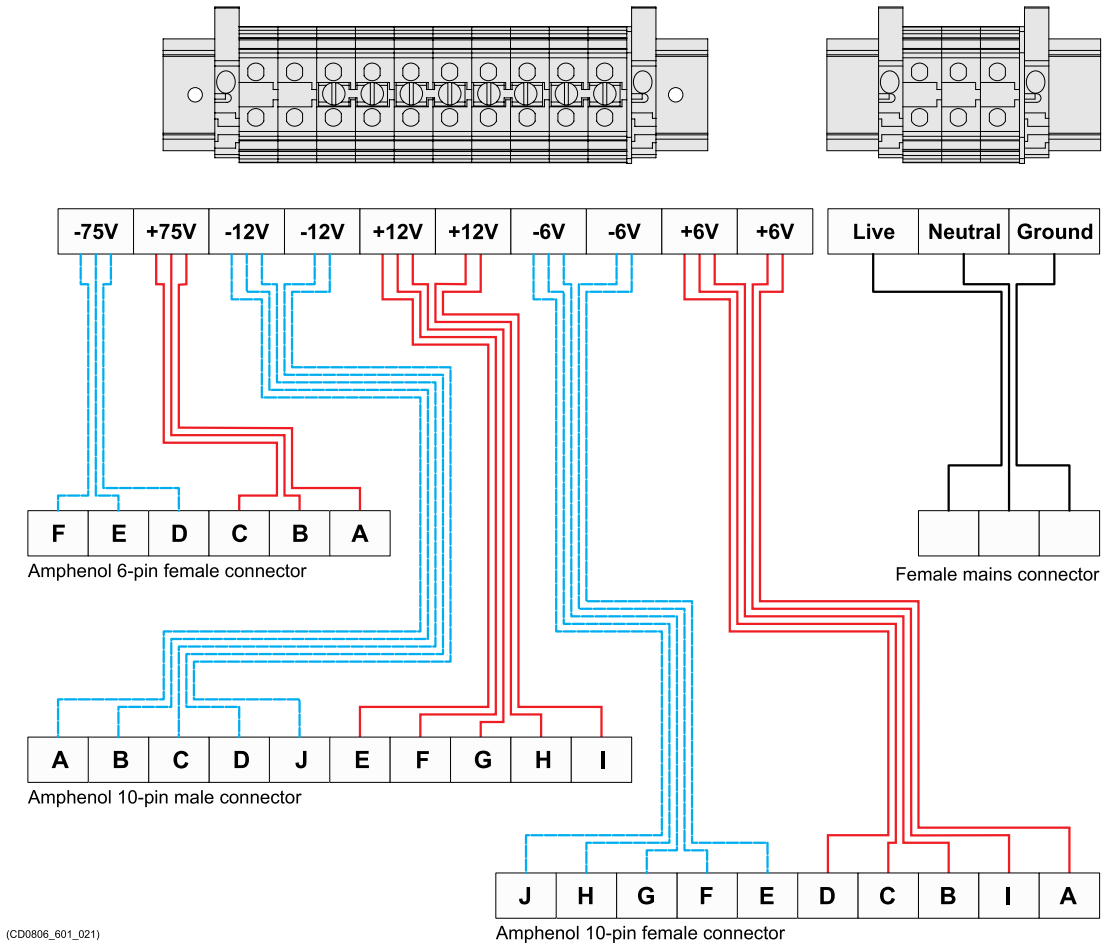
Two Ethernet cables on the rear side of the TRXU sub-racks provide synchronization between the transceiver boards.



These cables are supplied with the ME70 delivery.

TRXU Terminal blocks

Each TRXU subrack in the Transceiver Unit is provided with a dedicated terminal block for power connections. Each terminal block connects the cables from the Power Supply Unit to the sockets on the Power Connector Panel on the rear side of the subrack.

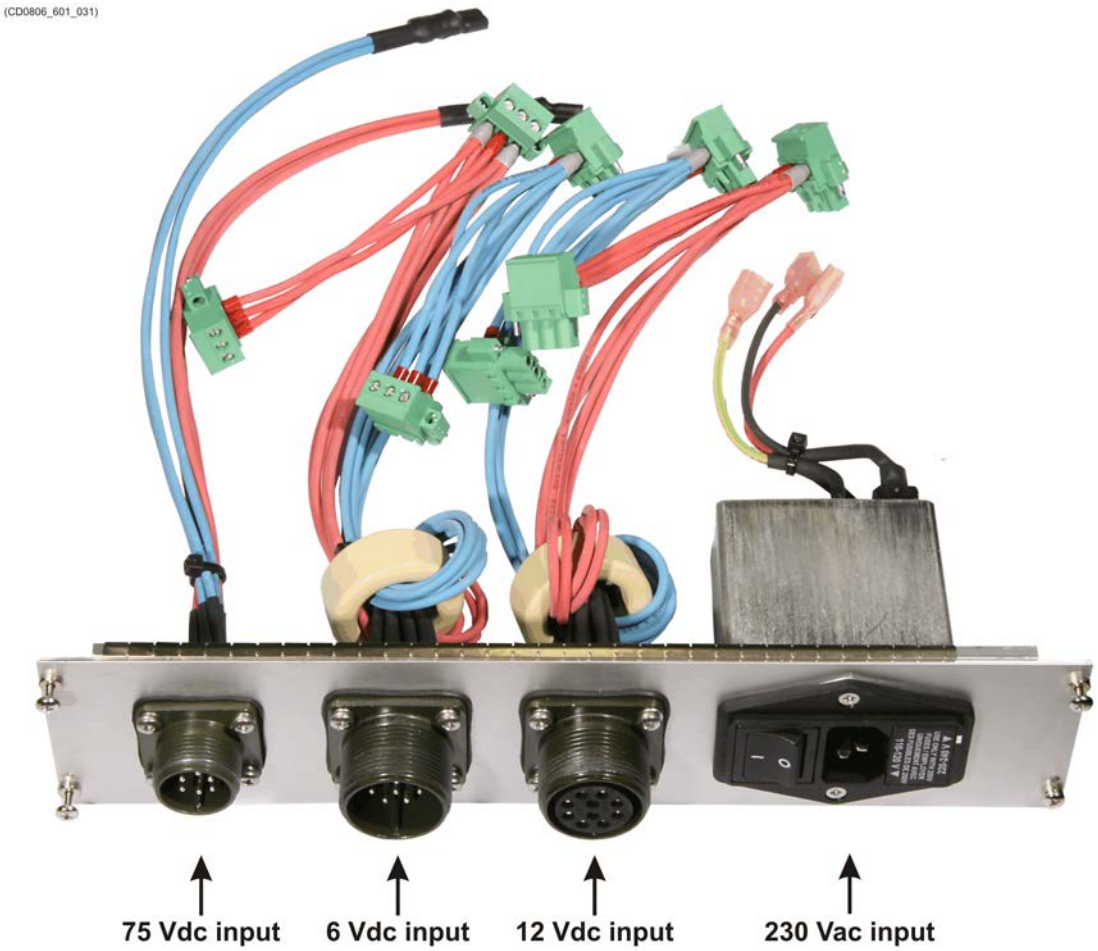


Minimum cable requirements

Not applicable. The cable is supplied with the ME70 delivery.

TRXU Power connector panel

Each TRXU subrack holds a Power connector panel. This panel is located on the rear side of the subrack, and provides connection for the AC and DC voltages required for operation.



The TRXU Power connector panel holds four sockets. Each socket is provided with wires that connect to the TRXU backplane.

The four sockets are (from top):

A 75 Vdc input

B 6 Vdc input

C 12 Vdc input

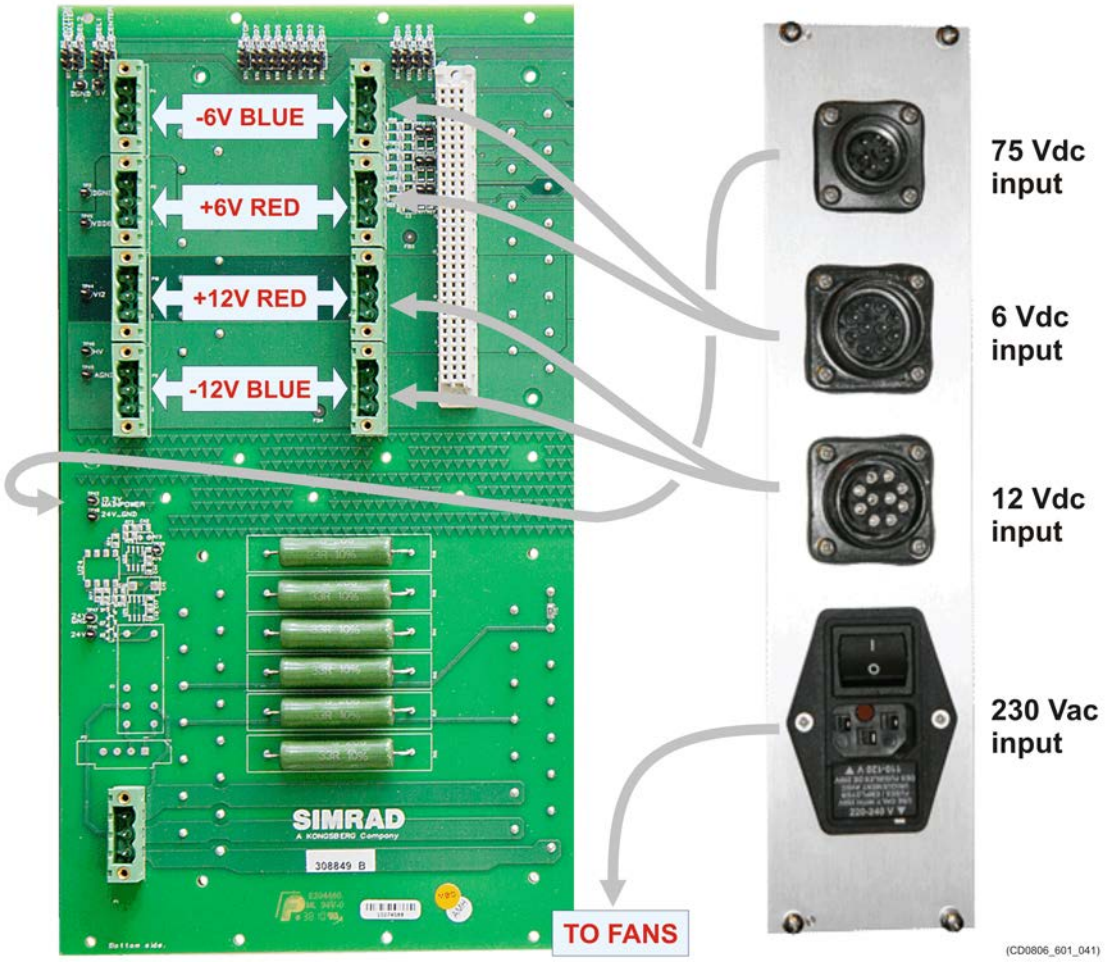
D 230 Vac input (fused with an on/off switch)

Connections made to the rear side of the TRXU backplane

The following voltages are connected to the sockets on the rear side of the TRXU backplane:

A 6 Vdc input

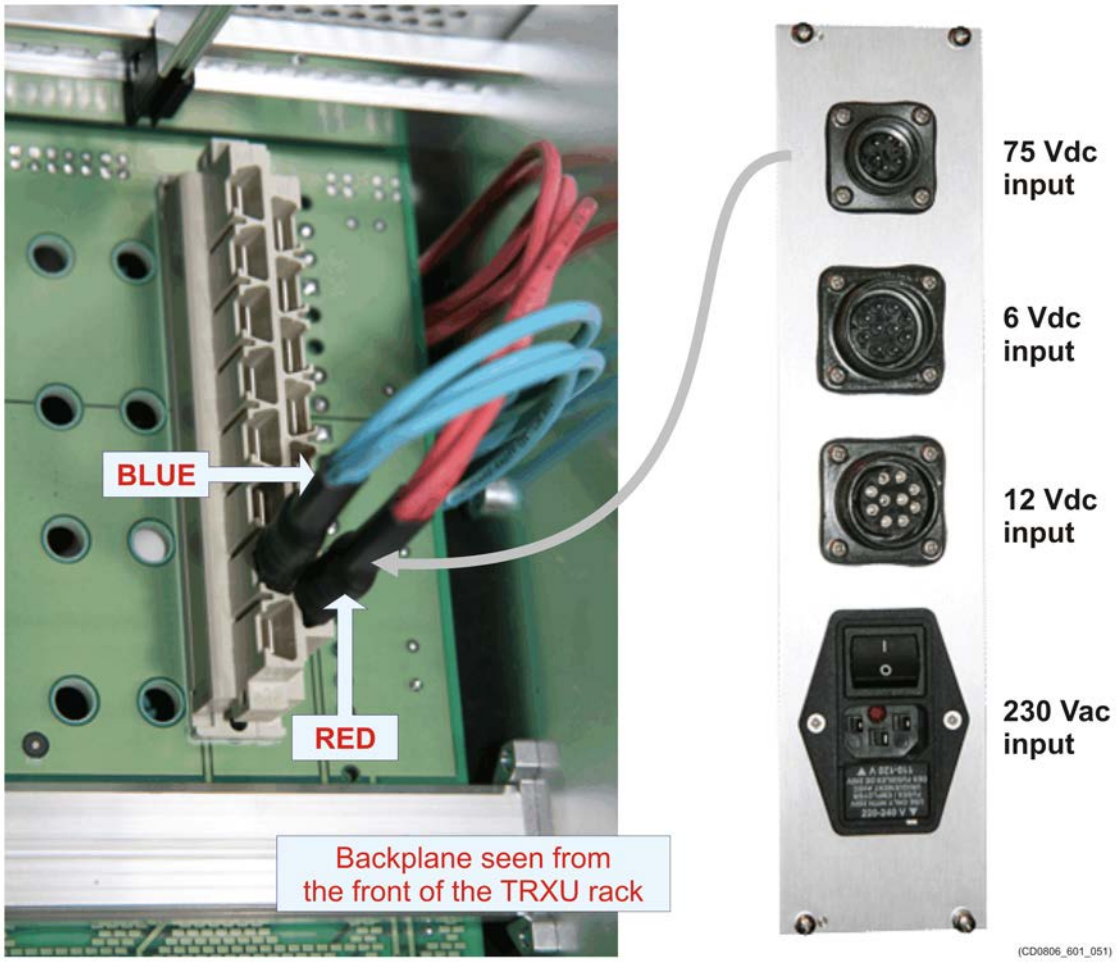
B 12 Vdc input



Connections made to the front side of the TRXU backplane

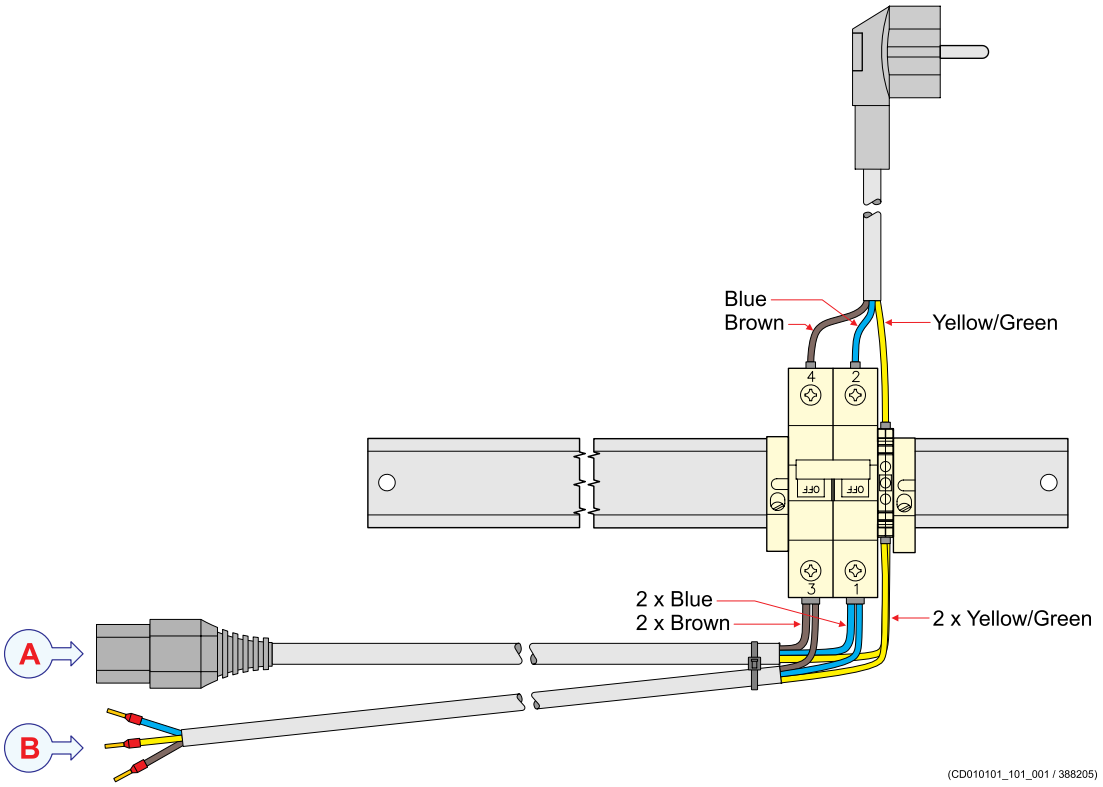
The following voltages are connected to the sockets on the front side of the TRXU backplane:

A 75 Vdc input


BLUE
RED
Backplane seen from
the front of the TRXU rack
75 Vdc
input
6 Vdc
input
12 Vdc
input
230 Vac
input
(CD0806_601_051)

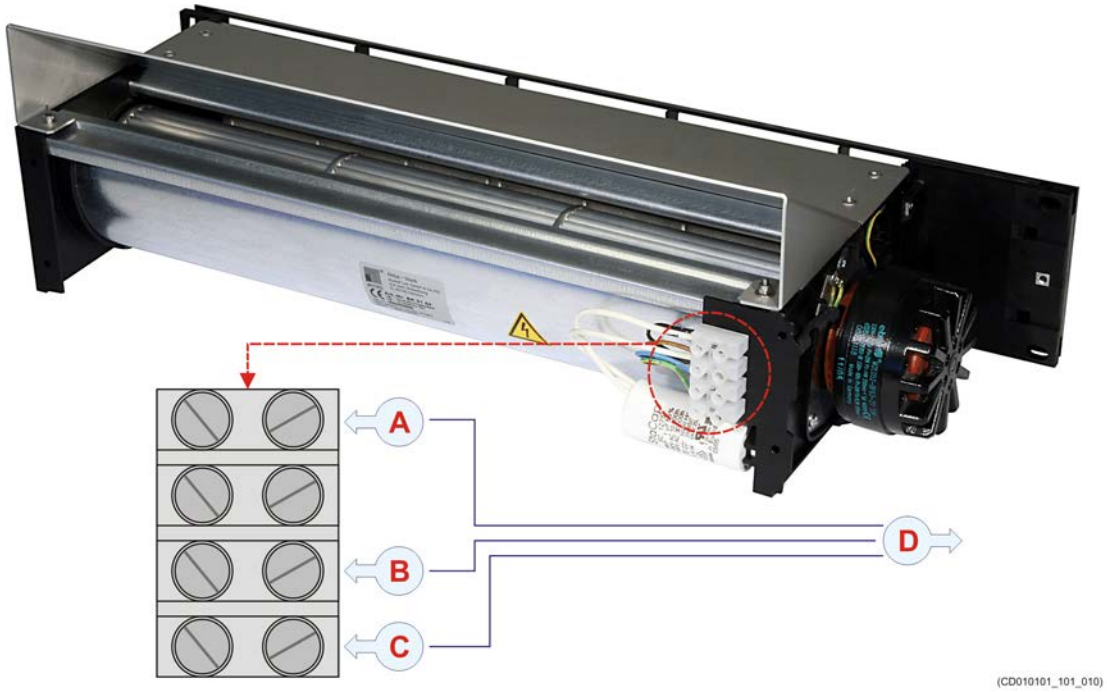
AC Mains to the Transceiver Unit

The AC mains to the ME70 Transceiver Unit is made using a single circuit breaker at the rear bottom of the cabinet. The circuit breaker feeds the Ethernet switch and the cabinet's fan unit.



A *AC mains to the Ethernet switch*

B *AC mains to the Cabinet fan unit at the bottom of the ME70 Transceiver Unit*



A *Neutral (Blue)*

B *Live (Brown)*

C *Ground (Yellow/Green)*

D *To circuit breaker*

Minimum cable requirements

Not applicable. The cable is supplied with the ME70 delivery.

Basic cable requirements

It is very important that all systems cables are installed correctly. All cables must be properly supported and protected, and all relevant precautions must be made to prevent unwanted noise.

Topics

Cable trays, page 178

Radio frequency interference, page 179

Physical protection of cables, page 179

Grounding of system cables, page 180

Cable connections and terminations, page 180

Cable identification, page 181

Cable glands and termination procedures, page 181

Cable trays

All permanently installed cables associated with the system must be supported and protected along their entire lengths using conduits and/or cable trays.

The only exception to this rule is over the final short distance (maximum. 0.5 meters) as the cables run into the cabinets/units to which they are connected. These short service loops are to allow the cabinets to move on their shock mounts, and to allow maintenance and repair.

1 Wherever possible, cable trays must be straight, accessible and placed so as to avoid possible contamination by condensation and dripping liquids (oil, etc.). They must be installed away from sources of heat, and must be protected against physical damage. Suitable shields must be provided where cables are installed in the vicinity of heat sources.

2 Unless it is absolutely unavoidable, cables should not be installed across the vessel's expansion joints. If the situation is unavoidable, a loop of cable having a length proportional to the possible expansion of the joint must be provided. The minimum internal radius of the loop must be at least twelve times the external diameter of the cable.

3 Where a service requires duplicate supply lines, the cables must follow separate paths through the vessel whenever possible.

4 Signal cables must not be installed in the same cable tray or conduit as high-power cables.

5 Cables containing insulation materials with different maximum-rated conductor temperatures should not be bunched together (that is, in a common clip, gland,

conduit or duct). When this is impractical, the cables must be carefully arranged such that the maximum temperature expected in any cable in the group is within the specifications of the lowest-rated cable.

6 Cables with protective coverings which may damage other cables should not be grouped with other cables.

7 Cables having a copper sheath or braiding must be installed in such a way that galvanic corrosion by contact with other metals is prevented.

8 To allow for future expansion of the system, all cables should be allocated spare conductor pairs. Also, space within the vessel should be set aside for the installation of extra cables.

Related topics
Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Radio frequency interference

All cables that are to be permanently installed within 9 m (30 ft) of any source of Radio Frequency (RF) interference such as a transmitter aerial system or radio transmitters, must, unless shielded by a metal deck or bulkhead, be adequately screened

Suitable screening can be established using sheathing, braiding or other suitable material. In such a situation flexible cables should be screened wherever possible.

It is important that cables, other than those supplying services to the equipment installed in a radio room, are not installed through a radio room, high power switch gear or other potential sources of interference. Cables which must pass through a radio room must be screened by a continuous metal conduit which must be bonded to the screening of the radio room at its points of entry and exit.

Related topics
Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Physical protection of cables

Cables exposed to the risk of physical damage must be enclosed in a steel conduit or protected by a metal casing unless the cable's covering (for example armour or sheath) is sufficient to protect it from the damage risk.

Cables exposed to an exceptional risk of mechanical damage (for example in holds, storage-spaces and cargo-spaces) must be protected by a suitable casing or conduit, even when armoured, if the cable covering does not guarantee sufficient protection for the cables.

Metallic materials used for the physical protection of cables must be suitably protected against corrosion.

Related topics
Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Grounding of system cables

All metallic cable coverings (armour, metallic sheathing and other protection) must be electrically connected to the vessel's hull at both ends except in the case of final sub-circuits where they should be connected at the supply end only.

Grounding connections should be made using a conductor which has a cross-sectional area appropriate for the current rating of the cable, or with a metal clamp which grips the metallic covering of the cable and is bonded to the hull of the vessel. These cable coverings may also be grounded by means of glands specially intended for this purpose and designed to ensure a good ground connection. The glands used must be firmly attached to, and in good electrical contact with, a metal structure grounded in accordance with these recommendations.

Electrical continuity must be ensured along the entire length of all cable coverings, particularly at joints and splices. In no case should the shielding of cables be used as the only means of grounding cables or units.

Metallic casings, pipes and conduits must be grounded, and when fitted with joints these must be mechanically and electrically grounded locally.

Related topics
Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Cable connections and terminations

All cable connections are shown on the applicable cable plan and/or interconnection diagrams.

Where the cable plan shows cable connections outside an equipment box outline, the connections are to be made to a plug or socket which matches the plug or socket on that particular item of equipment.

Where two cables are connected in series via a junction box or terminal block, the screens of both cables must be connected together, but not grounded.

Care must be taken to ensure that the correct terminations are used for all cable conductors, especially those that are to be connected to terminal blocks. In this case, crimped sleeve-terminations must be fitted to prevent the conductor core from fraying and making a bad connection with the terminal block. It is also of the utmost importance

that where crimped terminations are used, the correct size of crimp and crimping tool are used. In addition, each cable conductor must have a minimum of 15 cm slack (service loop) left before its termination is fitted.

Related topics
Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Cable identification

Cable identification codes corresponding to the cable number shown in the cable plan must be attached to each of the external cables.

The identification codes should be positioned on the cable in such a way that they are readily visible after all panels have been fitted.

In addition, each cable conductor should be marked with the terminal board number or socket to which it is connected.

Related topics
Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Cable glands and termination procedures

Cable glands are used to attach and secure the end of a cable to the equipment. Cable glands may also be used for sealing cables passing through bulkheads or gland plates.

Related topics
Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

About cable glands

Cable glands are used whenever a cable passes through a watertight bulkhead or into a cabinet, to seal the opening through which the cable passes and to protect the cable from abrasion on the edges of the hole.

There are many different types of cable gland on the market. The cable glands are not supplied with the system.

Note

Even though the cabinets from Kongsberg Maritime may be prepared for specific types of cable glands, the installation shipyard will be responsible for selecting cable gland types and installing them.

A cable gland (in the U.S. more often known as a cable connector or fitting) is a device designed to attach and secure the end of a cable to the equipment. A cable gland provides strain-relief and connects by a means suitable for the type and description of cable for which it is designed—including provision for making electrical connection to the armour or braid and lead or aluminium sheath of the cable, if any. Cable glands may also be used for sealing cables passing through bulkheads or gland plates.

Cable glands are mechanical cable entry devices and can be constructed from metallic or non-metallic materials. They are used throughout a number of industries in conjunction with cable and wiring used in electrical instrumentation and automation systems.

Cable glands may be used on all types of electrical power, control, instrumentation, data and telecommunications cables. They are used as a sealing and termination device to ensure that the characteristics of the enclosure which the cable enters can be maintained adequately.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cable_gland (February 2014)

Related topics

Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Preparing cables for termination

Whenever a cable shall penetrate a cabinet or a bulkhead using a cable gland, the termination of the cable must be prepared.

Prerequisites

Electrical installations can only be done by certified electricians. All necessary tools and instruments required must be available. The installation shipyard must prepare detailed drawings of the electrical system, and identify each cable.

Context

Cable glands are used whenever a cable passes through a watertight bulkhead or into a cabinet, to seal the opening through which the cable passes and to protect the cable from abrasion on the edges of the hole. The cable glands are not supplied with the ME70.

Note

There are many different types of cable gland on the market. This procedure describes the types used (now and previously) as standard in the units manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. Even though the cabinets from Kongsberg Maritime may be prepared for specific types, the installation shipyard will be responsible for selecting cable gland types and installing them.

Procedure

1 Ensure all the cables to be connected are completely isolated from any power sources.

For safety reasons, switch off and remove the power supply fuses from any units or systems into which the cables are already connected.

2 Select the cable to be connected into the cabinet, and select the cable gland through which the cable is to pass.

Note

A minimum of 5 cm (recommended 5 to 10 cm) of cable slack must be allowed, both inside and outside the unity or cabinet, when you install cables. This is to allow for vibration damping, maintenance and measurement errors. Always double-check your measurements before taking any irreversible actions.

3 Measure the maximum length of cable.

a If the cable has already been installed in conduits: Measure the maximum length of cable required to reach from the final cable clip outside the cabinet to the terminal block(s) inside the cabinet. Add 20 cm, and remove the excess cable.

b If the cable has not been installed in conduits: Measure the maximum length of wire required to reach from the cable gland to the terminal block(s) inside the cabinet. Add 20 cm, and mark the cable.

Note

The outer insulation on the cable will extend into the cable gland to a point approximately 5 mm outside the outer surface of the cabinet wall.

4 Carefully remove the outer insulation from the required cable length.

Be careful! Do not damage the screen!

5 Leaving an appropriate length of the screen exposed from the insulation, cut off the remainder.

Related topics

Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Securing and terminating cables

Once a cable has been prepared for termination, it must be connected to a unit or cabinet.

Prerequisites

Electrical installations can only be done by certified electricians. All necessary tools and instruments required must be available. The installation shipyard must prepare detailed drawings of the electrical system, and identify each cable.

Context

Observe the relevant cable plans, cable lists and/or interconnection drawings for the ME70.

Procedure

1 Referring to the wiring diagram and ensuring that there is 5 to 10 cm slack cable inside the cabinet, prepare and connect the cable cores to the appropriate terminals and/or plugs within or onto the cabinet.

2 Secure the cable using cable clips.

3 Check the terminal connections against the wiring diagram to ensure they are correct. Follow the same procedure for all the cables and cable glands.

4 Check the cabinet to ensure all tools and rubbish are removed, then close the cabinet door.

5 Take the appropriate safety measures, then replace the fuses and apply power to the system.

6 Perform a relevant system test to ensure the installation has been made successfully.

Related topics

Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Using multi-diameter cable sealing

Cable sealing systems are available from several manufacturers, and multi-diameter types are becoming increasingly popular due to their ease of use.

Prerequisites

Electrical installations can only be done by certified electricians. All necessary tools and instruments required must be available. The installation shipyard must prepare detailed drawings of the electrical system, and identify each cable.

Sealing system example; the finished assembly

Context

Only a brief description of the sealing system will be presented here. Further information with relevant technical specifications and installation descriptions must be obtained from the manufacturer.

Roxtec modules (Image from Roxtec website)

The illustrations and examples here are provided by the following manufacturer:

Roxtec International AB
Box 540
S-371 23 Karlskrona, SWEDEN

- http://www.roxtec.com

The Roxtec system is available with a large number of various modules and compression units. It will also comply with screening and EMC requirements.

Procedure

1 Cut an opening in the structure (bulkhead, cabinet etc) you wish to penetrate.

The hole must be sized to fit one of the standard rectangular or circular frames provided by the sealing system manufacturer.

Note

The chosen solution must comply with the fire and/or pressure demands for the vessel.

If the sealing is to be used under water, both pressure and material requirements must be taken into consideration.

2 Mount the frame.

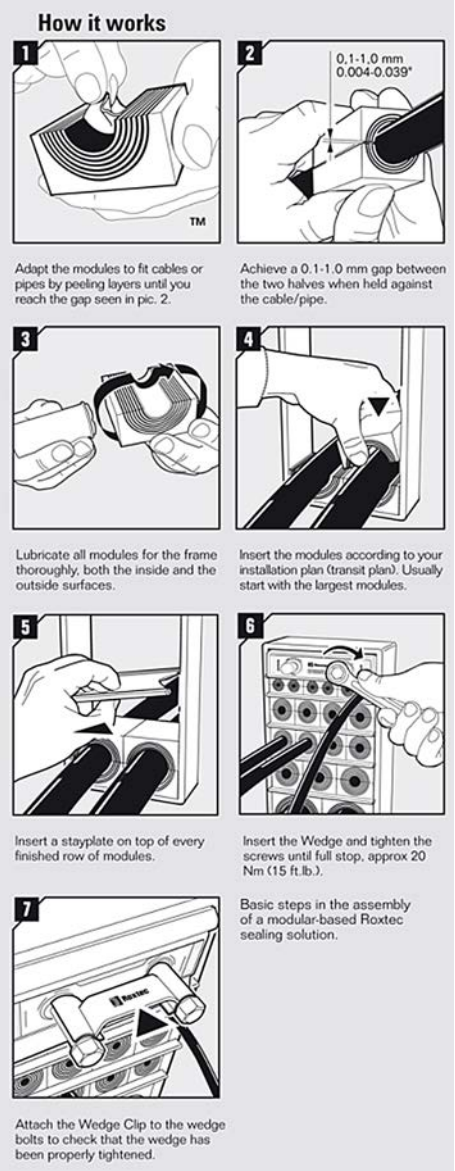
3 Pull the cable(s) through the frame.

In most cases the opening will be large enough to accept the plugs on the cables.

4 Secure each cable with a square sealing module.

5 Adjust the module to fit the cable's outer diameter.

6 When the required number of modules are installed, tighten the assembly with a compression unit.



Roxtec steps (Image from Roxtec website)

Further requirements

For more information, and other installation procedures, refer to the documentation provided by Roxtec (or your manufacturer of choice).

Related topics

Read this first, page 114
Basic cable requirements, page 178

Dimensional surveying and alignment

Topics

Quality assurance of ME70 data, page 188

Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors, page 190

Dimensional survey accuracy requirements, page 192

Vessel coordinate system, page 193

Quality assurance of ME70 data

The Simrad ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder is a precision instrument for scientific measurements.

The ME70 has been designed for target strength measurements of objects in the water column. In order to obtain precision data that are both detailed and correct, it is necessary to align the transducer, measure the location and offset of each sensor in relation to the vessel's coordinate system, and calibrate the complete ME70 prior to use. Modest accuracy requirements apply when your ME70 system is only used to investigate objects in the water column.

The quality assurance tasks required for ME70 include:

- Aligning the transducer during installation
- Dimensional surveying
- Calibration

The alignment and dimensional surveying must be done during the ME70 installation with the vessel in dry dock. The first calibration is normally done at sea during the Sea Acceptance Test. This calibration may not be complete, and must then be repeated later. The calibration is then repeated at regular interfaces, and prior to each survey.

Alignment

The alignment tasks required for ME70 include:

- Measure and adjust the transducer to ensure that it has been mounted horizontally within the given tolerances.
- Measure and adjust the transducer to ensure correct orientation.

Note

Aligning the transducer for correct installation within the given tolerances requires professional skills. The installation engineers from Kongsberg Maritime are neither equipped nor trained to align a transducer, and they have no means of verifying the results until calibration at sea has been done.

Dimensional surveying

The dimensional surveying tasks required for ME70 include:

- Defining the vessel coordinate system

  The vessel coordinate system is established to define the relative physical locations of systems and sensors. When you have several different sensors and transducers on your vessel, and you wish each of them to provide accurate data, you need to know their relative physical positions.

- Defining the location of the origin in the coordinate system

  The *origin* is the common reference point where all three axis in the vessel coordinate system meet. All physical locations of the vessel's sensors (radar and positioning system antennas, echo sounder and sonar transducers, motion reference units etc) are referenced to the origin.

- Defining the vessel's centre line
- Measuring the location and orientation of each sensor (or sensor antenna) in the coordinate system

  By means of the vessel coordinate system, the physical location of every sensor can be defined using three numerical values for X, Y and Z. These values must define the vertical and horizontal distances from a single reference point; the origin. The accuracy of the three numerical values for X, Y and Z defines the accuracy of the sensor data.

- Measuring the location and orientation of the ME70 transducer in the coordinate system

Note

Determining the relative positions and orientations of the sensors and the transducer with high accuracy is important. This requires professional land surveying done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods . We recommend that you use third party consultants with well proven experience with vessel dimensional control. Sufficient time and satisfactory work conditions must be given to the survey work. The installation engineers from Kongsberg Maritime are neither equipped nor trained to do dimensional surveying.

The information provided by the dimensional survey is entered into the ME70 software as installation parameters.

Calibration

During the sea trials, calibration surveys are required as described in the ME70 end user documentation.

In order to check and verify the performance of the ME70 system, we strongly recommend that calibration surveys are done at regular intervals, or prior to any large survey. If existing sensors have been replaced, or new sensors have been installed, a new calibration is always required. A new calibration may also be required after an update of the ME70 software. Refer to the software release note.

The information provided by the calibration is entered into the ME70 software as operational parameters. This is done automatically.

Note

Calibration must be taken seriously. The final verification of correct installation can only be done during calibration at sea. Installation and operational parameters that do not meet the accuracy requirements may lead to a malfunctioning ME70 system. To achieve the best results, the calibration must be planned and done carefully. If the accuracy requirements are not met, and this is found to be the reason for a malfunctioning system, the vessel will most likely need to be dry docked in order to repeat the dimensional survey.

Related topics

Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors, page 190

Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors

An overall procedure specifying the main tasks is provided. The detailed knowledge about how to do the measurements is offered by the consultants doing the work.

Prerequisites

Determining the relative positions and orientations of the sensors and the transducer with high accuracy is important. This requires professional land surveying done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods . We recommend that you use third party consultants with well proven experience with vessel dimensional control. Sufficient time and satisfactory work conditions must be given to the survey work. The installation engineers from Kongsberg Maritime are neither equipped nor trained to do dimensional surveying.

We strongly recommend that you make the dimensional survey measurements when the vessel is in dry dock.

Context

All measurements must be made after the installation of the transducer and the navigation sensors The following measurements must be made for each sensor:

- Physical position with reference to the vessel coordinate system (X, Y and Z) and the chosen origin.
- Angular values (pitch and roll)
- Heading with reference to the centre line

Note

For all measurements, observe the relevant accuracy requirements.

Procedure

1 Establish the vessel coordinate system.

2 Define the centre (origin) of the coordinate system, and - if required - identify this location physically.

3 Set out the required coordinate reference points throughout the vessel.

4 Establish the vessel's centre line, and - if required - identify this line with physical markings.

5 Make the necessary position and angle measurements of the transducer.

6 Make the necessary position and angle measurements of the motion reference unit (MRU).

7 Make the necessary position and angle measurements of the heading sensor.

8 Make the necessary position and angle measurements of the antennas for each global positioning system (GPS).

9 Make the necessary position and angle measurements of other relevant sensors.

Result

All results from the dimensional survey measurements must be summarized in a report by the consultants doing the work.

Further requirements

In order to check and verify the performance of the ME70 system, we strongly recommend that calibration surveys are done at regular intervals, or prior to any large survey. If existing sensors have been replaced, or new sensors have been installed, a new calibration is always required. A new calibration may also be required after an update of the ME70 software. Refer to the software release note.

Related topics

Quality assurance of ME70 data, page 188
Dimensional survey accuracy requirements, page 192
Defining the installation parameters for the global positioning system (GPS) antenna, page 219
Defining the installation parameters for the motion reference unit (MRU), page 221
Defining the installation parameters for the transducer, page 223

Dimensional survey accuracy requirements

Minimum accuracy requirements are defined for the dimensional survey. Higher accuracy will provide better survey results.

The accuracy requirements provided have been determined from considerations on how they contribute to the total ME70 accuracy. Any errors in these measurements should not contribute significantly to depth or position errors in the soundings.

Note

The given accuracies are maximum values. If easily achievable, better accuracies should be obtained.

Transducer

- **Position (x,y)**: ±0.05 m
- **Position (z)**: ±0.02 m
- **Pitch**: ±0.10°
- **Roll**: ±0.025°
- **Heading**: ±0.1°

Motion Reference Unit (MRU)

- **Position (x,y)**: ±0.05 m
- **Position (z)**: ±0.05 m
- **Pitch**: ±0.05°
- **Roll**: ±0.02°
- **Heading**: ±0.05°

Heading sensor

- **Heading**: ±0.1°

Global Positioning System (GPS) (Antenna)

- **Horizontal position (x,y)**: ±0.05 m
- **Vertical position (z)**: ±0.005 m

Waterline reference mark

- **Position (z)**: ±0.005 m

Related topics

Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors, page 190

Vessel coordinate system

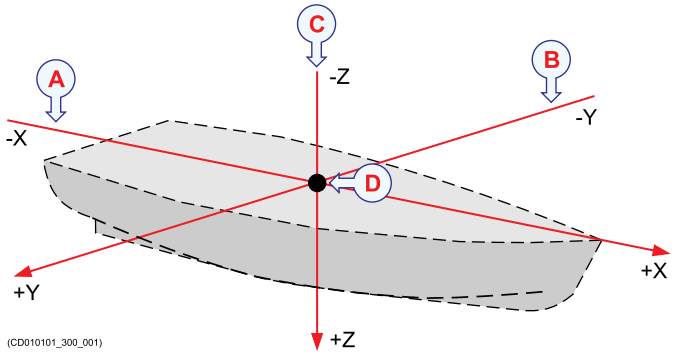
The vessel coordinate system is established to define the relative physical locations of systems and sensors.

When you have several different sensors and transducers on your vessel, and you wish each of them to provide accurate data, you need to know their relative physical positions. The antenna of a position sensor is typically mounted high above the superstructure, while a motion sensor is located close to the vessel's centre of gravity. Both of these are physically positioned far away from the transducer on a depth sensor, which may be located closer to the bow. Very often, the information from one sensor depends on data from an other. It is then important that the relevant measurements are compensated for these relative distances.

Example

If you wish to measure the actual water depth, you will need to know the vertical distance from the echo sounder transducer to the water line. Since the vessel's displacement changes with the amount of cargo, fuel etc, the physical location of the water line on the hull must either be measured at a regular basis, or measured with a second sensor.

In order to establish a system to measure the relative distance between sensors, a virtual coordinate system is established. This coordinate system uses three vectors; X, Y and Z.



A *The X-axis is the longitudinal direction of the vessel, and in parallel with the deck. A positive value for X means that a sensor or a reference point is located ahead of the reference point (origin).*

B *The Y-axis is the transverse direction of the vessel, and in parallel with the deck. A positive value for Y means that a sensor or a reference point is located on the starboard side of the reference point (origin).*

C *The Z-axis is vertical, and in parallel with the mast. A positive value for Z means that a sensor or a new reference point is located under the reference point (origin).*

D *Reference point (origin)*

Coordinate system origin

The *origin* is the common reference point where all three axis in the vessel coordinate system meet. All physical locations of the vessel's sensors (radar and positioning system antennas, echo sounder and sonar transducers, motion reference units etc) are referenced to the origin. In most cases, the location of the vessel's "official" origin has been defined

by the designer or shipyard. This origin is normally identified with a physical marking, and also shown on the vessel drawings.

Frequently used locations are:

- Aft immediately over the rudder (frame 0)
- Vessel's centre of gravity
- The physical location of the motion reference unit (MRU)

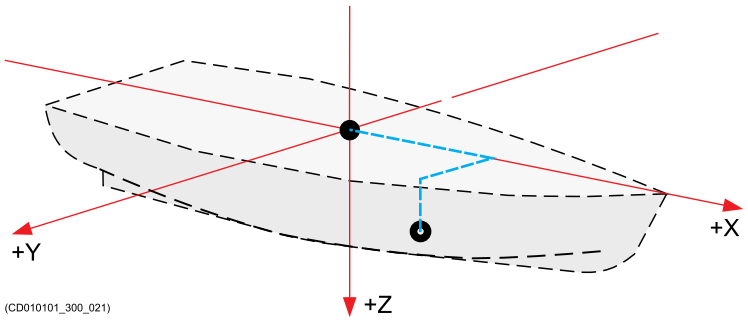
Coordinate system alternative origins

If necessary, other origin locations may be defined for specific products or purposes. One example is the *Navigation Reference Point* that is frequently used. Whenever a vessel is surveyed to establish accurate offset information, the surveyor may also establish an alternative origin location. Whenever relevant, any such alternative locations must be defined using offset values to the "official" origin established by the designer or shipyard. A commonly used alternative origin is the physical location of the vessel's motion reference unit (MRU).

Defining the physical location of each sensor

By means of the vessel coordinate system, the physical location of every sensor can be defined using three numerical values for X, Y and Z. These values must define the vertical and horizontal distances from a single reference point; the origin. The physical location of the motion reference unit (MRU) is often the most important sensor to define. For many systems, the vessel heading is also a critical measurement.

In this example, a second reference point has been established. It is defined with three positive offset values for X, Y and Z. All values are positive because the new reference point is in front of and below the origin, and on the starboard side.



The accuracy of the three numerical values for X, Y and Z defines the accuracy of the sensor data. If you require a high accuracy, for example for underwater positioning, underwater mapping or scientific measurements, you must have each sensor positioned using professional land surveying. For such use, a good alignment survey is critical for high quality results. Surveys are normally done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods.

Setting to work

Topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Inspecting the ME70 installation, page 198
Powering up the ME70 for the first time, page 208
Configuring the ME70 for operational use, page 219
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225
Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251
Creating a backup with the ME70 configuration and software installation, page 265
Installation remarks, page 270

Setting to work summary

Once all the hardware units have been installed, and all the cables have been connected, the ME70 can be powered up for the first time, and set to work.

Prerequisites

Before you can set the ME70 to work, the following work must be finalized.

- All ME70 hardware units have been installed according to the relevant instructions.
- All system cables have been installed.
- All connections have been made.
- All operating power is available.
- All peripheral devices that shall communicate with the ME70 are available and operational.
- All relevant personnel and tools are available.

Procedure

1 Do a thorough visual inspection to verify that the ME70 is ready for operational use.

   a Verify that all hardware have been installed correctly.

   b Verify that all cables have been connected correctly.

   Inspecting the ME70 installation, page 198

2 Power up the ME70 for the first time.

   Powering up the ME70 for the first time, page 208

3 Configure the ME70 for operational use by inserting the relevant installation parameters.

   To allow the ME70 to provide correct data, you must define and insert the location of each navigation and motion sensor, as well as the location of the transducer. Do this as accurately as possible.

   a Insert the physical dimensions of your vessel (length and width).

   b Define and insert the location of the ship origin.

   c Insert the physical location of the transducer.

   d Insert the physical location of the motion reference unit (MRU).

   e Insert the physical location of the global positioning system (GPS) antenna.

   Configuring the ME70 for operational use, page 219

4 Set up the interfaces with the external devices (navigation sensors and other peripherals).

To provide correct information, the ME70 needs to communicate with external devices. All these interfaces must be set up in the ME70 user interface.

Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

5 Verify that the ME70 is fully operational

To check that the ME70 fulfills all operational and functional requirements, specific tests are provided.

Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251

6 Create a backup with the ME70 configuration and software installation.

Once all ME70 configuration and testing have been finalized, it is good practice to back up the configuration data and software installation.

Creating a backup with the ME70 configuration and software installation, page 265

7 Fill in and sign the *Installation Remarks* form, and return it to Simrad.

Installation remarks, page 270

Inspecting the ME70 installation

Topics

Visual inspection of the display, page 198

Visual inspection of the Processor Unit, page 199

Visual inspection of the Transceiver Unit, page 201

Environmental inspection of the Transceiver Unit, page 202

Visual inspection of the Power Supply Unit, page 204

Inspecting the transducer installation, page 205

Verifying that all ME70 cables are properly connected, page 206

Visual inspection of the display

A visual inspection of the ME70 display is required to verify that the unit has not been physically damaged during the installation.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is installed as specified in the ME70 *Installation manual*. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Context

This test procedure is only applicable when the display is provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the ME70 delivery.

Observe the installation shipyard's procedures for workmanship, installation of physical units, and installation and termination of cables.

Procedure

1 Verify that the display is installed in the correct location, and that it is suitably orientated with respect to ambient light conditions and reflections.

2 Verify that the unit is not physically damaged, and that the paint-work is clean without dents or scratches.

The physical handling of the unit during the installation may have caused some minor scratches to the paint-work. This can be accepted. However, if rough handling has caused serious damage to the unit, this must be recorded with a written statement and necessary photos, so that corrective actions can be made.

3 Verify that the unit has been identified with the relevant product label(s), and that one label includes the registration and serial numbers.

4 Check the physical installation of the unit.

   a Verify that the structure to which the display is fastened is substantial enough to hold the unit securely under all operating conditions.

   b If the display is secured to a table or shelf, check that it is bolted or welded securely to the deck and/or bulkhead.

   c If the unit is installed inside a rack or in a closed compartment, check that ample ventilation is provided to avoid overheating.

   d Verify that ample space is provided around the unit to allow for maintenance and replacement of parts.

   e Check that the bolts, screws or studs holding the unit are of the correct size.

   f Check that the correct flat and shake-proof washers have been used.

   g Check that all nuts have been tightened properly.

   h Check that all welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.

5 Check that the unit is firmly connected to vessel ground.

   a Check that the unit is securely connected to the vessel ground with an earthing strap. The strap must be in addition to any incidental electrical contact made by the mounting lugs on the unit.

   b Use a standard multimeter to check that the resistance between the unit and the ship's ground is approximately 0 (zero) Ω.

6 Check the cables.

   a Check that all cables leading to the unit have been properly mounted and secured.

   b Verify that enough slack has been provided on the cables to allow maintenance and replacement.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Inspecting the ME70 installation, page 198

Visual inspection of the Processor Unit

A visual inspection of the ME70 Processor Unit is required to verify that the unit has not been physically damaged during the installation.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is installed as specified in the ME70 *Installation manual*. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Context

Observe the installation shipyard's procedures for workmanship, installation of physical units, and installation and termination of cables.

Procedure

1 Verify that the computer is installed in the correct location, and that it is suitably oriented for replacement and cabling.

2 Verify that the unit is not physically damaged, and that the paint-work is clean without dents or scratches.

   The physical handling of the unit during the installation may have caused some minor scratches to the paint-work. This can be accepted. However, if rough handling has caused serious damage to the unit, this must be recorded with a written statement and necessary photos, so that corrective actions can be made.

3 Verify that the unit has been identified with the relevant product label(s), and that one label includes the registration and serial numbers.

4 Check the physical installation of the unit.

   a Verify that you have free access to rear and front side connectors on the computer for maintenance purposes.

   b Verify that ample space is provided to open/close DVD and/or CD lids (if relevant), and to insert and remove USB flash disks.

   c If the unit is installed inside a rack or in a closed compartment, check that ample ventilation is provided to avoid overheating.

   d Verify that ample space is provided around the unit to allow for maintenance and replacement of parts.

   e Check that the bolts, screws or studs holding the unit are of the correct size.

   f Check that the correct flat and shake-proof washers have been used.

   g Check that all nuts have been tightened properly.

   h Check that all welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.

5 Check that the unit is firmly connected to vessel ground.

   a Check that the unit is securely connected to the vessel ground with an earthing strap. The strap must be in addition to any incidental electrical contact made by the mounting lugs on the unit.

   b Use a standard multimeter to check that the resistance between the unit and the ship's ground is approximately 0 (zero) Ω.

6 Check the cables.

   a Check that all cables leading to the unit have been properly mounted and secured.

b Verify that enough slack has been provided on the cables to allow maintenance and replacement.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Inspecting the ME70 installation, page 198

Visual inspection of the Transceiver Unit

A visual inspection of the Transceiver Unit is required to verify that the unit has not been physically damaged during the installation.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is installed as specified in the ME70 *Installation manual*. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Context

Observe the installation shipyard's procedures for workmanship, installation of physical units, and installation and termination of cables.

Procedure

1 Verify that the Transceiver Unit is installed in the correct location, and that it is suitably oriented for easy maintenance and replacement of parts.

2 Verify that the unit is not physically damaged, and that the paint-work is clean without dents or scratches.

The physical handling of the unit during the installation may have caused some minor scratches to the paint-work. This can be accepted. However, if rough handling has caused serious damage to the unit, this must be recorded with a written statement and necessary photos, so that corrective actions can be made.

3 Verify that the unit has been identified with the relevant product label(s), and that one label includes the registration and serial numbers.

4 Check the physical installation of the unit.

a Verify that ample space is provided around the unit to allow for maintenance and replacement of parts.

b Verify that both the front and rear cabinet doors can be fully opened for unrestricted access.

c Check that the bolts, screws or studs holding the unit are of the correct size.

d Check that the correct flat and shake-proof washers have been used.

e Check that all nuts have been tightened properly.

f Verify that the welds and support brackets to which the Transceiver Unit is fastened are substantial enough to hold the unit securely under all operating conditions.

g Check that all welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.

5 Check that the unit is firmly connected to vessel ground.

a Check that the unit is securely connected to the vessel ground with an earthing strap. The strap must be in addition to any incidental electrical contact made by the mounting lugs on the unit.

b Use a standard multimeter to check that the resistance between the unit and the ship's ground is approximately 0 (zero) Ω.

6 Check the cables.

a Check that all cables leading to the unit have been properly mounted and secured.

b Verify that enough slack has been provided on the cables to allow maintenance and replacement.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Inspecting the ME70 installation, page 198

Environmental inspection of the Transceiver Unit

Satisfactory environmental conditions are important to ensure long and trouble-free operation of the Transceiver Unit. An environmental inspection of the Transceiver Unit is required to verify the quality of the sonar room.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is installed as specified in the ME70 *Installation manual*. You need the following equipment:

- Thermometer
- Hygrometer

Context

The *sonar room* is the compartment in which the Transceiver Unit and the three Power Supply Units are installed.

Observe the installation shipyard’s procedures for workmanship, installation of physical units, and installation and termination of cables.

Procedure

1 Verify that the compartment ("sonar room") in which the Transceiver Unit is installed is clean and dry.

2 Verify that the ambient temperature in the sonar room meets the environmental specifications.

   a Verify that the temperature in the sonar room is controlled using a suitable ventilation system.

   Record the type of ventilation system that is installed.

   b Verify that the ventilation system has been physically connected to the air outlet at the top of the transceiver cabinet.

   c Verify that the temperature in the sonar room is monitored.

   d Measure the ambient temperature in the sonar room when the ME70 is switched off.

   e 30 minutes after the ME70 has been switched on and put to normal operation:

   - Measure the temperature in front of one of the transceiver cabinet's air inlets.

     During normal operation, the maximum permitted air inlet temperature is +33ºC.

   - Measure the temperature in the transceiver cabinet's air outlet.

     During normal operation, the maximum permitted air outlet temperature is +50ºC.

3 Verify that the relative humidity in the sonar room meets the environmental specifications.

   a Measure the relative humidity in the sonar room.

   b 30 minutes after the ME70 has been switched on and put to normal operation, measure the relative humidity one more time.

4 Check the sonar room and the ME70 cabinets for corrosive attacks.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Inspecting the ME70 installation, page 198

Visual inspection of the Power Supply Unit

A visual inspection of the Power Supply Unit is required to verify that the unit has not been physically damaged during the installation. Since more than one Power Supply Unit is used, each must be inspected separately.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is installed as specified in the ME70 *Installation manual*. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Context

Observe the installation shipyard's procedures for workmanship, installation of physical units, and installation and termination of cables.

Procedure

1 Verify that the Power Supply Unit is installed in the correct location, and that it is suitably oriented for easy maintenance and replacement of parts.

2 Verify that the unit is not physically damaged, and that the paint-work is clean without dents or scratches.

The physical handling of the unit during the installation may have caused some minor scratches to the paint-work. This can be accepted. However, if rough handling has caused serious damage to the unit, this must be recorded with a written statement and necessary photos, so that corrective actions can be made.

3 Verify that the unit has been identified with the relevant product label(s), and that one label includes the registration and serial numbers.

4 Check the physical installation of the unit.

a Verify that the compartment in which the Power Supply Unit is installed is provided with ample ventilation to avoid overheating.

b Verify that the compartment is clean and dry.

c Verify that ample space is provided around the unit to allow for maintenance and replacement of parts.

d Verify that the cabinet door can be fully opened for unrestricted access.

e Check that the bolts, screws or studs holding the unit are of the correct size.

f Check that the correct flat and shake-proof washers have been used.

g Check that all nuts have been tightened properly.

h Verify that the welds and support brackets to which the Power Supply Unit is fastened are substantial enough to hold the unit securely under all operating conditions.

i Check that all welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.

5 Check that the unit is firmly connected to vessel ground.

   a Check that the unit is securely connected to the vessel ground with an earthing strap. The strap must be in addition to any incidental electrical contact made by the mounting lugs on the unit.

   b Use a standard multimeter to check that the resistance between the unit and the ship's ground is approximately 0 (zero) Ω.

6 Check the cables.

   a Check that all cables leading to the unit have been properly mounted and secured.

   b Verify that enough slack has been provided on the cables to allow maintenance and replacement.

7 Repeat for each Power Supply Unit.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Inspecting the ME70 installation, page 198

Inspecting the transducer installation

Correct installation of the transducer is critical to successful operation of the ME70.

Prerequisites

The following specific tool is required for this task:

- Camera

Note

Due to the fact that the transducer is physically installed under the hull, its location must be determined on the installation drawings. The installation shipyard must provide all necessary installation drawings.

Context

The installation of the transducer and the transducer cables are described in the ME70 *Installation manual*.

Procedure

1 Obtain the installation drawing(s) prepared by the installation shipyard.

2 Verify that the transducer has been positioned according to the relevant guidelines in the ME70 *Installation Manual*.

3 Record the distance between the transducer and the propellers.

4 Record the distance between the transducer and the keel.

5 Record what type of anti-fouling paint that has been used on the transducer face.

6 Inspect the transducer cables as closely as permitted.

   a Verify that the transducer cables have been installed as specified in the ME70 *Installation Manual*.

   b Verify that the transducer cables have not been damaged during installation.

   c Verify that the transducer cables have been installed using steel conduits, cable ducts and/or pipes, and that the cable(s) have been properly secured to these to avoid damage caused by motion and vibration.

   d Verify that the steel conduits, cable ducts and/or pipes used to secure the transducer cables do not have sharp edges or protruding items that may cause damage.

   e Verify that the cables have been entered into the steel conduits, cable ducts and/or pipes without causing excessive physical stress.

   f Verify that enough slack has been provided for the transducer cables to allow maintenance and replacements.

7 If the transducer has been installed in a drop keel:

   a Verify that the cables can move freely during lowering and hoisting of the drop keel.

   b Verify that there are no sharp edges or protruding elements that may cause damage to the cables during lowering and hoisting.

   c Verify that the cables are not bent too tightly under during lowering and hoisting.

8 Use a high resolution digital camera, and take pictures of the installation.

   The pictures must clearly show how the transducer and the transducer cables are installed. Attach the pictures (files and/or prints) to the test report.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Inspecting the ME70 installation, page 198

Verifying that all ME70 cables are properly connected

The ME70 relies on communication between each system unit, and between the ME70 and external devices. It is very important that all cables are correctly installed, that the proper cable types have been used, and that all cables are connected correctly.

Prerequisites

- The ME70 is installed as specified in the ME70 *Installation manual*.
- The ME70 has been set up with its hardware units connected as specified in the ME70 *Installation manual*.

- All system cables are installed.
- All cable connections are made.
- Correct operating power is available.

You need the following equipment:

- Cable tester
- Multimeter

Context

All cabling is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Refer to the cable plan, the cable list and the basic cable requirements.

Procedure

1 For each cable that is in used on the ME70:

   a Verify that the cable has been installed as specified in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter.

   Note

   Pay special attention to transducer cables. These must not be installed too close to power cables.

   b Verify that the DC power cables from each Power Supply Unit to the Transceiver Unit are installed in metal conduits.

   c Verify that the connections made at each end of the cable are correct.

   d Verify that the cable is properly identified.

2 If possible, use a multimeter or a dedicated cable tester to check the continuity in each cable.

3 Use a qualification tester to verify that each Ethernet cable is correctly wired, and meets the specifications related to quality and bandwidth.

4 If irregularities are found, write these down in the in the *Installation remarks* table.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Inspecting the ME70 installation, page 198

Powering up the ME70 for the first time

Topics

Powering up the ME70, page 208

Measuring the power supply output voltages in the Power Supply Unit, page 210

Measuring the power supply output voltages in the Transceiver Unit, page 212

Adjusting the output voltages from the power supply modules, page 216

Powering up the ME70

When the entire installation has been inspected, and all the cables have been checked, the ME70 can be started. It is very important that this does not take place while the vessel is in dry dock.

Prerequisites

The ME70 hardware units are installed as specified in this manual. All cable connections are made according to the instructions in the installation procedures. Correct operating power is available.

The ME70 is switched off. You need the following test equipment:

- Multimeter

WARNING

High voltages are used. This equipment must only be serviced by qualified personnel familiar with the construction and the operation of the ME70, as well as the potential hazards involved. Failure to observe this precaution could result in bodily injury.

Procedure

1 Verify that the ME70 units are correctly connected together.

2 If your transducer is mounted on a drop keel, lower it into the water.

3 Disconnect the power cables from the Power Connector Panels on the rear side of the TRXU subracks.

4 Power Supply Units:

   a Measure the output voltages with no load.

   Measure the voltages on the terminal block in each Power Supply Unit.

   Measuring the power supply output voltages in the Power Supply Unit, page 210

b Verify that the measured voltages are within the permitted tolerances.

c Adjust the voltage levels if necessary

Adjusting the output voltages from the power supply modules, page 216

d Repeat for each Power Supply Unit.

5 Connect the power cables to the Power Connector Panels on the rear side of the TRXU subracks.

6 Power up the ME70 from the Processor Unit.

7 Verify that the Processor Unit and the Transceiver Unit start.

8 Verify that the ME70 presentation appears after a few minutes.

9 Verify that no error messages are presented during start-up.

10 Power Supply Units:

a Measure the voltages with normal load.

Measure the voltages on the terminal blocks on the rear side of the Transceiver Unit.

Measuring the power supply output voltages in the Transceiver Unit, page 212

b Verify that the measured voltages are within the permitted tolerances.

c Adjust the voltage levels if necessary

Adjusting the output voltages from the power supply modules, page 216

d Repeat for each Power Supply Unit.

11 On the **Main** menu, set **Beam Mode** to *Test - Example 1*

12 Open the **Operation** menu.

a Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

b Set **Range** to: *100 m*.

c Set **Ping** to *On*.

d Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

e Set **Ping Interval** to *1 s*.

f Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

g Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

13 Verify that echoes are shown on the ME70 presentation.

14 Operate the ME70 in a normal manner, and verify that the system responds as expected.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Powering up the ME70 for the first time, page 208

Measuring the power supply output voltages in the Power Supply Unit

The best way to check the operation of the individual power supply modules is to measure the output voltages. The output voltages can be measured on the terminal block on each power supply module. However, due to space limitations, it is better to check them on the terminal block on the left wall in the Power Supply Unit.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched off.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic testing, as well as the necessary tools for relevant disassembly/assembly for test access. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

You need the following test equipment:

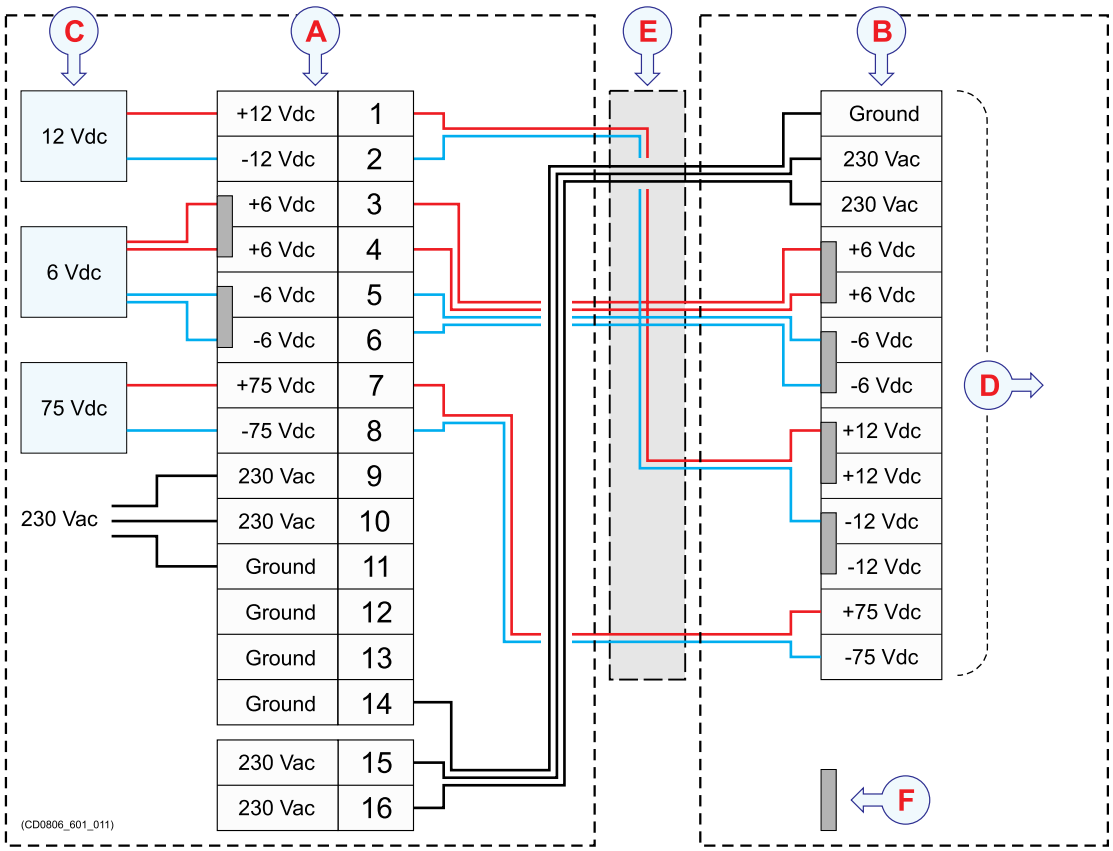
- Multimeter

WARNING

High voltages are used. This equipment must only be serviced by qualified personnel familiar with the construction and the operation of the ME70, as well as the potential hazards involved. Failure to observe this precaution could result in bodily injury.

Context

The outputs from the three power supply modules are connected to the terminal block on the left cabinet wall. The output from the +75 VDC power supply is fed through an NTC resistor. The **Sense** inputs on the power supplies are not used. These inputs are connected to the output terminals.



A *PSU Terminal block (on the left side of the Power Supply Unit)*

B *TRXU Terminal block (on the rear side of each subrack inside the Transceiver Unit)*

C *Power supplies*

D *The cables from the TRXU Terminal block are connected to the Power Connector Panel on the rear side of the TRXU subrack.*

E *The power cables are run in steel conduits.*

F *This symbol means that the terminals are connected with a conductive rail.*

Note

The output from the +75 VDC power supply is fed through an NTC resistor.

The following requirements must be met:

- +6 VDC (Approximately)
- +12 VDC (Approximately)
- +75 VDC (Approximately)

Procedure

1 Open the cabinet door.

2 Observe the terminal block on the left side of the cabinet.

3 Turn on the Power Supply Unit locally.

   a Turn on the Processor Unit and start the ME70 program.

   b On the **Setup** menu, select **TRU On/Off**.

   c In the **TRU On/Off** dialog box, select **Start**.

   This will turn on the entire system, but since you have disconnected the power cables on the rear side of the Transceiver Unit, it will not be activated. Disregard any error messages that may appear.

4 Measure the individual voltages while the ME70 is turned off.

   Verify that the voltages are approximately:

   - +6 VDC (Approximately)
   - +12 VDC (Approximately)
   - +75 VDC (Approximately)

5 Turn off the Power Supply Unit.

   a On the **Setup** menu, select **TRU On/Off**.

   b In the **TRU On/Off** dialog box, select **Shutdown**.

6 Close the cabinet door.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Powering up the ME70 for the first time, page 208

Measuring the power supply output voltages in the Transceiver Unit

The best way to check the operation of the individual power supply modules is to measure the output voltages. However, it is better to check them on the TRXU terminal block on the rear side of the Transceiver Unit. These measurements will also reveal any voltage loss in the power cables.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic testing, as well as the necessary tools for relevant disassembly/assembly for test access. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

You need the following test equipment:

- Multimeter

WARNING

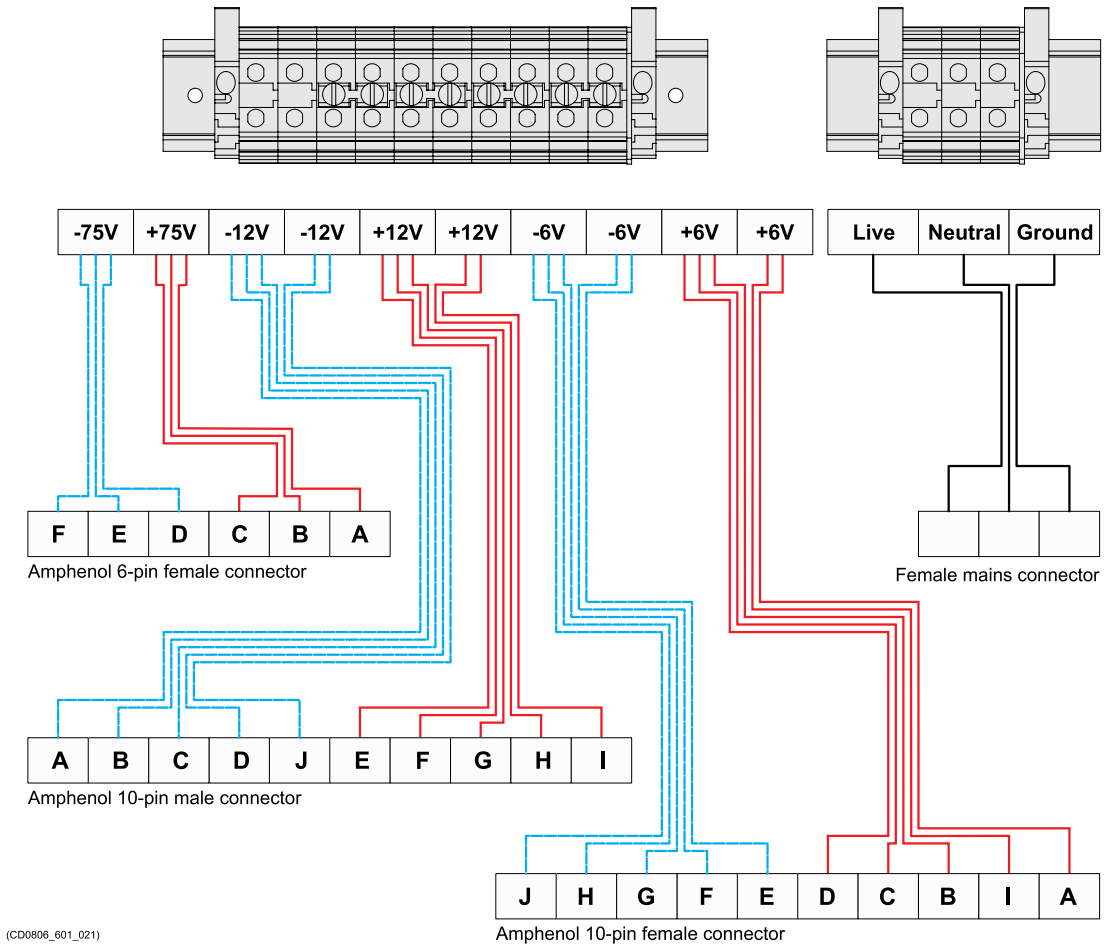
High voltages are used. This equipment must only be serviced by qualified personnel familiar with the construction and the operation of the ME70, as well as the potential hazards involved. Failure to observe this precaution could result in bodily injury.

Context

The outputs from the three power supply modules are connected to the terminal block on the left cabinet wall. The output from the +75 VDC power supply is fed through an NTC resistor. In order to filter out voltage variations caused by noise or load variations, large capacitors are connected to each of the +12 VDC and +6 VDC supplies. These capacitors are physically located in the three TRXU subracks in the Transceiver Unit.

The DC cables from each of the three Power Supply Units to the Transceiver Unit are all separate conductors in a bundle. 230 Vac is also included in order to power the fans in each TRXU subrack.

Inside the Transceiver Unit, the power cables are terminated in three TRXU Terminal blocks, one for each subrack. From these terminal blocks, the three DC cable bundles are fed up to the rear side of the subrack, and terminated with plugs on the Power Connector Panel.



Each TRXU Terminal block is used to make the connections between the Power Supply Unit and the relevant subrack in the Transceiver Unit. The cables from each Power Supply Unit are connected to the top of the terminal block. Connections are then made to the Amphenol plugs that match the Power Connector Panel.

The AC power provided by the Power Supply Units is also terminated on the Power Connector Panel.

The following cables are included in the bundle:

- 230 VAC to TRXU subrack fans
- +6 VDC (two red cables)
- -6 VDC (two blue cables)
- +12 VDC (one red cable)
- -12 VDC (one blue cable)
- +75 VDC (one red and one blue cable)

The following requirements must be met:

- +6.30 VDC ± 0.1 VDC
- +12.0 VDC ± 0.1 VDC
- +75.0 VDC ± 0.1 VDC

Procedure

1 On the **Main** menu, set **Beam Mode** to *Test - Example 1*

2 Open the **Operation** menu.

   a Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

   b Set **Range** to: *100 m*.

   c Set **Ping** to *On*.

   d Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

   e Set **Ping Interval** to *1 s*.

   f Set **TX Mode** to *Passive*

   g Set **TX Power** to *Off*.

3 Open the rear door on the Transceiver Unit.

4 Observe the terminal block on the left side of the cabinet.

5 Measure the individual voltages while the ME70 is operating normally.

   Verify that the voltages are:

   - +6.30 VDC ± 0.1 VDC
   - +12.0 VDC ± 0.1 VDC
   - +75.0 VDC ± 0.1 VDC

Tip

If the +75 VDC is missing, check the NTC resistor in the relevant Power Supply Unit.

6 Close the rear door on the Transceiver Unit.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Powering up the ME70 for the first time, page 208

Adjusting the output voltages from the power supply modules

If you need to adjust the output voltages from a power supply module, this must be done while measuring the voltage on the TRXU Terminal block in the Transceiver Unit. This is necessary because you need to compensate for any voltage drop in the power cables.

Prerequisites

Two people are required to do this task.

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic testing, as well as the necessary tools for relevant disassembly/assembly for test access. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

You need the following test equipment:

- Multimeter

WARNING

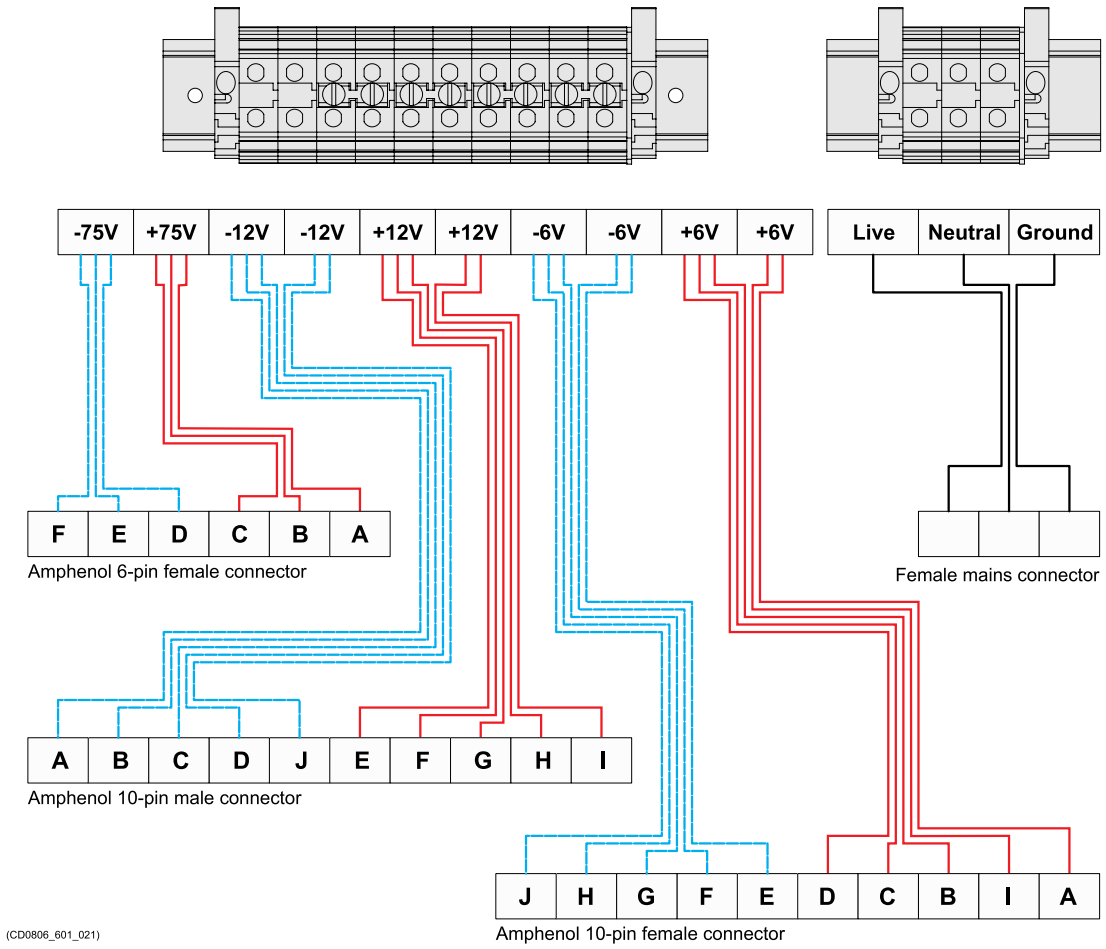
High voltages are used. This equipment must only be serviced by qualified personnel familiar with the construction and the operation of the ME70, as well as the potential hazards involved. Failure to observe this precaution could result in bodily injury.

Context

The outputs from the three power supply modules are connected to the terminal block on the left cabinet wall. The output from the +75 VDC power supply is fed through an NTC resistor. In order to filter out voltage variations caused by noise or load variations, large capacitors are connected to each of the +12 VDC and +6 VDC supplies. These capacitors are physically located in the three TRXU subracks in the Transceiver Unit.

The DC cables from each of the three Power Supply Units to the Transceiver Unit are all separate conductors in a bundle. 230 Vac is also included in order to power the fans in each TRXU subrack.

Inside the Transceiver Unit, the power cables are terminated in three TRXU Terminal blocks, one for each subrack. From these terminal blocks, the three DC cable bundles are fed up to the rear side of the subrack, and terminated with plugs on the Power Connector Panel.



Each TRXU Terminal block is used to make the connections between the Power Supply Unit and the relevant subrack in the Transceiver Unit. The cables from each Power Supply Unit are connected to the top of the terminal block. Connections are then made to the Amphenol plugs that match the Power Connector Panel.

The AC power provided by the Power Supply Units is also terminated on the Power Connector Panel.

The following cables are included in the bundle:

- 230 VAC to TRXU subrack fans
- +6 VDC (two red cables)
- -6 VDC (two blue cables)
- +12 VDC (one red cable)
- -12 VDC (one blue cable)
- +75 VDC (one red and one blue cable)

Note

If you need to adjust the supply power output voltages while the ME70 is turned off, make the measurements on the terminal block on the left side of the Power Supply Unit.

Procedure

1 Open the Power Supply Unit.

2 Open the rear door on the Transceiver Unit.

3 Observe the terminal blocks on the left side of the cabinet.

4 Do one of the following steps

a Measure the individual voltages while the ME70 is turned off.

Measure the voltages on the terminal block in each Power Supply Unit. Verify that the voltages are approximately:

- +6 VDC (Approximately)
- +12 VDC (Approximately)
- +75 VDC (Approximately)

b Measure the individual voltages while the ME70 is operating normally.

Measure the voltages on the terminal blocks in the Transceiver Unit. Verify that the voltages are:

- +6.30 VDC ± 0.1 VDC
- +12.0 VDC ± 0.1 VDC
- +75.0 VDC ± 0.1 VDC

5 Adjust the relevant output voltage using a short screwdriver on the adjustment screw.

6 Close the Power Supply Unit.

7 Close the rear door on the Transceiver Unit.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Powering up the ME70 for the first time, page 208

Configuring the ME70 for operational use

Topics

Defining the installation parameters for the global positioning system (GPS) antenna, page 219

Defining the installation parameters for the motion reference unit (MRU), page 221

Defining the installation parameters for the transducer, page 223

Defining the installation parameters for the global positioning system (GPS) antenna

The physical location of the global positioning system (GPS) antenna relative to the transducer is required to allow the ME70 to show the correct navigational information in the ME70 presentation.

Prerequisites

For accurate location of the global positioning system (GPS) antenna, you need the detailed vessel drawings. For maximum accuracy, we strongly recommend that you use the information provided by a dimensional survey.

Note

Determining the relative positions and orientations of the sensors and the transducer with high accuracy is important. This requires professional land surveying done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods . We recommend that you use third party consultants with well proven experience with vessel dimensional control. The information provided by the dimensional survey is entered into the ME70 software as installation parameters.

Neither tools nor instruments are required. The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode.

Context

The global positioning system (GPS) measures the geographical location of the vessel. On the **GPS Offset** page, you must define the physical location of the GPS antenna related to the *Ship Origin*.

The physical location of the global positioning system (GPS) antenna relative to the transducer is required to allow the ME70 to show the correct navigational information in the ME70 presentation.

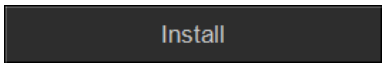
Note

The Kongsberg Seapath® - and other GPS systems - offer positioning data that are already compensated for the physical position of the antenna. If this is done, the GPS offset values in the ME70 must be set to 0 (zero) to avoid "dual compensation".

Procedure

1 Open the **Setup** menu.

2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

3 Select **Instrument Offsets** to open the dialog box.

4 In the **Instrument Offsets** dialog box, select **GPS Offset** to open the page.

a From the dimensional survey report, extract the relevant information.

b Insert the correct values. Do this as accurately as possible.

c Record the information in the result table.

d Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

Note

The Kongsberg Seapath® - and other GPS systems - offer positioning data that are already compensated for the physical position of the antenna. If this is done, the GPS offset values in the ME70 must be set to 0 (zero) to avoid "dual compensation".

Result

Global positioning system (GPS) offsets	
X-offset	
Y-offset	
Z-offset	

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Configuring the ME70 for operational use, page 219
Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors, page 190

Defining the installation parameters for the motion reference unit (MRU)

The physical location of the motion reference unit (MRU) relative to the transducer is required to allow the ME70 to adjust for roll and pitch as accurately as possible.

Prerequisites

For accurate location of the motion reference unit (MRU), you need the detailed vessel drawings. The information about the installation angles must be retrieved from the reports provided by the personnel that did the actual installation. For maximum accuracy, we strongly recommend that you use the information provided by a dimensional survey.

Note

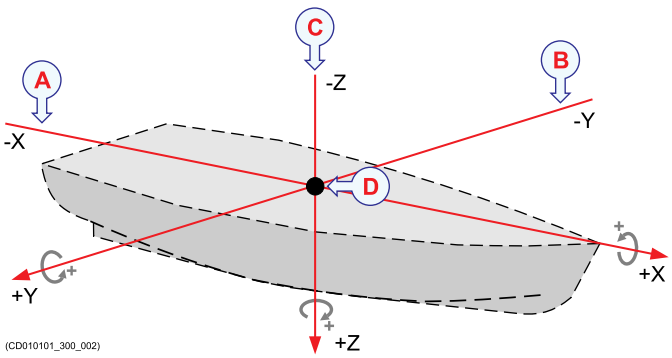
Determining the relative positions and orientations of the sensors and the transducer with high accuracy is important. This requires professional land surveying done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods . We recommend that you use third party consultants with well proven experience with vessel dimensional control. The information provided by the dimensional survey is entered into the ME70 software as installation parameters.

Neither tools nor instruments are required. The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode.

Context

The motion reference unit (MRU) measures the roll and pitch motions of the vessel. Some sensor models also measure heave.

On the **MRU Offset** page, you must define the physical location of the motion reference unit related to the "official" ship origin that was defined by the vessel designer and/or the shipyard. The rotation around the X, Y and Z axis is used to compensate for misalignments made during the physical installation of the motion reference unit. Such misalignments occur if the sensor is not placed in parallel with the vessel's horizontal and/or vertical planes. The required accuracy of the offset and rotation angles depends on the accuracy requirement for the ME70 data.



A *Rotation around the X-axis: In the positive horizontal direction (forward), a positive rotation is clockwise.*

B *Rotation around the Y-axis: In the positive horizontal direction (starboard), a positive rotation is clockwise.*

C *Rotation around the Z-axis: In the positive vertical direction (down), a positive rotation is clockwise.*

D *Reference point (origin)*

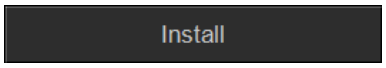
Note

The Kongsberg Seapath® - and other GPS systems - allow you to define the MRU location in the positioning system. If this is done, the MRU offset values in the ME70 must be set to 0 (zero) to avoid "dual compensation". The rotation information is normally not recorded by the positioning system, and must therefore be defined in the ME70.

Procedure

1 Open the **Setup** menu.

2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

3 Select **Instrument Offsets** to open the dialog box.

4 In the **Instrument Offsets** dialog box, select **MRU Offset** to open the page.

a From the dimensional survey report, extract the relevant information.

b Insert the correct values. Do this as accurately as possible.

c Record the information in the result table.

d Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

Note

The Kongsberg Seapath® - and other GPS systems - allow you to define the MRU location in the positioning system. If this is done, the MRU offset values in the ME70 must be set to 0 (zero) to avoid "dual compensation". The rotation information is normally not recorded by the positioning system, and must therefore be defined in the ME70.

Result

Motion reference unit (MRU) offsets	
X-offset	
Y-offset	
Z-offset	
Installation angle X (α_X)	
Installation angle Y (α_Y)	
Installation angle Z (α_Z)	

Related topics
Setting to work summary, page 196
Configuring the ME70 for operational use, page 219
Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors, page 190

Defining the installation parameters for the transducer

The physical location and the installation angles of the ME70 transducer are critical for the ME70 data accuracy. Incorrect angles will greatly reduce the data accuracy.

Prerequisites

For accurate location of the transducer, you need the detailed vessel drawings. You also need the installation angles that were recorded when the transducer was installed. For maximum accuracy, we strongly recommend that you use the information provided by a dimensional survey.

Note

Determining the relative positions and orientations of the sensors and the transducer with high accuracy is important. This requires professional land surveying done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods . We recommend that you use third party consultants with well proven experience with vessel dimensional control. The information provided by the dimensional survey is entered into the ME70 software as installation parameters.

Neither tools nor instruments are required. The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode.

Context

The physical location and the installation angles of the ME70 transducer are critical for the ME70 data accuracy.

Use the centre of the transducer face as reference, and define the offset values related to the *Ship Origo*. The installation angles relevant for the transducer must also be defined. These values were recorded during the transducer installation, and they define the direction of the transducer face.

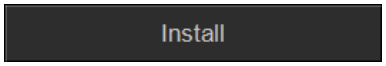
Note

The required accuracy of the offset and rotation angles depends on the accuracy requirement for the ME70 data. It is very important that the transducer installation angles are measured and recorded accurately during the installation, and that they are defined accurately in the software. Incorrect angles will greatly reduce the data accuracy.

Procedure

1 Open the **Setup** menu.

2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

3 Select **Instrument Offsets** to open the dialog box.

4 In the **Instrument Offsets** dialog box, select **Transducer Offset** to open the page.

a From the dimensional survey report, extract the relevant information.

b Insert the correct values. Do this as accurately as possible.

c Record the information in the result table.

d Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

Note

The Kongsberg Seapath® - and other GPS systems - allow you to define the transducer location in the positioning system. If this is done, the **Transducer X-offset** *and* **Transducer Y-offset** *values in the ME70 must be set to 0 (zero) to avoid "dual compensation". The* **Transducer Z-offset** *value must be defined in the ME70. The rotation information is normally not recorded by the positioning system, and must therefore be defined in the ME70.*

Result

Transducer offsets	
X-offset	
Y-offset	
Z-offset	
Installation angle X (α_X)	
Installation angle Y (α_Y)	
Installation angle Z (α_Z)	

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Configuring the ME70 for operational use, page 219
Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors, page 190

Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices

Topics

About NMEA and standard datagram formats, page 226
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240
Changing the communication parameters for the motion reference unit (MRU), page 241
Changing the internal delay for the motion reference unit (MRU) data, page 243
Setting up the ME70 in a synchronized system, page 244
Setting up the Ethernet data output, page 247
Checking the data transfer on an external interface line, page 248

About NMEA and standard datagram formats

Topics

About the NMEA datagram formats, page 226

National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA), page 226

NMEA sentence structure, page 227

Standard NMEA 0183 communication parameters, page 228

About the NMEA datagram formats

The ME70 can send and receive information to and from several different peripherals. All transmissions take place as **datagrams** with data sentences. Each datagram has a defined format and length.

The NMEA 0183 standard is the most common protocol used to receive and transmit data to and from peripheral sensors. A parametric sentence structure is used for all NMEA data.

The sentence start with a “$” delimiter, and represent the majority of approved sentences defined by the standard. This sentence structure, with delimited and defined data files, is the preferred method for conveying information.

For more information about the NMEA standard, the format and the data sentences, refer to their official publications. Their document *NMEA 1083 - Standard for interfacing marine electronic devices* explains the formats in detail. The document can be obtained from NMEA.

Note

Two phrases are in general use to describe basic transfer unit associated with a packet-switched network; "telegram" and "datagram". In this publication, we use the phrase "datagram".

National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA)

The National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA) has defined communication standards for maritime electronic equipment, and the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder supports these standards for communication with external sensors and peripheral systems.

The most common standard is the NMEA 0183. The National Marine Electronics Association describes it as follows:

> The NMEA 0183 Interface Standard defines electrical signal requirements, data transmission protocol and time, and specific sentence formats for a 4800 baud serial data bus. Each bus may have only one talker but many listeners.

National Marine Electronics Association

For more information about the National Marine Electronics Association and the NMEA 0183 standard, refer to the organization's web site at:

- http://www.nmea.org

NMEA sentence structure

A defines sentence structure is defined by NMEA to establish the communication between two units. Most other datagram formats are designed using the same, or a similar, structure.

The following provides a summary explanation of the approved parametric sentence structure.

```
$aaccc,c-c*hh<CR><LF>
```

1 **"$"**

This character (Hex: 24) is used to identify the start of the sentence.

2 **"aaccc"**

This is the address field. The first two characters (aa) identifies the *talker ID*, while the last three characters are the *sentence formatter* mnemonic code identifying the data type and the string format of the successive fields.

3 **","**

The comma (Hex: 2C) is used as *field delimiter*. This character starts each field except the address and checksum fields. If it is followed by a null field, it is all that remains to indicate no data in the field.

4 **"c-c"**

This is the *data sentence block*. This is a series of data fields containing all the data to be transmitted. The data field sentence is fixed and identified by the sentence formatter in the address field. Data fields may be of variable lengths, and they are preceded by the field delimiter.

5 **"*"**

This character (Hex: 2A) is the *checksum delimiter*. This delimiter follows the last field of the sentence, and indicates that the following two alphanumerical characters contain the checksum.

6 **"hh"**

This is the *checksum*.

7 **<CR><LF>**

The carriage return and line feed characters terminates the sentence.

Note

*In some proprietary telegrams received from other Kongsberg Maritime equipment, the **$** character is replaced by the **@** character. The checksum field may then not be in use.*

Standard NMEA 0183 communication parameters

The ME70 uses both NMEA and proprietary datagram formats to communicate with peripheral systems and sensors.The majority of the datagrams used by the ME70 are defined by the National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA). NMEA defines a fixed set of transmission parameters.

The communication parameters defined for **NMEA 0183** are:

- **Baud rate**: 4800 b/s
- **Data bits**: 8
- **Parity**: None
- **Stop bits**: 1

Some instruments may offer other parameters and/or choices. You must always check the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS)

Accurate and reliable information from the vessel's navigation systems are vital to the ME70 operation. The information provided by these systems are used by the ME70 software. Navigation data are also included in the raw data export formats. In order to read navigational data (position, speed, distance and heading) from an external sensor, you must choose which interface port to use, and then which datagram(s) to read.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- The vessel is berthed or at sea.
- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

Most global positioning system (GPS) receivers provide NMEA 0183 datagrams containing geographical latitude and longitude information, as well as current speed and sailed distance. Some GPS systems will also provide the current heading, but this information is normally taken from the gyro.

The communication parameters defined for **NMEA 0183** are:

- **Baud rate**: 4800 b/s
- **Data bits**: 8
- **Parity**: None
- **Stop bits**: 1

Some instruments may offer other parameters and/or choices. You must always check the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

The supported datagram formats are listed in the *Technical specifications* chapter.

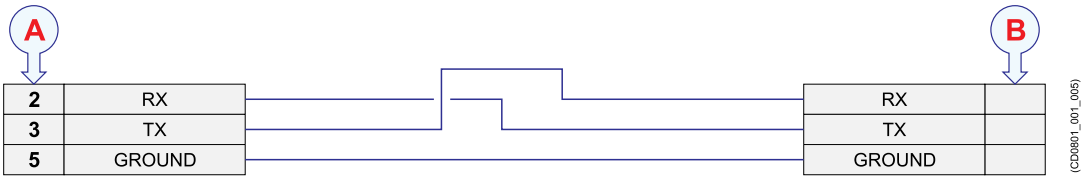
Interface specifications, page 276

Procedure

1 Connect the navigation system to an available communication port on your Processor Unit.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter.

- Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling.
- Ensure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.
- If the Processor Unit is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available.



A *Local connection on the Processor Unit*

B *Connection on remote device*

For more information, refer to the end user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

2 Turn on the ME70, and set it to normal use.

a Open the **Operation** menu.

b Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

c Set **Range** to: *100 m*.

d Set **Ping** to *On*.

e Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

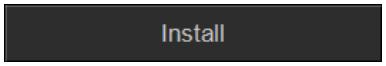
f Set **Ping Interval** to *1 s*.

g Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

h Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

3 Open the **Setup** menu.

4 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

5 Select **Navigation** to open the dialog box

6 Open the **Position** page.

a Select the Ethernet or serial port you wish to use.

b Select **Setup** to define the communication parameters for the selected port.

c Select which NMEA sentence (datagram) you wish to use.

If you choose *Auto*, the ME70 will automatically choose among the incoming datagrams according to a predefined priority list.

d If applicable, specify a dedicated Talker ID.

7 Open the **Speed** page.

a Select the Ethernet or serial port you wish to use.

b Select **Setup** to define the communication parameters for the selected port.

c Select which NMEA sentence (datagram) you wish to use.

If you choose *Auto*, the ME70 will automatically choose among the incoming datagrams according to a predefined priority list.

d If you do not have any information from a speed sensor, or if you wish to enter the vessel's speed manually, select **Manual speed**.

When enabled, set the vessel speed manually using the **Speed** spin box.

8 Open the **Distance** page.

a Choose from which source you wish to retrieve or calculate the distance information.

b Select the Ethernet or serial port you wish to use.

c Select **Setup** to define the communication parameters for the selected port.

d Select which NMEA sentence (datagram) you wish to use.

If you choose *Auto*, the ME70 will automatically choose among the incoming datagrams according to a predefined priority list.

e If you wish to define the current vessel distance manually, use the **Distance [nmi]** spin box.

This option is not available for all **Source** choices.

9 Open the **Heading** page.

a Select the Ethernet or serial port you wish to use.

b Select **Setup** to define the communication parameters for the selected port.

c Select which NMEA sentence (datagram) you wish to use.

If you choose *Auto*, the ME70 will automatically choose among the incoming datagrams according to a predefined priority list.

d If applicable, specify a dedicated Talker ID.

10 Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

11 Verify that the input line is functional.

a Open the **Setup** menu.

b On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.

c Select **I/O Setup** to open the dialog box.

d Click on a communication line to select it.

e Select **Monitor** to open the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

f Verify that the data flow on the input line (**Rx Data** text field) is operational.

g Select **OK** to close the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

h Select **OK** to close the **I/O Setup** dialog box.

Related topics

Checking the data transfer on an external interface line, page 248
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system

By interfacing a trawl system, you can import relevant information about your deployed trawl, and show this information the ME70 presentation.

Prerequisites

To set up this interface, the external trawl system must be operational, and the relevant datagram export must be enabled.

This procedure assumes that:

- The vessel is berthed or at sea.
- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.

- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

Communication with external trawl systems (for example Simrad ITI, Simrad FS70 or Simrad FX80) is based on NMEA and proprietary telegrams.

The communication parameters defined for **NMEA 0183** are:

- **Baud rate**: 4800 b/s
- **Data bits**: 8
- **Parity**: None
- **Stop bits**: 1

Some instruments may offer other parameters and/or choices. You must always check the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

The supported datagram formats are listed in the *Technical specifications* chapter.

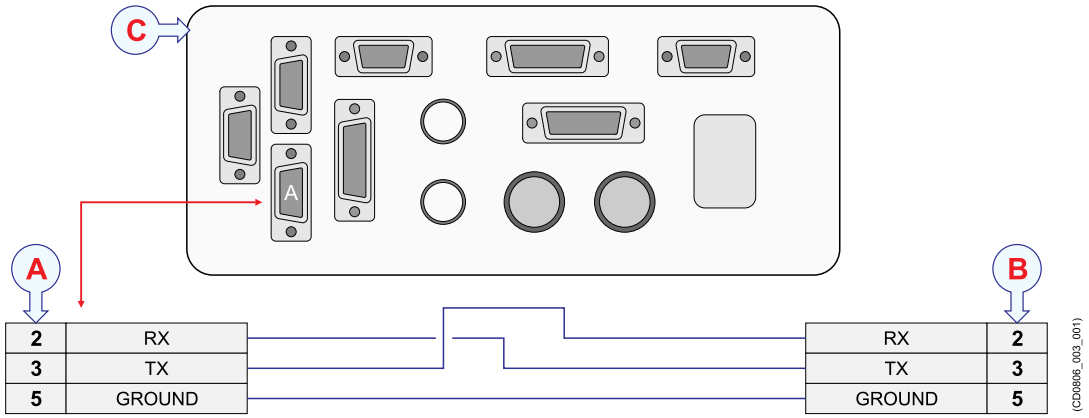
Interface specifications, page 276

Procedure

1 Connect the peripheral system to an available serial port on your Processor Unit.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter.

- Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling.
- Ensure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.
- If the Processor Unit is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available.



A *Socket "Serial A" on the ITI transceiver*

B *Serial line connector on the Processor Unit*

C *Connector panel on the ITI transceiver*

2 Turn on the ME70, and set it to normal use.

a Open the **Operation** menu.

b Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

c Set **Range** to: *100 m*.

d Set **Ping** to *On*.

e Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

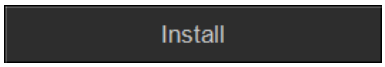
f Set **Ping Interval** to *1 s*.

g Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

h Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

3 Open the **Setup** menu.

4 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

5 Select **Trawl** to open the dialog box.

6 Set up the interface.

a Select the serial port you wish to use.

b Choose which external system to receive data from.

c Set up the relevant port parameters.

The communication parameters defined for **NMEA 0183** are:

- **Baud rate**: 4800 b/s
- **Data bits**: 8
- **Parity**: None
- **Stop bits**: 1

Some instruments may offer other parameters and/or choices. You must always check the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

7 Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

8 Verify that the input line is functional.

a Open the **Setup** menu.

b On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.

c Select **I/O Setup** to open the dialog box.

d Click on a communication line to select it.

e Select **Monitor** to open the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

f Verify that the data flow on the input line (**Rx Data** text field) is operational.

g Select **OK** to close the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

h Select **OK** to close the **I/O Setup** dialog box.

Related topics

Checking the data transfer on an external interface line, page 248
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system

By interfacing a catch monitoring system, you can import relevant information about your deployed gear, and show this information in the ME70 presentation.

Prerequisites

To set up this interface, the external catch monitoring system must be operational, and the relevant datagram export must be enabled.

This procedure assumes that:

- The vessel is berthed or at sea.
- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers,

spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

Communication with external catch monitoring systems (for example Simrad PI44, Simrad PI54 or Simrad PI50) is based on NMEA and proprietary telegrams.

The communication parameters defined for **NMEA 0183** are:

- **Baud rate**: 4800 b/s
- **Data bits**: 8
- **Parity**: None
- **Stop bits**: 1

Some instruments may offer other parameters and/or choices. You must always check the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

The supported datagram formats are listed in the *Technical specifications* chapter.

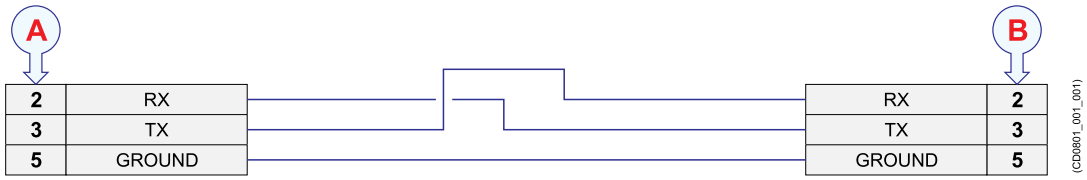
Interface specifications, page 276

Procedure

1 Connect the peripheral system to an available serial port on your Processor Unit.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter.

- Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling.
- Ensure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.
- If the Processor Unit is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available.



A *Local connection on the Processor Unit*

B *Connection on remote device*

2 Turn on the ME70, and set it to normal use.

a Open the **Operation** menu.

b Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

c Set **Range** to: *100 m*.

d Set **Ping** to *On*.

e Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

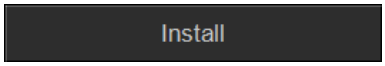
f Set **Ping Interval** to *1 s*.

g Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

h Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

3 Open the **Setup** menu.

4 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

5 Select **Trawl** to open the dialog box.

6 Set up the interface.

a Select the serial port you wish to use.

b Choose which external system to receive data from.

c Set up the relevant port parameters.

The communication parameters defined for **NMEA 0183** are:

- **Baud rate**: 4800 b/s
- **Data bits**: 8
- **Parity**: None
- **Stop bits**: 1

Some instruments may offer other parameters and/or choices. You must always check the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

7 Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

8 Verify that the input line is functional.

a Open the **Setup** menu.

b On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.

c Select **I/O Setup** to open the dialog box.

d Click on a communication line to select it.

e Select **Monitor** to open the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

f Verify that the data flow on the input line (**Rx Data** text field) is operational.

g Select **OK** to close the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

h Select **OK** to close the **I/O Setup** dialog box.

Related topics

Checking the data transfer on an external interface line, page 248
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor

In order to ensure accurate measurements, a dedicated sound speed sensor is positioned close to the transducer. The sound speed sensor connects to the Processor Unit. This is normally done with a serial line.

Prerequisites

A sound speed sensor is available. The sound speed sensor is connected to the ME70 Processor Unit. For connections and communication parameters, see the relevant end user documentation from the sensor manufacturer.

This procedure assumes that:

- The vessel is berthed or at sea.
- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

A dedicated sensor is used to measure the sound speed in the water. The sensor measures the temperature and/or the salinity, and this information is used to calculate the sound speed. Sound speed sensors may be used in two different ways; *fixed* or *deployed*.

- A *fixed* sound speed sensor is positioned close to the transducer.

  The sensor is normally a permanent installation, but many vessels have designed a method to lower and hoist the sensor. This allows it to be "installed" only when required for measurements. The sound speed sensor connects to the Processor Unit. This is normally done with a serial line. In the ME70 user interface, the sound speed sensor if often referred to as a *probe*.

- The *deployed* sound speed sensor, frequently referred to as a *CTD (conductivity, temperature and depth)* sensor, is lowered into the water to make measurements at certain depth intervals.

  After use, the sensor is connected to a computer, and the measurements are transferred to a data file. Once the information has been collected, it is transferred to the Processor Unit on a suitable medium. The information from a CTD (conductivity, temperature and depth) sensor is normally referred to as a *profile*.

The supported datagram formats are listed in the *Technical specifications* chapter.

Interface specifications, page 276

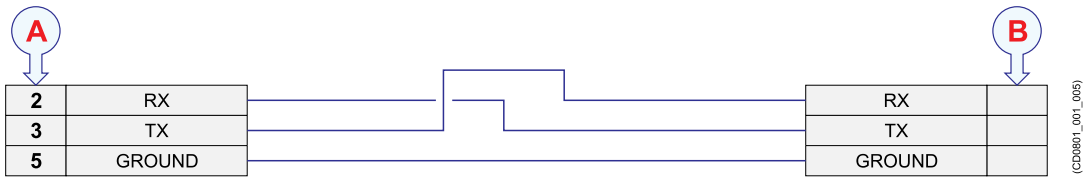
Procedure

1 Connect the sound speed sensor to the Processor Unit using a serial line cable.

  This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter.

  - Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling.
  - Ensure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.
  - If the Processor Unit is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available.

2 On the sound speed sensor, connect the cable as described in the instruction manual provided by the manufacturer.



A *Local connection on the Processor Unit*

B *Connection on sound speed sensor*

Refer to the manufacturer's documentation for plug type and pin numbers.

3 Turn on the ME70, and set it to normal use.

  a Open the **Operation** menu.

  b Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

  c Set **Range** to: *100 m*.

  d Set **Ping** to *On*.

  e Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

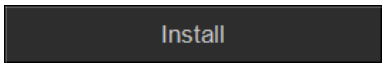
  f Set **Ping Interval** to *1 s*.

  g Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

  h Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

4 Open the **Setup** menu.

5 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

6 Select **Sound Velocity Port** to open the dialog box.

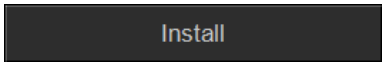
7 Set up the interface.

a Select the Ethernet or serial port you wish to use.

b Set up the relevant port parameters.

c Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

8 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

9 Select **Environment** to open the dialog box.

10 Open the **Transducer Face** page.

The sound speed close to the transducer face is an important parameter for maximum accuracy. You can define the sound speed at the transducer manually, or retrieve the information from a dedicated sensor.

11 Select **Probe**.

By selecting **Probe**, the sound speed values from the sensor close to the transducer face are received. The information is then included in the raw data files.

Tip

Probe Port Setting *provides you with a short-cut to the* **Sound Velocity Port** *dialog box.*

12 Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

Related topics

Checking the data transfer on an external interface line, page 248
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU)

The information from a motion reference unit (MRU) (normally heave, roll and pitch information) is imported into the ME70 to increase the accuracy of the echo data.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- The vessel is berthed or at sea.
- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks, such as screwdrivers, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

A motion reference unit (MRU) measures the vessel's pitch and roll movements in the sea. The information provided by the motion sensor is used by the ME70 to stabilize the echo presentation.

Note

The input from the motion reference unit (MRU) is of vital importance to the ME70. An unserviceable - or inaccurate - sensor will render the scientific data useless. Due to the importance of the motion sensor data, the ME70 will stop "pinging"' if the information from the sensor is lost.

The supported datagram formats are listed in the *Technical specifications* chapter.

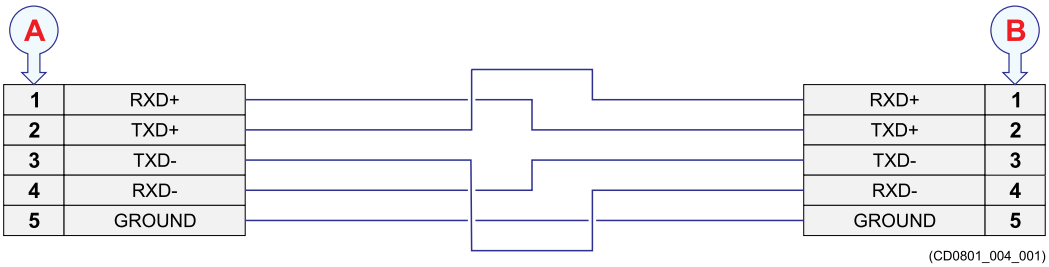
Interface specifications, page 276

Procedure

1 Connect the motion sensor system to serial port 1 (COM1) on your Processor Unit.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter.

- Make sure that the serial port is set up for RS-422 communication.
- Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling.
- Ensure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.
- If the Processor Unit is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available.



A *Local connection on the Processor Unit*

B *Connection on remote device*

2 Observe that the interface parameters are defined in the ME70 software. No additional setup is required.

Further requirements

Changing the communication parameters for the motion reference unit (MRU), page 241

Changing the internal delay for the motion reference unit (MRU) data, page 243

Related topics

Checking the data transfer on an external interface line, page 248
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Changing the communication parameters for the motion reference unit (MRU)

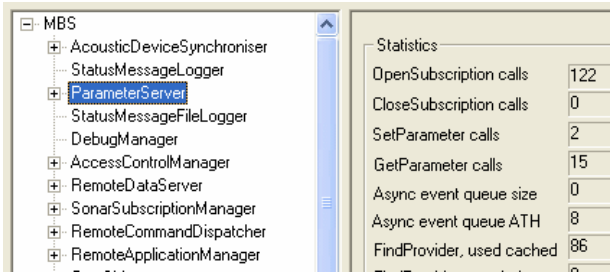
The input from the motion reference unit (MRU) is very important for the ME70 operations. In order to provide correct data, the input settings for this sensor may need to be adjusted.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode.

Context

If non-default settings for the motion reference unit input are applied, the settings must be entered one more time if you reinstall the ME70 software.

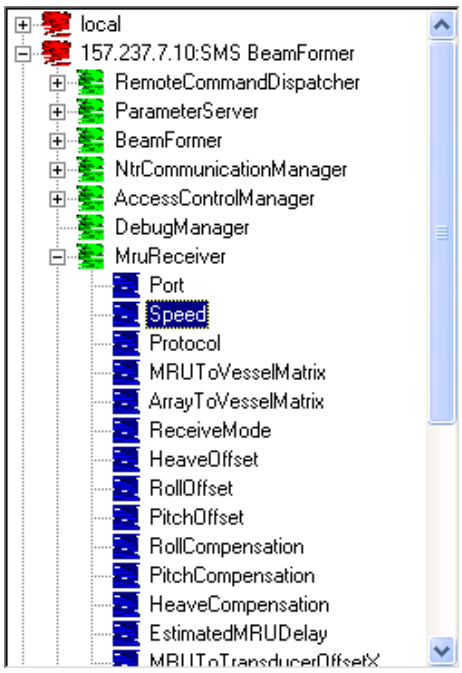


Note

This procedure is special in the sense that some "hidden" dialog boxes are be used. These dialog boxes are designed for technical support and software debugging, and they are not documented elsewhere in this publication. Follow the procedure exactly

as described in the steps. Incorrect settings in these dialog boxes may cause the ME70 to become unstable.

Procedure



1 Open the **SMS BeamFormer** parameters in the **Parameter Browser** dialog box.

   a Press the **Shift** key, and double-click the Simrad logo on the ME70 top bar.

   Observe that the **Object Inspector** dialog box opens.

   b Scroll down the list on the left side of the **Object Inspector** dialog box to locate **ParameterServer**.

   c Double-click **ParameterServer** to open the **Parameter Browser** dialog box.

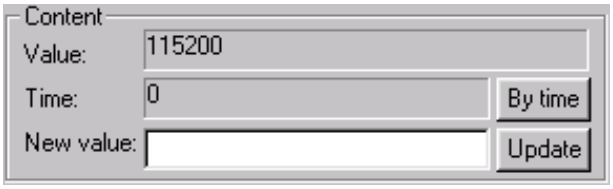
2 Scroll down the list on the left side of the **Parameter Browser** dialog box to locate **192.168.2.10: SMS BeamFormer**, select the [+] character on its left side to open it.

3 Scroll down the list to locate **MruReceiver**, and select the [+] character on its left side to open it.

4 In the **MruReceiver**, scroll down to locate **Speed**.

5 Select **Speed** to see the corresponding parameters on the right hand side of the dialog box.

6 In the **New Value** field, write down the new baud rate.



7 Select **Update**.

8 If required, repeat to update **Port** and **Protocol**. Select **Update** for each change you make.

9 Close each dialog box by selecting [**X**] in its top right corner.

Related topics

Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Changing the internal delay for the motion reference unit (MRU) data

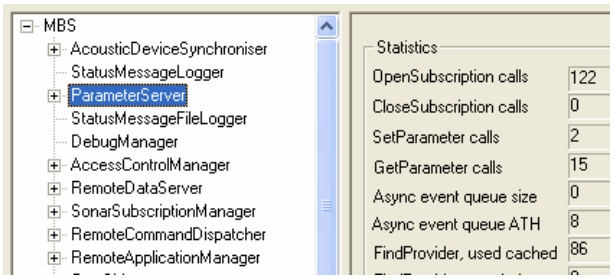
Some motion reference unit (MRU) sensors have an internal delay in the provision of attitude data. In order to provide correct data, this internal may need to be adjusted.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode.

Context

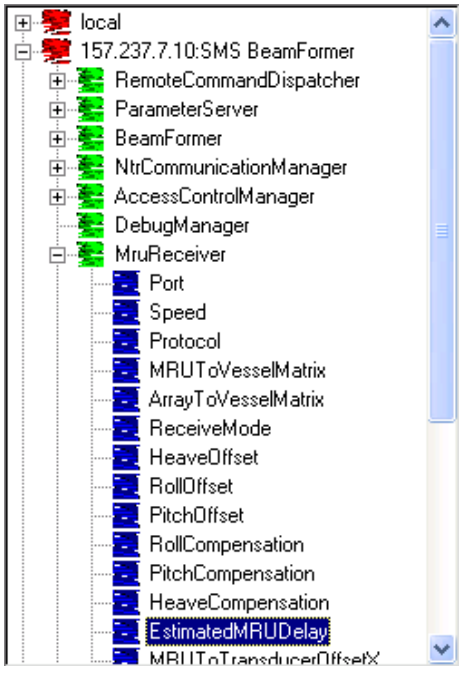
If non-default settings for the motion reference unit input are applied, the settings must be entered one more time if you reinstall the ME70 software.



Note

This procedure is special in the sense that some "hidden" dialog boxes are be used. These dialog boxes are designed for technical support and software debugging, and they are not documented elsewhere in this publication. Follow the procedure exactly as described in the steps. Incorrect settings in these dialog boxes may cause the ME70 to become unstable.

Procedure



1 Open the **SMS BeamFormer** parameters in the **Parameter Browser** dialog box.

   a Press the **Shift** key, and double-click the Simrad logo on the ME70 top bar.

   Observe that the **Object Inspector** dialog box opens.

   b Scroll down the list on the left side of the **Object Inspector** dialog box to locate **ParameterServer**.

   c Double-click **ParameterServer** to open the **Parameter Browser** dialog box.

2 Scroll down the list on the left side of the **Parameter Browser** dialog box to locate **192.168.2.10: SMS BeamFormer**, select the [+] character on its left side to open it.

3 Scroll down the list to locate **MruReceiver**, and select the [+] character on its left side to open it.

4 In the **MruReceiver**, scroll down to locate **EstimatedMRUDelay**.

5 Select **EstimatedMRUDelay** to see the corresponding parameters on the right hand side of the dialog box.

6 In the **New value** field, type the requested delay.

7 Select **Update**.

8 Close each dialog box by selecting [**X**] in its top right corner.

Related topics

Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Setting up the ME70 in a synchronized system

If you wish to use the ME70 as a master or slave in a synchronized system, you must set it up for such operation. To do this, you must select which communication port to use for the synchronization interface, and you must select the requested synchronization mode.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- The vessel is berthed or at sea.
- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.

For "slave" operation, a remote system (for example *K-Sync*) must be available to provide trigger pulses. For "master" operation, a remote system must be connected. This remote system must be set up in "slave" mode.

Context

Whenever more than one hydroacoustic system is installed on a vessel, interference may occur. To avoid this, you have these options:

- The systems are all connected to a common synchronization system.
- One of the acoustic systems is set up as "master", and controls the transmissions on the other systems.

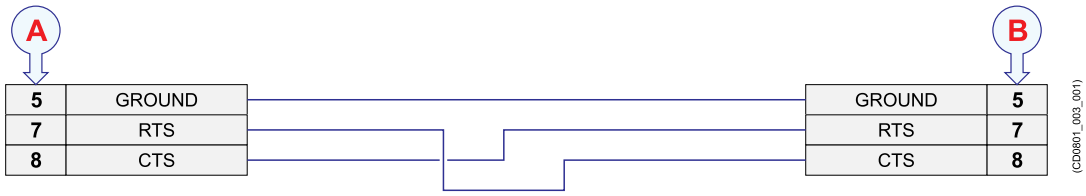
The ME70 offers functionality for remote transmit synchronisation. It can be set up to operate in either *Master* or *Slave* mode.

Procedure

1 Connect the synchronisation cable from the remote system to an available communication port on your Processor Unit.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter.

- Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling.
- Ensure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.
- If the Processor Unit is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available.

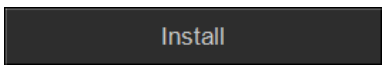


A *Local connection on the Processor Unit*

B *Connection on remote device*

2 Open the **Setup** menu.

3 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

4 Select **Synchronization Port** to open the dialog box.

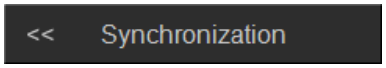
5 Choose which serial port you have used to connect the external synchronization system.

This is the interface port currently used to transmit or receive synchronization signals. It must be a serial port. Since the synchronization function only use the *Request To Send (RTS)* and *Clear To Send (CTS)* signals, you can use a serial port that is already used for other purposes. For the same reason, you do not need to define any baud rate.

6 Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

7 Open the **Setup** menu.

8 Select **Synchronization**.



The purpose of the **Synchronization** dialog box is to set up the ME70 to operate alone, or as a master or slave in a synchronized system. Synchronization is required in order to avoid interference if the ME70 is used simultaneously with other hydroacoustic instruments within the same frequency range.

9 Select **Synchronization Mode**.

- **Standalone**

  Synchronization is switched off.This synchronization mode is used if the ME70 is working by itself, and with no synchronization required. This is the default setting. The ME70 operates using its internal ping interval parameters, independent of any trigger signals arriving at the synchronization port.

  The **Synchronization Delay** setting is not applicable when synchronization is switched off.

- **Master**

  The *Master* mode is used if the ME70 shall act as the "controlling" unit in a synchronized system. The peripheral hydroacoustic system(s) are only permitted to transmit when enabled by the ME70. When the *Master* mode is chosen, the ME70 will run using its internal ping interval parameters, and send trigger signals to the peripheral system(s).

- **Slave**

  The *Slave* mode is used if the ME70 shall transmit only when permitted by a peripheral system. When the *Slave* mode is chosen, the ME70 does not transmit ("ping") unless an external trigger appears on the chosen synchronization port. The peripheral system may be any other hydroacoustic product (for example an echo sounder or sonar), or even a dedicated synchronisation system.

10 Select **Synchronization Delay**.

This delay parameter is used differently depending on the chosen synchronization mode.

- **Standalone**

  The **Synchronization Delay** setting is not applicable when synchronization is switched off.

- **Master**

  In *Master* mode, the ME70 will wait for the delay time after the external trigger signal has been sent to the slaves before transmitting the ping. This is often referred to as *Pre-trigger*.

  Note

  This delay will only work when the synchronization is set up using a serial port.

- **Slave**

  In *Slave* mode, the ME70 waits for the delay time after the external trigger signal has arrived before transmitting the ping. This is often referred to as *Post-trigger*.

11 Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

Related topics

Checking the data transfer on an external interface line, page 248
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Setting up the Ethernet data output

The ME70 can communicate with an external network device that can benefit from the echo data. This communication is controlled by the **Ethernet Output** dialog box.

Prerequisites

This procedures assumes that you are familiar with Ethernet communication, IP addresses and the relevant User Datagram Protocol (UDP) parameters.

Context

Through Ethernet, the ME70 can communicate with any peripheral device that can benefit from the processed data. This communication is controlled by the **Ethernet Output** dialog box. This interface will require the absolute identity of the remote UDP port and the remote IP address.

Procedure

1 Connect the ME70 to the peripheral system using the Ethernet interface.

Note

It is very important that a high quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using cables with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce the ME70 performance.

2 Open the **Setup** menu.

3 Select **Data Output** to open the menu.

4 Select **Ethernet Output**.

Observe that the **Ethernet Output** dialog box opens.

5 Set up the port parameters.

a Define the **Remote Port** address.

The **Remote Port** is important if you wish to export information from the Processor Unit to a "remote device" on the local area network (LAN).

b Select the **Remote IP Address** for the system (computer or other device) you wish to export the information to.

This is the Internet Protocol (IP) Address for a "remote device". This "remote device" is another computer on a local area network. If you wish to export information from the Processor Unit to one or more remote devices (*broadcast*), set Remote IP Address to 255.255.255.255. This is the default setting.

c Set **Communication Mode** to *Broadcast*.

Broadcast mode enables data to be sent from the ME70 to any number of "remote devices". Data is only transmitted to these devices. The remote devices receive the data, but the ME70 does not receive any reply or acknowledgement from them.

6 In the **Ethernet Output** dialog box, select **EK500 Datagram**.

Observe that the **EK500 Datagram** dialog box opens.

a Select the **Datagram** tab to open the page.

b Select which datagram formats you wish to export.

c Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the **EK500 Datagram** dialog box.

7 Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

Related topics

Checking the data transfer on an external interface line, page 248
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Checking the data transfer on an external interface line

The communication between the Processor Unit and peripheral devices takes place using "datagrams". These datagrams are self-contained and independent entities of data carrying information. When setting up or maintaining the ME70, it is always useful to verify that the communication lines with external devices are operational.

Prerequisites

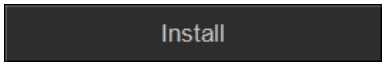
This procedure assumes that the relevant sensor has been connected to the ME70 Processor Unit. The connection has been made using a serial or Ethernet line. All the relevant communication parameters have been defined. The external sensor is powered up, and transmits data.

Procedure

1 Select the **Setup** icon.

The icon is located under the **Main** menu. It is used to open the **Setup** menu.

2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Install** submenu opens.

3 Select **I/O Setup** to open the dialog box.

4 Verify that each input line is functional.

a Click on a communication line to select it.

b Select **Monitor** to open the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

c Verify that the data flow on the input line (**Rx Data** text field) is operational.

In order to monitor this data flow, the peripheral system must be active and transmitting information to the ME70.

d Select **OK** to close the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

If the data flow is not present, we suggest the following actions:

- Check that the peripheral system has been switched on.
- Check that the peripheral system is in fact transmitting information.
- Check the cables.
- Check that you have made the physical connection to the communication port that you are monitoring.

5 Verify that each output line is functional.

a Click on a communication line to select it.

b Select **Monitor** to open the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

c Verify that the data flow on the output line (**Tx Data** text field) is operational.

In order to monitor this data flow, your ME70 must be active and transmitting information to the peripheral system.

d Select **OK** to close the **Port Monitor** dialog box.

If the data flow is not present, we suggest the following actions:

- Check that the appropriate output data in your ME70 has been set up to the correct port, and enabled.

6 Select the [**X**] in the top right corner of the **Port Monitor** dialog box to close it.

7 Select **OK** to close the **I/O Setup** dialog box.

Related topics

Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240
Setting up the ME70 in a synchronized system, page 244
Setting up the Ethernet data output, page 247
Setting to work summary, page 196
Setting up the interfaces to peripheral devices, page 225

Testing the ME70 operational functionality

Topics

Recording raw data, page 251

Testing the receiver channels with the BITE Matrix page, page 253

Testing the transmitter channels with the BITE Matrix page, page 255

Testing the receiver and transmitter channels with the BITE B-Scan page, page 257

Recording element data, page 259

Measuring noise in *Passive* mode, page 261

Measuring the time between each ping, page 262

Verifying long time stability in continuous operation, page 264

Recording raw data

The raw data recording function provided by the ME70 allows you to save echo data using the `*.raw` format. You can save to the Processor Unit hard disk, or onto an external disk.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode. Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

The **Record** button allows you to start and stop recording. You can split the current recording file (if it gets too large), and set up the file output parameters. Once all the recording parameters have been defined, you can start and stop recording.

- To start recording, click the red circle on the right side of the button.
- To stop recording, click the left rectangle.
- Click the middle of the button to see the available options.

Echo data files may be kept for future references. By means of the *Replay* function you can later play back the recorded file(s) on the ME70. This may prove useful if more a detailed study of the data is requested. You can also use the file(s) to experiment with the ME70 operational settings, as this will help you to gain more experience.

The following requirements must be met:

- The raw data recording and playback is operational

Procedure

1 If relevant, define the recording parameters.

2 On the **Main** menu, set **Beam Mode** to *Test - SAT Config 1*.

3 Open the **Operation** menu.

   a Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

   b Set **Range** to a suitable value..

   c Set **Ping** to *On*.

   d Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

   e Set **Ping Interval** to *1 s*.

   f Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

   g Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

4 To start data recording, open the **Record** button, and select *On*.

5 Allow the data recording to run approximately one minute.

6 Stop the recording.

7 Use a file manager, and verify that the recorded file(s) have been saved on the chosen disk.

8 Set **Operation** to *Replay*.

   The replay bar is automatically opened. It is positioned directly below the top bar at the top of the ME70 presentation.

9 Under **Operation**, select **Replay File** to open the dialog box.

   a Select **Add** to choose a replay file.

      A standard operating system dialog box opens. It allows you to select which file to replay.

   b Select **OK** to save the chosen settings and close the dialog box.

10 On the replay bar, click the **Play/Pause** button to start the playback.

Result

Test procedure	Results
Recording raw data	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251

Testing the receiver channels with the BITE Matrix page

The **Matrix** page allows you to monitor the average signal values or signal phases from each of the channels and transducer elements in the ME70. The presentation is provided on a matrix corresponding to the element locations in the transducer. For receiver testing, the ME70 must be operational, and both operational and BITE parameters must be known.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode. Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

When you move the cursor over the matrix presentation of the ME70 transceiver channels, each element in the transducer can be clearly identified as a rectangle. If you place the cursor on top of one of these rectangles, a small yellow tool-tip will identify key information.

The following requirements must be met:

- The information presented by the **Matrix** page verifies that the ME70 is fully operational.

Note

This test must be considered as indicative. With the vessel in port, the environmental conditions are not satisfactory. In the shallow waters of the port, noise from other vessels, dockyard workers or machinery will cause unreliable test results. The test is therefore repeated during the Sea Acceptance Test.

A rectangle with 32 black elements in the matrix view indicates a failure with a single transceiver board. The tool-tip will indicate which board that fails. Restarting the system will normally fix the problem. Failure of eight or nine consecutive transceiver boards indicate a problem with the power supply.

- Weak signals indicate problems with the +6 VDC supply voltage for the analogue amplifiers.
- No response indicate a problem with the +12 VDC supply voltage used for the digital circuitry.
- A failure in the +75 VDC supply voltage can only be detected in the transmit test.

Procedure

1 On the **Main** menu, set **Beam Mode** to *Test - SAT Config 1*.

2 Select the **Operation** icon.

The icon is located under the **Main** menu. It is used to open the **Operation** menu. Choose these settings:

a Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

b Set **Range** to: 100 m.

c Set **Ping** to *On*.

d Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

e Set **Ping Interval** to 1 s.

f Set **TX Mode** to *Passive*

g Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

3 Start the BITE (Built-In Test Equipment) utility.

4 Select the **Matrix** tab to open the page.

5 Choose these settings:

a Select **Element amplitude**.

b Set **Start Averaging** to *1000*.

c Set **Averaging Range** to *400*.

d Set **Scale** to *Automatic*.

e Set **Element size in pixel** to *Height 24 pixels* and *Width 12 pixels*.

f Set **Transmit pulse** to *Current*.

6 Locate any elements that exceeds the requirement for difference between neighbouring elements.

7 Evaluate the level for the functional elements by pointing at each element and read the level from the tool tip. Check for neighbouring elements with the maximum deviation.

Result

If single elements, or groups of elements, report signal levels with abnormal deviation from it's neighboring elements, this indicates malfunctioning receiver hardware. If the transmit test for the elements in question works well this indicates a bad cable connection to the transducer.

Possible reasons may be:

- Bent or broken pins between the transceiver backplane and the transceiver board or transceiver interface board for the relevant element.
- Bent or broken pins in the cable connector into the transceiver interface board for the relevant element
- Damaged cable
- A defective transducer element.

Test procedure	Results
Testing the receiver channels with the BITE Matrix page	
Date and signature:	

Related topics
Setting to work summary, page 196
Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251

Testing the transmitter channels with the BITE Matrix page

The **Matrix** page allows you to monitor the average signal values or signal phases from each of the channels and transducer elements in the ME70. The **Matrix** page offers a good tool for testing the transmitter and receiver circuitry. The presentation is provided on a matrix corresponding to the element locations in the transducer. For transmitter testing, the ME70 must be operational, and both operational and BITE parameters must be known.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode. Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

When you move the cursor over the matrix presentation of the ME70 transceiver channels, each element in the transducer can be clearly identified as a rectangle. If you place the cursor on top of one of these rectangles, a small yellow tool-tip will identify key information.

The following requirements must be met:

- The information presented by the **Matrix** page verifies that the ME70 is fully operational.

Note

This test must be considered as indicative. With the vessel in port, the environmental conditions are not satisfactory. In the shallow waters of the port, noise from other vessels, dockyard workers or machinery will cause unreliable test results. The test is therefore repeated during the Sea Acceptance Test.

A rectangle with 32 black elements in the matrix view indicates a failure with a single transceiver board. The tool-tip will indicate which board that fails. Restarting the system will normally fix the problem. Failure of eight or nine consecutive transceiver boards indicate a problem with the power supply.

- Weak signals indicate problems with the +6 VDC supply voltage for the analogue amplifiers.
- No response indicate a problem with the +12 VDC supply voltage used for the digital circuitry.
- A failure in the +75 VDC supply voltage can only be detected in the transmit test.

Procedure

1 On the **Main** menu, set **Beam Mode** to *Test - SAT Config 1*.

2 Select the **Operation** icon.

The icon is located under the **Main** menu. It is used to open the **Operation** menu. Choose these settings:

a Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

b Set **Range** to: 100 m.

c Set **Ping** to *On*.

d Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

e Set **Ping Interval** to 1 s.

f Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

g Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

3 Start the BITE (Built-In Test Equipment) utility.

4 Select the **Matrix** tab to open the page.

5 Choose these settings:

a Select **Element amplitude**.

b Set **Start Averaging** to *20*.

c Set **Averaging Range** to *100*.

d Set **Scale** to *Automatic*.

e Set **Element size in pixel** to *Height 24 pixels* and *Width 12 pixels*.

f Set **Transmit pulse** to *Current*.

6 Observe the average of the samples starting from sample *20*.

7 Read the bottom text line under the Matrix presentation, and verify the deviation between neighbouring elements in the transmit pulse.

8 In the event of unserviceable elements:

a Set **Scale** to *Manual*.

b Set **Minimum** value to *35*.

c Set **Maximum** value to *45*.

d Evaluate the level for the functional elements with the maximum deviation.

Result

This test shows the weighting used during transmission of a normal beam. In order to test all transmitters with equal level, select beam mode *Example 1 Beam Uniform Weighting*, and run the transmitter test one more time.

These samples are all inside the transmit pulse and the weighting of the elements during transmission will be visible.

If a single element, or a group of elements (transceiver boards), reports signal levels with abnormal deviation from it's neighboring elements, you may have a failure. If the receiver test of the relevant elements performs well, you probably have malfunctioning transmitter electronics.

Note

The combination of Uniform weighting and automatic scaling makes the BITE view use the full colour scale on a relative small difference between elements. This will not "look good" even for a fully functional transducer. You must look in the numerical data for large difference between neighboring elements, and notice any differences between the strongest and weakest element.

Test procedure	Results
Testing the transmitter channels with the BITE Matrix page	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251

Testing the receiver and transmitter channels with the BITE B-Scan page

The **B-Scan** page allows you to monitor the time series of data that is received from each of the elements in the ME70 transducer. The start sample and the number of samples to be displayed are adjustable.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode. Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

When you move the cursor over the B-Scan presentation of the ME70 transceiver channels, each element in the transducer is clearly identified as a long coloured vertical rectangle. If you place the cursor on top of one of these B-Scan rectangles, a small yellow tool-tip will identify key information.

- The identification of the transducer element
- The identification of the transceiver board
- The current sample you are looking at
- The measured echo value (in dB)

The following requirements must be met:

- The information presented by the **B-Scan** page verifies that the ME70 is fully operational.
- All elements are operational in both transmit and receive.

Procedure

1 On the **Main** menu, set **Beam Mode** to *Test - SAT Config 1*.

2 Select the **Operation** icon.

The icon is located under the **Main** menu. It is used to open the **Operation** menu. Choose these settings:

a Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

b Set **Range** to: 100 m.

c Set **Ping** to *On*.

d Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.

e Set **Ping Interval** to 1 s.

f Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

g Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

3 Start the BITE (Built-In Test Equipment) utility.

4 Select the **B-Scan** tab to open the page.

5 Choose these settings:

a Select **Element amplitude**.

b Set **Start sample** to *0*.

c Set **Sample range** to *1000*.

d Set **Decimation Method** to *Peak*.

e Set **Scale** to *Automatic*.

f Set the **Sample Pixel Size** to fit your preferences.

6 Check that the channels are uniform.

7 Check for any weak elements in the transmission sample range.

If any weak elements are detected, record these in the result table.

8 Check for any black lines in the transmission and reception sample ranges.

A black line would indicate an unserviceable element. If any such elements are detected, record these in the result table.

Result

Test procedure	Results
Testing the receiver and transmitter channels with the BITE B-Scan page	
Date and signature:	

Related topics
Setting to work summary, page 196
Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251

Recording element data

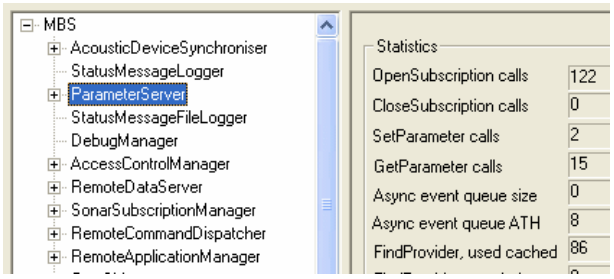
The element data recorded are information extracted from each transducer element before the beamforming takes place.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode. Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

This procedure explains how to record element data from five pings. Naturally, you may record element data for more (or fewer) pings. However, note that element data recording require large hard disk capacity.



Note

This procedure is special in the sense that some "hidden" dialog boxes are be used. These dialog boxes are designed for technical support and software debugging, and they are not documented elsewhere in this publication. Follow the procedure exactly as described in the steps. Incorrect settings in these dialog boxes may cause the ME70 to become unstable.

The following requirement must be met:

- Element data from five pings are recorded.

Procedure

1 Select the **Operation** icon.

The icon is located under the **Main** menu. It is used to open the **Operation** menu.

2 Set **Ping** to *Off*.

3 Open the **SMS BeamFormer** parameters in the **Parameter Browser** dialog box.

a Press the **Shift** key, and double-click the Simrad logo on the ME70 top bar.

Observe that the **Object Inspector** dialog box opens.

b Scroll down the list on the left side of the **Object Inspector** dialog box to locate **ParameterServer**.

c Double-click **ParameterServer** to open the **Parameter Browser** dialog box.

4 Scroll down the list on the left side of the **Parameter Browser** dialog box to locate **192.168.2.10: SMS BeamFormer**, select the [+] character on its left side to open it.

5 Scroll down the list to locate **Beamformer**, and select the [+] character on its left side to open it.

6 Select the required values.

Select **Update** for each change you make.

a Set **FileIOmode** to *2* ("Record").

b Set **FileIORecordSampleStart** to *0* (Zero).

c Set **FileIORecordSampleEnd** to *10.000*.

d Set **FileIORecordPath** to the desired folder.

7 Close each dialog box by selecting [**X**] in its top right corner.

8 Select **Update**.

9 Select the **Operation** icon.

The icon is located under the **Main** menu. It is used to open the **Operation** menu.

10 Make the following adjustments.

a Set **Ping Mode** to *Single Step*.

b Set **Ping** to *On*.

c Select the "ping" symbol on the right side of the **Ping** button five times to transmit five single "pings".

d Set **Ping** to *Off*.

11 Open the **Parameter Browser** dialog box.

12 Scroll down the list to locate **Beamformer**, and select the [+] character on its left side to open it.

13 Set **FileIOmode** to *0* ("Normal").

14 Select **Update**.

15 Close each dialog box by selecting [**X**] in its top right corner.

Result

Test procedure	Results
Recording element data	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251

Measuring noise in *Passive* mode

Low noise is a key factor for high quality and reliable measurements. The performance of the ME70 will always be limited by different noise sources. As a part of the Installation Manual, the noise is measured while the ME70 operates in passive mode.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode. You need an open two-way oral communication channel with the bridge. You need the following equipment:

- Personal computer
- Spreadsheet program

Context

To read the noise level, use the *Numerical* view.

The following requirement must be met:

- The noise level in *Passive* mode is acceptable.

Note

This test must be considered as indicative. With the vessel in port, the environmental conditions are not satisfactory. In the shallow waters of the port, noise from other vessels, dockyard workers or machinery will cause unreliable test results. The test is therefore repeated during the Sea Acceptance Test.

Procedure

1 On the **Main** menu, set **Beam Mode** to *Test - SAT Config 2*.

2 Open the **Operation** menu.

   a Select **Operation**, and set it to *Inactive*.

   b Set **Range** to: *500 m*.

   c Set **Ping** to *On*.

   d Set **Ping Mode** to *Maximum*.

   e Set **TX Mode** to *Passive*

   f Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

3 Open the **Active** menu.

4 Select **Echogram** to open the dialog box.

   a Set **Reference** to *Surface*.

   b Set **Backscatter** to *Sv (20 log)*.

   c Select **OK** to save the chosen setting and close the dialog box.

5 In the *Numerical* view, read the noise level estimates for the centre beam (beam 3) and from one of the outer beams (beam 0).

Record the values in the result table.

6 In the *Echogram* view, for the centre beam (beam 3) and for one of the outer beams (beam 0), estimate the range to where the noise becomes visible.

Record the values in the result table.

Result

Test procedure	Results
Measuring noise in *Passive* mode	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251

Measuring the time between each ping

The time between each ping (sometimes referred to as the *pulse repetition frequency (PRF)*) must be verified for different range settings. Longer ranges will increase the time between each ping.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode. Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

You can measure the time between pings by setting the horizontal axis in the *Echogram* view to a defined number of pings, and measure the time it takes to "fill" the echogram. The horizontal scale controls how "fast" the echograms move from right towards left across the ME70 presentation. You can change the horizontal scale on the **Horizontal Axis** page in the **Echogram** dialog box.

The following requirement must be met:

- Time between pings are recorded in the result table.
- 50 meters range: < 400 mS
- 500 meters range: < 1670 mS

Procedure

1 On the **Main** menu, set **Beam Mode** to *Test - SAT Config 1*.

2 Select the **Operation** icon.

The icon is located under the **Main** menu. It is used to open the **Operation** menu. Choose these settings:

a Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

b Set **Range** to: *20 m*.

c Set **Ping** to *On*.

d Set **Ping Mode** to *Maximum*.

e Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

f Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

3 For each range setting in the result table, use the *Echogram* view to find the time between each ping.

4 Set **Range** to: *500 m*.

5 Measure the time between ping with the data recording switched off.

Result

Range	Record	Results
20 m	On	
50 m	On	
100 m	On	
200 m	On	
500 m	On	
500 m	Off	

Test procedure	Results
Measuring the time between each ping	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251

Verifying long time stability in continuous operation

The ME70 is designed for stable operation during long time continuous use. It shall be able to record raw data continuously, provided that the available data storage capacity is sufficient.

Prerequisites

The ME70 is switched on and working in normal operational mode. Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

The following requirements must be met:

- The ME70 is stable after minimum 12 hours continuous operation.
- No error messages are presented.

Procedure

1 On the **Main** menu, set **Beam Mode** to *Test - SAT Config 1*.

2 Select the **Operation** icon.

The icon is located under the **Main** menu. It is used to open the **Operation** menu. Choose these settings:

a Set **Operation** to *Normal*.

b Set **Range** to: *100 m*.

c Set **Ping** to *On*.

d Set **Ping Mode** to *Maximum*.

e Set **TX Mode** to *Active*

f Set **TX Power** to *Maximum*.

3 To start data recording, open the **Record** button, and select *On*.

4 Leave the ME70 running continuously for minimum 12 hours.

5 Verify that no error messages are presented during normal operation.

6 Stop the recording.

Save the data using a unique file name that identifies context, date, time and vessel. Attach the data file to the electronic copy of the test report.

7 Power down the ME70.

Related topics

Setting to work summary, page 196
Testing the ME70 operational functionality, page 251

Creating a backup with the ME70 configuration and software installation

Topics

Creating a Processor Unit image on a USB flash drive using the Acronis True Image program, page 265

Creating a bootable USB flash drive using the Acronis True Image program, page 266

Restoring a Processor Unit image from a USB flash drive using the Acronis True Image program, page 267

Creating a Processor Unit image on a USB flash drive using the Acronis True Image program

A backup "image" is a very useful feature. It allows you to create and save a complete copy of all the files on the Processor Unit hard disk. The software used is *Acronis True Image*. The software is installed on the Processor Unit. It is also copied onto the USB flash drive that is provided with the ME70.

Prerequisites

To create the backup image, you need the bootable USB flash drive provided with the ME70. You can also use any commercial USB flash drive, but it must be bootable, and it must have the necessary storage capacity.

Context

The software in use is created by Acronis. For more information about this company and their products, see their website:

- http://www.acronis.com

Procedure

1 Boot the Processor Unit from the USB flash drive.

   a Connect a mouse and a computer keyboard to the Processor Unit.

   b Insert the bootable USB flash drive.

   Use the USB sockets on the rear side of the Processor Unit. Avoid the blue USB sockets, as these do not support the boot functionality

   c Power up the Processor Unit manually using the on/off button.

   d Observe that the Processor Unit boots from the USB flash drive.

   If the Processor Unit does not start from the USB flash drive, reboot, and press **F11** to select boot device.

2 Start the Acronis True Image program.

3 On the first page, select **Back Up⟶My Disks**.

4 On page **Partitions to back up**, observe that the only partition available is selected.

5 Select **Next**.

6 On page **Target backup archive**:

   a Select **Create new backup archive**.

   b Select **Browse** to define the location of the backup file.

   c Wait while the Processor Unit processes your request.

   This may take some time (up to several minutes) if you are using a new USB flash drive.

7 In the **Browse for location** dialog box, select the USB flash drive, the folder you wish to use, and the file name.

8 Click the small arrow button on the right side of the **Generate name** button to add date to the file name.

9 Select **OK**.

10 Select **Next**.

11 Select **Proceed**.

12 Wait for the backup process to finish.

13 Stop the Acronis True Image program.

14 Remove the USB flash drive.

15 Restart the Processor Unit.

Creating a bootable USB flash drive using the Acronis True Image program

A bootable USB flash drive is required for ME70 backup purposes. The software used is *Acronis True Image*. The software is installed on the Processor Unit. It is also copied onto the USB flash drive that is provided with the ME70.

Prerequisites

In order to create a bootable USB flash drive you will need the actual device. We strongly recommend that you use a high capacity and high speed version. Avoid typical "give-away" USB flash drives and commercial low budget types.

Context

The software in use is created by Acronis. For more information about this company and their products, see their website:

- http://www.acronis.com

Procedure

1 Insert the USB flash drive you wish to use.

2 Start the Acronis True Image program.

3 Select the **Backup and recovery** tab, and then select **Create bootable media** tool bar.

   a On page **Welcome to Acronis Media Builder**, do nothing.

   b Select **Next**.

   c On page **Rescue media contents selection**, select **True Image**.

   d Select **Next**.

   e On page **Bootable media options**, do nothing.

   f Select **Next**.

   g On page **Bootable media type selection**, select **Removable Disk**.

   h Select **Next**.

   i On page **Acronis Media Builder is ready to start....**, select **Proceed**.

4 Wait while the USB flash drive is made bootable.

5 Remove the USB flash drive from the computer using the "Safely remove hardware" feature in the operating system.

Restoring a Processor Unit image from a USB flash drive using the Acronis True Image program

Once a backup image exist, you can restore the content of the Processor Unit hard disk in case of a failure. The software used is *Acronis True Image*. The software is installed on the Processor Unit. It is also copied onto the USB flash drive that is provided with the ME70.

Prerequisites

To restore, you will need the USB flash drive containing a backup image. We recommend that you use the image you made after the ME70 installation was completed.

Context

You can restore the image from generic backup image, or from an image created for your installation.

Note

If you restore your Processor Unit from a generic image, you must change the Windows license and then activate it before you can use the ME70. You must also reinstall the ME70 software. We recommend that you use the image you made after the ME70 installation was completed.

The software in use is created by Acronis. For more information about this company and their products, see their website:

- http://www.acronis.com

Procedure

1 Boot the Processor Unit from the USB flash drive.

   a Connect a mouse and a computer keyboard to the Processor Unit.

   b Insert the bootable USB flash drive.

      Use the USB sockets on the rear side of the Processor Unit. Avoid the blue USB sockets, as these do not support the boot functionality

   c Power up the Processor Unit manually using the on/off button.

   d Observe that the Processor Unit boots from the USB flash drive.

   If the Processor Unit does not start from the USB flash drive, reboot, and press **F11** to select boot device.

2 Start the Acronis True Image program.

3 On the first page, select **Recover**.

4 On the second page, select **Browse for backup**.

5 Locate and select the backup file.

   The backup file is provided on the `*.tib` format.

6 Select **OK**.

7 On the list of image files, right-click on the image, and select **Recover** in the short-cut menu.

   a On page **Choose recovery method**, select **Recover whole disks and partitions**.

   b Select **Next**.

   c On page **Select the items to recover**, select **Disk 1**.

   d Select **Next**.

   e On page **Disk properties**, select **Disk 1**.

   f Select **Next**.

      If the hard disk on the Processor Unit contains data, a confirmation dialog box appears to remind you that all data on the hard disk will be lost.

   g Select **OK**.

   h Select **Proceed**.

   i Select **Shut down the computer when recovery is completed**.

8 Wait for the recovery process to finish.

   Once completed, the Processor Unit is switched off.

9 Remove the USB flash drive.

10 Restart the Processor Unit.

Installation remarks

Use this page to write down comments and remarks related to the ME70 installation. When the installation has been fully completed, and all functional tests have been made to full satisfaction, representatives from each party must sign.

Vessel/Customer	
Place and date	
Comments	

Signatures

Installation done by	Company/Position	Date and signature
Installation accepted by	**Company/Position**	**Date and signature**

Technical specifications

Topics

Introduction to technical specifications, page 272
Performance specifications, page 272
Interface specifications, page 276
Weight and outline dimensions, page 281
Power requirements, page 283
Environmental requirements, page 283
Compass safe distance, page 284
Display minimum technical requirements, page 285

Introduction to technical specifications

These technical specifications summarize the main functional and operational characteristics of the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder. It also provides information related to power requirements, physical properties and environmental conditions.

Note

At Kongsberg Maritime, we are continuously working to improve the quality and performance of our products. The technical specifications may be changed without prior notice.

Performance specifications

Topics

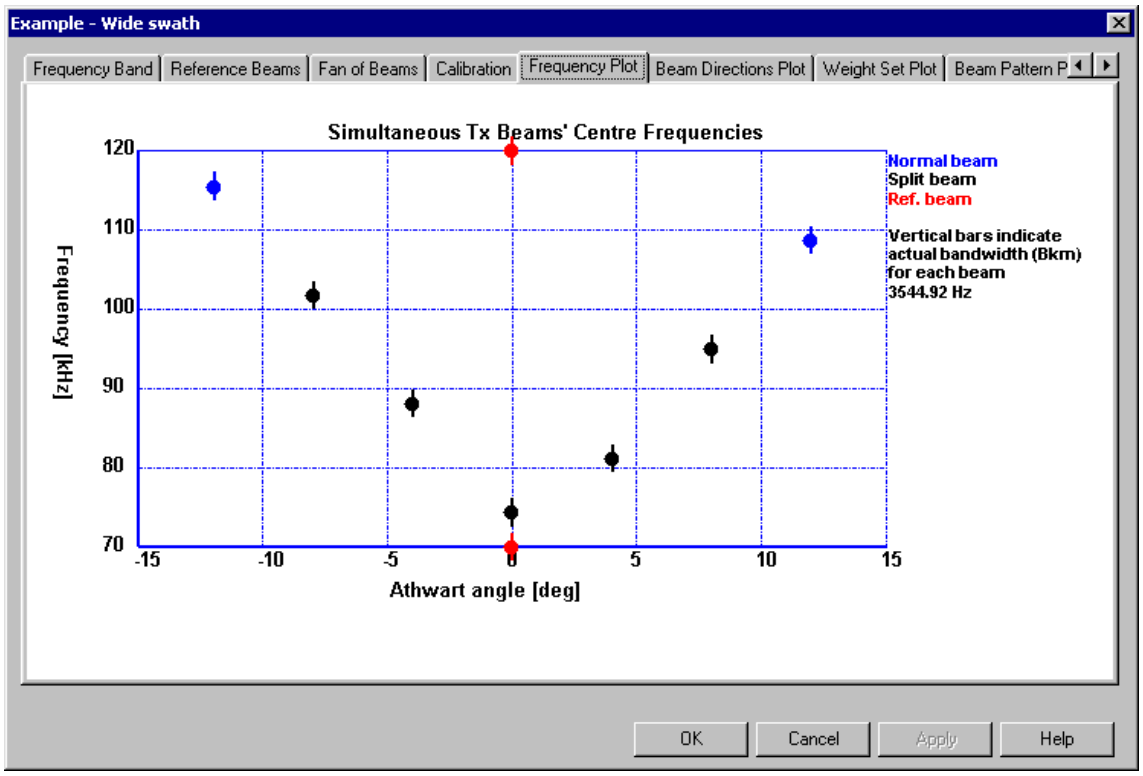
Operational performance, page 272

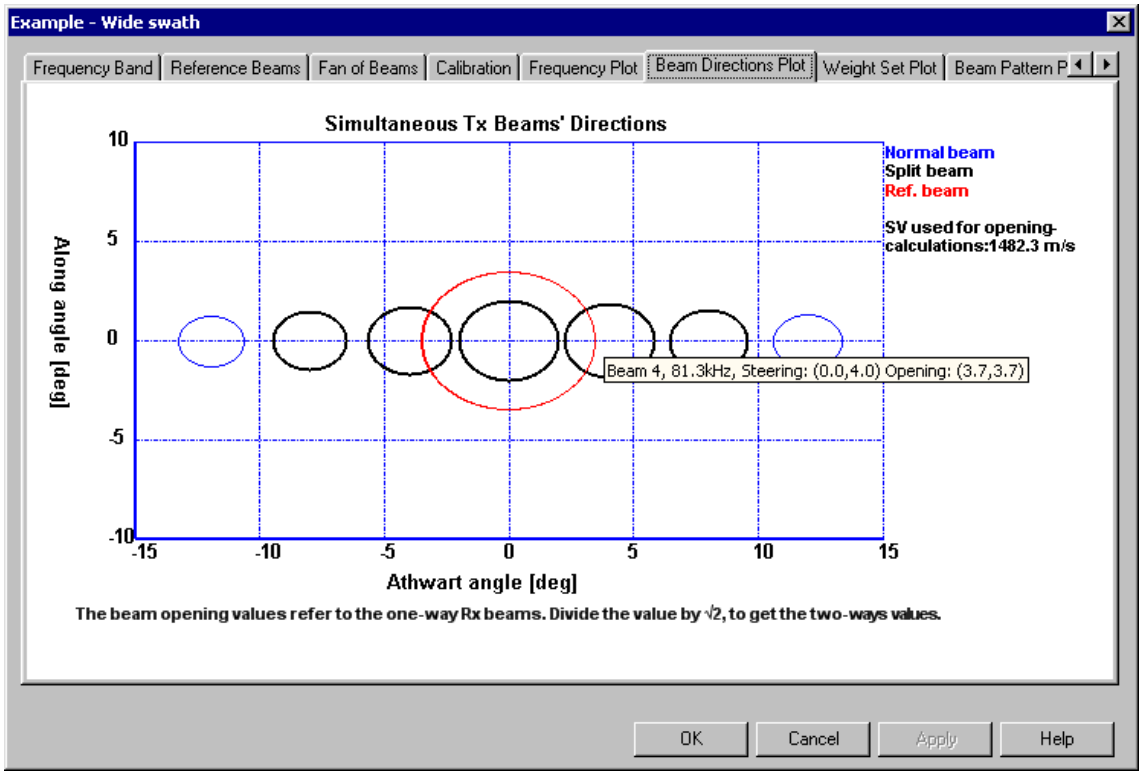
Configuration settings, page 274

Operational performance

Swath width

- **Nominal**: 2.2 - 60 °
- **Maximum**: 150 ° (With reduced side lobe suppression)





Stabilisation

- **Roll stabilisation**: ≤ 10 °

- **Pitch stabilisation**: ≤ 5 °

Sidelobe levels

- **Alongship**: -35 - -70 dB (Depending on the chosen beamwidth)
- **Athwartship**: -35 - -70 dB (Depending on the chosen beamwidth)

Transmission / Reception

- **Source level**: ≤ 225 dB
- **Receiver dynamic range**: 150 dB (Instantaneous)
- **Number of transmitter channels**: 800
- **Number of receiver channels**: 800
- **Ping rate**: ≤ 2 Hz

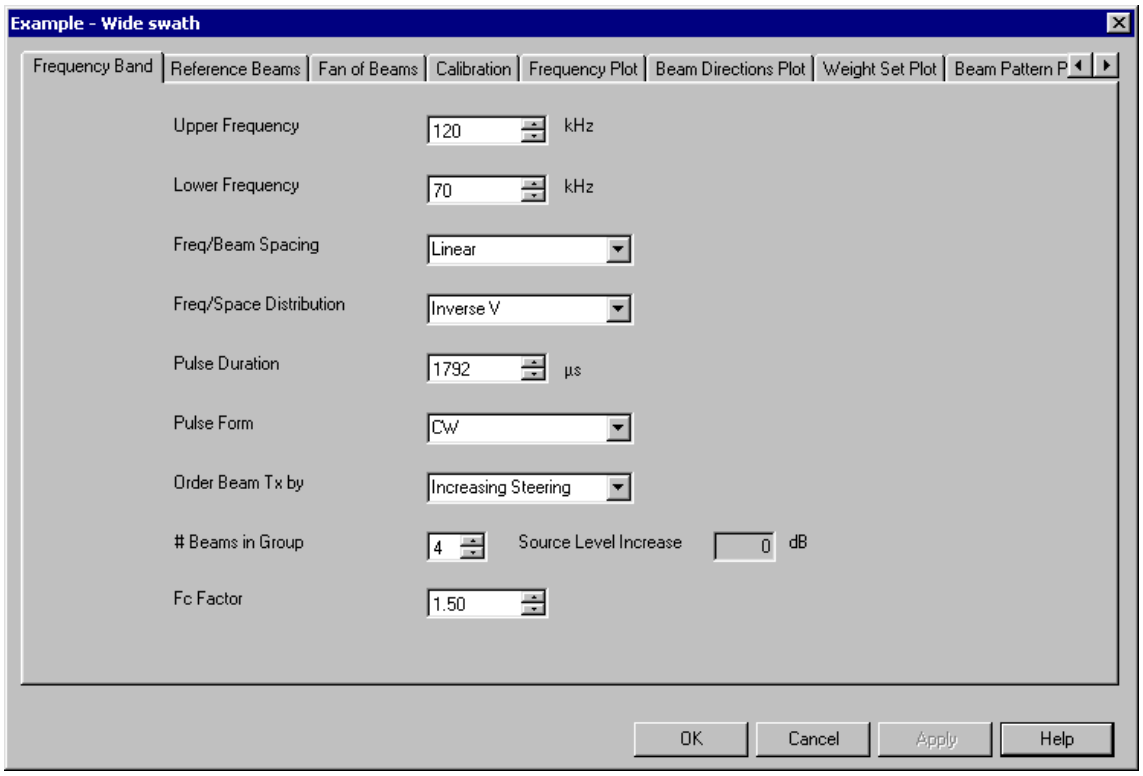
Sampling rates

- **Input sampling rate**: 4 MHz
- **Output sampling rate**:
  - 977 Hz - 62,5 kHz
  - 2,4 cm - 1,5 m (@ Sound speed 1500 m/s)

Configuration settings

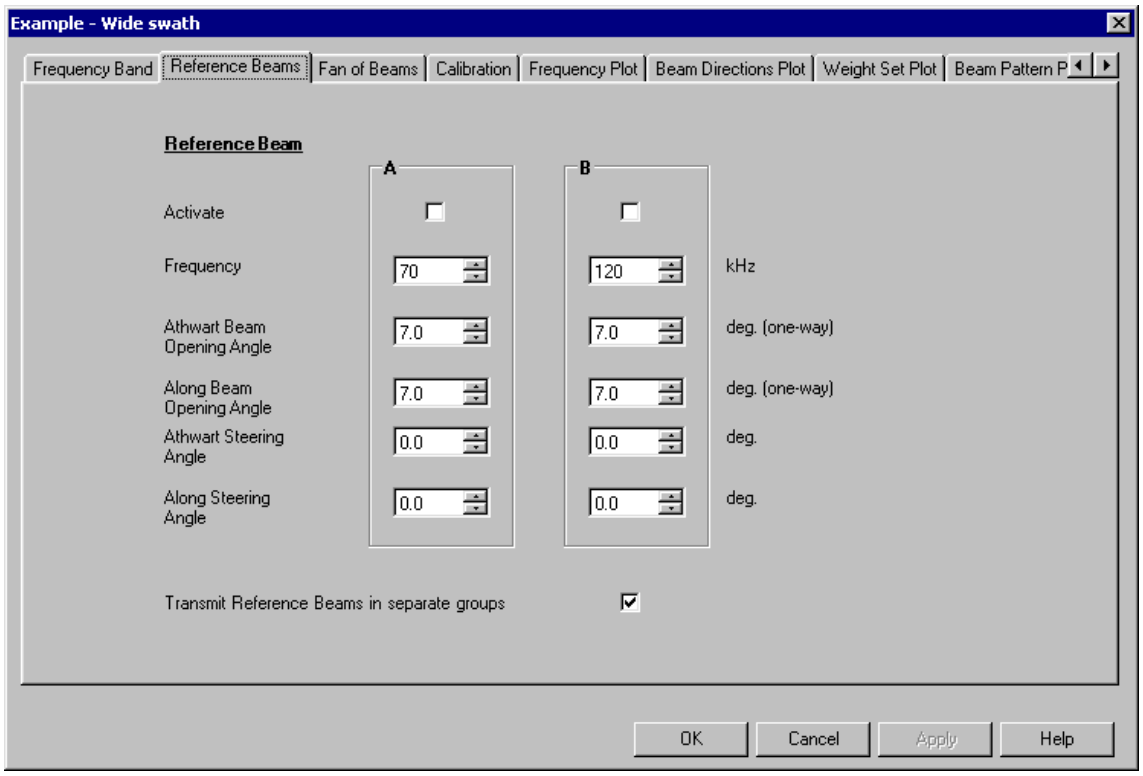
Frequency band

- **Upper frequency**: 70 - 120 kHz
- **Lower frequency**: 70 - 120 kHz
- **Frequency/beam spacing**: Linear, Optimized, Manual
- **Frequency/space distribution**: I, V, Inverse V
- **Pulse duration**: 64 - 5120 µsec
- **Pulse forms**
  - CW (Continuous Wave) Transmissions
  - Linear FM (Frequency Modulation) Transmissions (also known as "Chirp")
- **Number of beams transmitted simultaneously**: 1 - 4



Reference beams

- **Number of reference beams**: 0 - 2
- **Frequency**: 70 - 120 kHz
- **Opening angle**:
  - **Athwartship**: 2.2 - 20 °
  - **Alongship**: 2.2 - 20 °
- **Steering angle**
  - **Athwartship**: -75 - 75 °
  - **Alongship**: -5 - 5 °



Interface specifications

The ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder will interface with peripheral systems and sensors using standard and/or proprietary datagram formats.

Supported datagram formats for position information

The ME70 supports the following datagram formats for position information.

- **Auto**

  This choice allows the ME70 to read all relevant datagrams. If the specified information is provided to the ME70 on more than one datagram format, a built-in priority list will be used.

- **NMEA GGA**

  The NMEA GGA datagram transfers the time, position and fix related data from a global positioning system (GPS).

- **NMEA GLL**

  The NMEA GLL datagram transfers the latitude and longitude of vessel position, the time of the position fix and the current status from a global positioning system (GPS).

- **NMEA RMC**

The NMEA RMC datagram transfers the time, date, position, course and speed data from a global navigation satellite system (GNSS) receiver.

Supported datagram formats for speed information

The ME70 supports the following datagram formats for speed information.

- **Auto**

  This choice allows the ME70 to read all relevant datagrams. If the specified information is provided to the ME70 on more than one datagram format, a built-in priority list will be used.

- **NMEA RMC**

  The NMEA RMC datagram transfers the time, date, position, course and speed data from a global navigation satellite system (GNSS) receiver.

- **NMEA VBW**

  The NMEA VBW datagram contains water referenced and ground referenced vessel speed data.

- **NMEA VTG**

  The NMEA VTG datagram contains the actual course and speed relative to the ground.

Supported datagram formats for heading information

The ME70 supports the following datagram formats for vessel heading and/or gyro information.

- **Auto**

  This choice allows the ME70 to read all relevant datagrams. If the specified information is provided to the ME70 on more than one datagram format, a built-in priority list will be used.

- **NMEA HDG**

  The NMEA HDG datagram provides heading from a magnetic sensor. If this reading is corrected for deviation it produces the magnetic heading. If it is offset by variation, it provides the true heading.

- **NMEA HDM**

  The NMEA HDM datagram provides vessel heading in degrees magnetic. The datagram format is no longer recommended for use in new designs. It is often replaced by the NMEA HDG telegram.

- **NMEA HDT**

  The NMEA HDT datagram provides the true vessel heading. The information is normally provided by a course gyro.

- **NMEA VHW**

  The NMEA VHW datagram contains the compass heading to which the vessel points, and the speed of the vessel relative to the water.

Supported datagram formats for distance information

The ME70 supports the following datagram format for vessel distance information.

- **NMEA VLW**

  The NMEA VLW datagram contains the travelled distance of the vessel. Two values are provided; relative to the water and over the ground.

Supported datagram formats for sound speed sensors

The ME70 supports the following datagram formats from a sound speed sensor.

- **AML**

  This is a third-party proprietary datagram format created by AML Oceanographic for use with their sound speed sensors. The file format is ASCII with a five line headers plus a variable number of data lines. For more information, see http://www.amloceanographic.com.

- **Sippican SVP**

  This is a third-party proprietary datagram format created by Lockheed Martin Sippican, Inc for use with their sound speed sensors. The file format is ASCII, and it comprises several lines and comments. For more information, see http://www.sippican.com.

Supported datagram formats for motion information

The ME70 supports the following datagram formats from a motion sensor.

- **Simrad TSS1**

  Simrad Sounder/TSS1 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for heave, roll and pitch compensation. When you select this protocol, the number of sensor variables is fixed, and there is no token associated with it.

- **Kongsberg EM Attitude 1000**

  The EM Attitude 1000 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for use with digital motion sensors. It holds roll, pitch, heave and heading information. The datagram contains a 10-bytes long message. In many new designs, this datagram format has been replaced with EM Attitude 3000 format.

- **Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000**

  The EM Attitude 3000 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for use with digital motion sensors. It holds roll, pitch, heave and heading information. The datagram contains a 10-bytes long message.

Supported datagram formats for trawl information

The data communication from an external trawl system is based on proprietary data formats. The ME70 supports the following datagram formats from a trawl system.

- **Simrad DAD**

Simrad DAD is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the ascending or descending depth rate of the trawl sensor.

- **Simrad DBS**

  Simrad DBS is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the current depth of the trawl sensor.

- **Simrad GLL**

  Simrad GLL is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the current geographical position of the trawl sensor.

- **Simrad HFB**

  Simrad HFB is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It provides the vertical distance (height) from the headrope to the footrope, and from the footrope to the bottom.

- **Simrad HB2**

  Simrad HB2 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It provides the vertical distance (height) from the headrope to the footrope, and from the footrope to the bottom. It is used for the second trawl in a dual trawl system.

- **Simrad MTW**

  Simrad MTW is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the water temperature measured by the trawl sensor.

- **Simrad TDS**

  Simrad TDS is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the door spread. That is the distance between the two trawl doors.

- **Simrad TS2**

  Simrad TS2 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the door spread in a dual trawl system. That is the distance between the two trawl doors.

- **Simrad TFI**

  Simrad TFI is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the status information from maximum three catch sensors.

- **Simrad TPC**

  Simrad TPC is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the trawl position in Cartesian coordinates.

- **Simrad TPR**

  Simrad TPR is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It provides the relative bearing and water depth of the trawl sensor, as well as its distance from the vessel.

- **Simrad TPT**

Simrad TPT is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the true bearing and water depth of the trawl sensor, as well as its distance from the vessel.

- **Ifremer PIFM**

  Ifremer PIFM is a proprietary datagram format created by Ifremer (http://www.ifremer.fr) to receive trawl information from *Pacha* and *Scanmar* trawl systems.

Supported datagram formats for catch monitoring information

The data communication from an external catch monitoring system is based on proprietary data formats. The ME70 supports the following datagram formats from a catch monitoring system.

- **Simrad PSIMP-D**

  Simrad PSIMP-D is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the type and configuration of PS and PI sensors used by a Simrad catch monitoring system.

- **Simrad PSIMP-D1**

  Simrad PSIMP-D1 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the type and configuration of PS, PI abd PX sensors used by a Simrad catch monitoring system.

- **Simrad PSIMP-F**

  Simrad PSIMP-F is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the type and configuration of PS and PI sensors used by a Simrad catch monitoring system.

Supported datagram formats for depth information

The ME70 supports the following datagram formats for depth output.

- **NMEA DBS**

  The NMEA DBS datagram provides the current depth from the surface. The datagram is no longer recommended for use in new designs. It is frequently replaced by the NMEA DPT datagram.

- **NMEA DBT**

  The NMEA DBT datagram provides the current depth under the transducer. In new designs, this datagram is frequently used to replace the DBK and DBS datagrams.

- **NMEA DPT**

  The NMEA DPT datagram provides the water depth relative to the transducer, and the offset of the measuring transducer.

- **Simrad EK500 Depth**

  Simrad EK500 Depth is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It was originally defined for the Simrad EK500 scientific echo sounder.

It provides the current depth from three channels, as well as the bottom surface backscattering strength and the athwartships bottom slope. This telegram has been designed for output on either a serial line or a local area network Ethernet connection.

- **Atlas Depth**

  Atlas Depth is a proprietary datagram format created by Atlas Elektronik (http://www.atlas-elektronik.com) to provide the current depth from two channels.

Weight and outline dimensions

These weights and outline dimension characteristics summarize the physical properties of the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder.

Note

For more detailed information about the physical dimensions, see the Drawing file.

The source drawings (normally in AutoCad format) can be downloaded from our website.

- *https://www.simrad.com/me70*

Display

The display is not a part of the ME70 scope of supply, and it is not manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. Refer to the documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Processor Unit (Enix)

- **Make and model**: Simrad Enix
- **Outline dimensions**:
  - **Depth**: 385 mm
  - **Width**: 479.6 mm (Will fit in a 19" rack)
  - **Height**: 177 mm
- **Weight**: 16 kg (Approximately)

Transceiver Unit

- **Outline dimensions**:
  - **Depth**: 900 mm
  - **Width**: 600 mm
  - **Height**: 1580 mm)
- **Weight**: 230 kg

Note

Earlier versions of the ME70 Transceiver Unit have had different heights.

Power Supply Unit

- **Outline dimensions** (With shock absorbers):
  - **Depth**: 408 mm
  - **Width**: 630 mm
  - **Height**: 744 mm
- **Weight**: 82 kg

Transducer

- **Diameter**: 677 mm
- **Height**: 313 mm
- **Minimum space required behind transducer**: 500 mm

Transducer cables

- **Quantity**: 25
- **Length**:
  - **Maximum**: 30 m
  - **Minimum**: 15 m

  The transducer cables can not be spliced. The required length of the cables to fit each specific installation must be determined before the transducer is ordered.
- **Cable outer diameter:**
  - **Without protective hose**: 16 mm (Minimum)
  - **With protective hose**: 22 mm (Minimum)
- **Weight**:
  - **Transducer**: 250 kg (Without cables)
  - **Transducer cables**: 8,75 kg/m (Without protective hose)
  - **Transducer cables**: 12,5 kg/m (With protective hose)
  - **Total weight**: 382 kg (15 m)
- **Minimum bending radius**:
  - **Static**: 95 mm
  - **Dynamic**: 243 mm
- **Tensile strength**: 3000 N
- **Material**: Polyurethane (Outer sheet)

Power requirements

These power characteristics summarize the supply power requirements for the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder.

Display

The display is not a part of the ME70 scope of supply, and it is not manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. Refer to the documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Processor Unit (Enix)

- **Make and model**: Simrad Enix
- **Voltage requirement**: 115/230 VAC (Single phase/Nominal voltage)
- **Maximum voltage deviation**: 15%
- **Maximum transient**: 20% of nominal voltage, recovery time 3 s
- **Power consumption**: 500 W @ 230 VAC (Approximately)

Transceiver Unit

- **Voltage requirement**: 115/230 VAC, 47 to 63 Hz, single phase, nominal
- **Maximum voltage deviation**: 15%
- **Maximum transient**: 20% of nominal voltage, recovery time 3 s
- **Power consumption**: 100 VA (Approximately)

  The main DC supply power to the Transceiver Unit is provided by the three Power Supply Units.

Power Supply Unit

- **Voltage requirement**: 230 VAC, 47 to 63 Hz, single phase, nominal
- **Maximum voltage deviation**: 15%
- **Maximum transient**: 20% of nominal voltage, recovery time 3 s
- **Power consumption**: 800 W x 3 (Approximately)

Environmental requirements

These environmental specifications summarize the temperature and humidity requirements for the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder.

Display

The display is not a part of the ME70 scope of supply, and it is not manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. Refer to the documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Processor Unit (Enix)

- **Make and model**: Simrad Enix
- **Operational temperature**: -15 to 55 °C
- **Storage temperature**: -20 to 70 °C
- **Relative humidity**: 10 to 95% relative non-condensing
- **Certificates**:
  - IEC 60945
  - IACS E10

Transceiver Unit

- **Operational temperature**: 10 to +30 °C

  Maximum temperature gradation: 10° C/hour
- **Storage temperature**: -40 to 65 °C
- **Relative humidity**:
  - **Operation**: 10 to 80% relative non-condensing
  - **Storage**: 8 to 95% relative non-condensing

Power Supply Unit

- **Operational temperature**: 0 to +30 °C
- **Storage temperature**: -40 to 65 °C
- **Relative humidity**: 5 to 85% relative non-condensing

Compass safe distance

If you place any of the ME70 units on the bridge, you must observe the physical distance to the compass.

Display

The display is not a part of the ME70 scope of supply, and it is not manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. Refer to the documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Processor Unit (Enix)

- **Make and model**: Simrad Enix
- **Standard compass**: 200 cm
- **Other compass**: 140 cm

Display minimum technical requirements

Unless specifically ordered, the ME70 is not provided with a display. The display must then be purchased locally.

You can use one or two displays on your ME70 Processor Unit depending on personal and/or operational preferences.

Note

Make sure that the chosen display meets the ME70 requirements. The design and construction must allow for marine use, and the display must be able to withstand the movements and vibrations normally experienced on a vessel. Verify that you have easy access to cables and connectors, and that the display can be installed in a safe and secure way.

The minimum technical requirements for the display are:

- **Resolution**: 1280 x 1024 pixels (Minimum)
- **Video interface**: The video interface must match the output format(s) provided by the Processor Unit.

  The Processor Unit may offer video output on several formats. Investigate your options before you purchase a display.
- **Physical screen size**: The screen size depends on personal and/or operational preferences.

  The ME70 software supports 9:16 displays.

Datagram formats

Topics

About NMEA and standard datagram formats, page 287

NMEA datagram formats, page 290

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303

Third party datagram formats, page 317

About NMEA and standard datagram formats

Topics

About the NMEA datagram formats, page 287

National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA), page 287

NMEA sentence structure, page 288

Standard NMEA 0183 communication parameters, page 289

About the NMEA datagram formats

The ME70 can send and receive information to and from several different peripherals. All transmissions take place as **datagrams** with data sentences. Each datagram has a defined format and length.

The NMEA 0183 standard is the most common protocol used to receive and transmit data to and from peripheral sensors. A parametric sentence structure is used for all NMEA data.

The sentence start with a “$” delimiter, and represent the majority of approved sentences defined by the standard. This sentence structure, with delimited and defined data files, is the preferred method for conveying information.

For more information about the NMEA standard, the format and the data sentences, refer to their official publications. Their document *NMEA 1083 - Standard for interfacing marine electronic devices* explains the formats in detail. The document can be obtained from NMEA.

Note

Two phrases are in general use to describe basic transfer unit associated with a packet-switched network; "telegram" and "datagram". In this publication, we use the phrase "datagram".

National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA)

The National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA) has defined communication standards for maritime electronic equipment, and the ME70 Multibeam scientific echo sounder supports these standards for communication with external sensors and peripheral systems.

The most common standard is the NMEA 0183. The National Marine Electronics Association describes it as follows:

> The NMEA 0183 Interface Standard defines electrical signal requirements, data transmission protocol and time, and specific sentence formats for a 4800 baud serial data bus. Each bus may have only one talker but many listeners.
>
> *National Marine Electronics Association*

For more information about the National Marine Electronics Association and the NMEA 0183 standard, refer to the organization's web site at:

- http://www.nmea.org

NMEA sentence structure

A defines sentence structure is defined by NMEA to establish the communication between two units. Most other datagram formats are designed using the same, or a similar, structure.

The following provides a summary explanation of the approved parametric sentence structure.

```
$aaccc,c-c*hh<CR><LF>
```

1 "**$**"

This character (Hex: 24) is used to identify the start of the sentence.

2 "**aaccc**"

This is the address field. The first two characters (aa) identifies the *talker ID*, while the last three characters are the *sentence formatter* mnemonic code identifying the data type and the string format of the successive fields.

3 ","

The comma (Hex: 2C) is used as *field delimiter*. This character starts each field except the address and checksum fields. If it is followed by a null field, it is all that remains to indicate no data in the field.

4 "**c-c**"

This is the *data sentence block*. This is a series of data fields containing all the data to be transmitted. The data field sentence is fixed and identified by the sentence formatter in the address field. Data fields may be of variable lengths, and they are preceded by the field delimiter.

5 "*****"

This character (Hex: 2A) is the *checksum delimiter*. This delimiter follows the last field of the sentence, and indicates that the following two alphanumerical characters contain the checksum.

6 "**hh**"

This is the *checksum*.

7 **<CR><LF>**

The carriage return and line feed characters terminates the sentence.

Note

*In some proprietary telegrams received from other Kongsberg Maritime equipment, the **$** character is replaced by the **@** character. The checksum field may then not be in use.*

Standard NMEA 0183 communication parameters

The ME70 uses both NMEA and proprietary datagram formats to communicate with peripheral systems and sensors.The majority of the datagrams used by the ME70 are defined by the National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA). NMEA defines a fixed set of transmission parameters.

The communication parameters defined for **NMEA 0183** are:

- **Baud rate**: 4800 b/s
- **Data bits**: 8
- **Parity**: None
- **Stop bits**: 1

Some instruments may offer other parameters and/or choices. You must always check the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

NMEA datagram formats

Topics

NMEA DBS datagram, page 290
NMEA DBT datagram, page 291
NMEA DPT datagram, page 292
NMEA GGA datagram, page 293
NMEA GLL datagram, page 294
NMEA HDG datagram, page 294
NMEA HDM datagram, page 295
NMEA HDT datagram, page 296
NMEA MWD datagram, page 296
NMEA MWV datagram, page 297
NMEA RMC datagram, page 297
NMEA VBW datagram, page 298
NMEA VHW datagram, page 299
NMEA VTG datagram, page 300
NMEA VWR datagram, page 301
NMEA ZDA datagram, page 302

NMEA DBS datagram

The NMEA DBS datagram provides the current depth from the surface. The datagram is no longer recommended for use in new designs. It is frequently replaced by the NMEA DPT datagram.

Format

```
$--DBS,x.x,f,y.y,M,z.z,F*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

All depths are measured from below the sea surface.

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **DBS**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,f**: Depth in feet

4 **y.y,M**: Depth in metres

5 **z.z,F**: Depth in fathoms

6 ***hh**: Checksum

Tip

If you need the depth below the keel, use the NMEA DBK datagram. If you need the depth below the transducer, use the NMEA DBT datagram.

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA DBT datagram

The NMEA DBT datagram provides the current depth under the transducer. In new designs, this datagram is frequently used to replace the DBK and DBS datagrams.

Format

```
$--DBT,x.x,f,y.y,M,z.z,F*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

All depths are measured from below the transducer face.

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **DBT**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,f**: Depth in feet

4 **y.y,M**: Depth in metres

5 **z.z,F**: Depth in fathoms

6 ***hh**: Checksum

Tip

If you need the depth below the keel, use the NMEA DBK datagram. If you need the depth below the surface, use the NMEA DBS datagram.

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA DPT datagram

The NMEA DPT datagram provides the water depth relative to the transducer, and the offset of the measuring transducer.

Format

```
$--DPT,x.x,y.y,z.z*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

This description is not complete. For additional details, refer to the NMEA standard.

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **DPT**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x**: Depth (Metres), Relative to the transducer

4 **y.y**: Offset (Metres), Relative to the transducer

Positive offset numbers provide the distance from the transducer to the water line. Negative offset numbers provide the distance from the transducer to the part of the keel of interest.

5 **z.z**: Maximum range scale in use

6 ***hh**: Checksum

Tip

If you need the depth below the keel, use the NMEA DBK datagram. If you need the depth below the surface, use the NMEA DBS datagram. If you need the depth below the transducer, use the NMEA DBT datagram.

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA GGA datagram

The NMEA GGA datagram transfers the time, position and fix related data from a global positioning system (GPS).

Format

```
$--GGA,hhmmss.ss,llll.ll,a,yyyyy.yy,a,x,zz,d.d,a.a,M,g.g,M,r.r,cccc*hh
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **GGA**: Datagram identifier

3 **hhmmss.ss**: Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the current position

4 **llll.ll,a**: Latitude North/South (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

N = North

S = South

5 **yyyyy.yy,a**: Longitude East/West (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

E = East

W = West

6 **x**: Quality indicator for the GPS (Global Positioning System)

Refer to the NMEA standard for further information of the GPS quality indicator.

7 **zz**: Number of satellites in use (00 - 12)

The number of satellites may be different from the number in view.

8 **d.d**: HDOP (Horizontal dilution of precision)

9 **a.a,M**: Altitude related to mean sea level (geoid) (Metres)

10 **g.g,M**: Geoidal separation (Metres)

11 **r.r**: Age of GPS (Global Positioning System) data

12 **cccc**: Differential reference station identification (0000 - 1023

13 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA GLL datagram

The NMEA GLL datagram transfers the latitude and longitude of vessel position, the time of the position fix and the current status from a global positioning system (GPS).

Format

```
$--GLL,llll.ll,a,yyyyy.yy,a,hhmmss.ss,A,a*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **GLL**: Datagram identifier

3 **llll.ll,a**: Latitude North/South (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

N = North

S = South

4 **yyyyy.yy,a**: Longitude East/West (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

E = East

W = West

5 **hhmmss.ss**: Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the current position

6 **A**: Status

A = The data are valid.

V = The data are not valid.

7 **a**: Mode indicator

8 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA HDG datagram

The NMEA HDG datagram provides heading from a magnetic sensor. If this reading is corrected for deviation it produces the magnetic heading. If it is offset by variation, it provides the true heading.

Format

```
$--HDG,x.x,z.z,a,r.r,a*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **HDG**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x**: Heading (Degrees Magnetic)

4 **z.z,a**: Deviation (Degrees Magnetic), East/West

E = East

W = West

5 **r.r,a** Variation (Degrees Magnetic), East/West

E = East

W = West

6 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA HDM datagram

The NMEA HDM datagram provides vessel heading in degrees magnetic. The datagram format is no longer recommended for use in new designs. It is often replaced by the NMEA HDG telegram.

Format

```
$--HDM,x.x,M*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **HDM**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,M**: Heading (Degrees Magnetic

4 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA HDT datagram

The NMEA HDT datagram provides the true vessel heading. The information is normally provided by a course gyro.

Format

```
$--HDT,x.x,T*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **HDT**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,T**: Heading (Degrees True)

4 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA MWD datagram

The NMEA MWD datagram provides the direction from which the wind blows across the earth's surface. The wind direction is related to north. The datagram also offers the wind speed.

Format

```
$--MWD,x.x,T,y.y,M,z.z,N,s.s,M*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **MWD**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,T**: Wind direction, true (0 to 359°)

4 **y.y,M**: Wind direction, magnetic (0 to 359°

5 **z.z,N**: Wind speed in knots

6 **s.s,M**: Wind speed in meters/second

7 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA MWV datagram

The NMEA MWV datagram provides the direction from which the wind blows relative to the vessel's centre line.

Format

```
$--MWV,x.x,a,y.y,b*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **MWV**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x**: Wind angle (0 to 359°)

4 **a**: Reference

R = Relative

T = Theoretical

5 **y.y**: Wind speed

6 **b**: Wind speed unit (K/M/N/S)

7 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA RMC datagram

The NMEA RMC datagram transfers the time, date, position, course and speed data from a global navigation satellite system (GNSS) receiver.

Format

```
$--RMC,hhmmss.ss,A,llll.ll,a,yyyyy.yy,a,x.x,z.z,ddmmyy,r.r,a,a*hh
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **RMC**: Datagram identifier

3 **hhmmss.ss**: Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the current position

4 **A**: Status

A = The data are valid.

V = The data are not valid.

5 **llll.ll,a**: Latitude North/South (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

N = North

S = South

6 **yyyyy.yy,a**: Longitude East/West (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

W = West

E = East

7 **x.x**: Speed over ground (knots)

8 **z.z**: Course over ground (Degrees True)

9 **ddmmyy**: Date

10 **r.r,a**: Magnetic variation, East/West (Degrees)

E = East

W = West

11 **a**: Mode indicator

12 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA VBW datagram

The NMEA VBW datagram contains water referenced and ground referenced vessel speed data.

Format

```
$--VBW,x.x,z.z,A,r.r,q.q,A,p.p,A,c.c,A*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **VBW**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x**: Longitude water speed (knots)

4 **z.z**: Transverse water speed (knots)

5 **A**: Transverse water speed, Status

A = The data are valid.

V = The data are not valid.

6 **r.r**: Longitudinal ground speed (knots)

7 **q.q**: Transverse ground speed (knots)

8 **A**: Transverse ground speed, Status

A = The data are valid.

V = The data are not valid.

9 **p.p**: Stern transverse water speed (knots)

10 **A**: Stern transverse water speed, Status

A = The data are valid.

V = The data are not valid.

11 **c.c**: Stern transverse ground speed (knots)

12 **A**: Stern transverse ground speed, Status

A = The data are valid.

V = The data are not valid.

13 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA VHW datagram

The NMEA VHW datagram contains the compass heading to which the vessel points, and the speed of the vessel relative to the water.

Format

```
$--VHW,x.x,T,x.x,M,x.x,N,x.x,K*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **VHW**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,T**: Heading (Degrees True)

4 **x.x,M**: Heading (Degrees Magnetic)

5 **x.x,N**: Speed relative to water (knots)

Resolution: 0.1 knots

6 **x.x,K**: Speed relative to water (km/hr),

Resolution: 0.1 km/hr

7 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA VTG datagram

The NMEA VTG datagram contains the actual course and speed relative to the ground.

Format

```
$--VTG,x.x,T,y.y,M,z.z,N,g.g,K,a*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **VTG**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,T**: Course over ground (Degrees True)

4 **y.y,M**: Course over ground (Degrees Magnetic)

5 **z.z,N**: Speed over ground (knots)

6 **g.g,K**: Speed over ground (km/hr)

7 **a**: Mode indicator

A = Autonomous

D = Differential

N = Data not valid

8 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA VWR datagram

The NMEA VWR datagram provides the wind angle in relation to the vessel's heading, and the wind speed measured relative to the moving vessel.

Note

This datagram format is not recommended for use in new designs. It has been replaced by the MWV datagram format.

Format

```
$--VWR,x.x,a,y.y,N,z.z,M,s.s,K*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **VWR**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x**: Wind angle (0 to 180°)

4 **a**: Reference

L = Left

R = Right

5 **y.y,N**: Wind speed in knots

6 **z.z,M**: Wind speed in meters/second

7 **s.s,K**: Wind speed in kilometres/hour

8 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

NMEA ZDA datagram

The NMEA ZDA datagram contains the universal time code (UTC), day, month, year and local time zone.

Format

```
$--ZDA,hhmmss.ss,xx,yy,zzzz,hh,mm*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

This description is not complete. For additional details, refer to the NMEA standard.

1 **$—**: Talker identifier

2 **ZDA**: Datagram identifier

3 **hhmmss.ss**: Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the current position

4 **xx**: Day (01 - 31) (Part of UTC)

5 **yy**: Month (01 - 12) (Part of UTC)

6 **zzzz**: Year (Part of UTC)

7 **hh**: Local zone hours, (00 - ±13)

8 **mm**: Local zone minutes, (00 - 59)

9 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

NMEA datagram formats, page 290
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS), page 228
Setting up the interface from a fixed sound speed sensor, page 237
Setting up the input from a motion reference unit (MRU), page 240

Proprietary datagram formats

Topics

Simrad DBS datagram format, page 303
Simrad FS3300 Binary depth datagram format, page 304
Simrad GLL datagram format, page 305
Simrad HFB datagram format, page 305
Simrad MDS datagram format, page 306
Simrad MTW datagram format, page 308
Simrad PSIMP-D datagram format, page 308
Simrad PSIMP-F datagram format, page 310
Simrad TDS datagram format, page 311
Simrad TFI datagram format, page 312
Simrad TPC datagram format, page 313
Simrad TPP datagram format, page 313
Simrad TPT datagram format, page 314
Simrad TS2 datagram format, page 315
Simrad TTS datagram format, page 315

Simrad DBS datagram format

Simrad DBS is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the current depth of the trawl sensor.

Format

```
@IIDBS,,,x.x,M,,<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **DBS**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,M**: Depth in metres (0 – 2000)

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad FS3300 Binary depth datagram format

The Simrad FS3300 Binary depth is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It provides the current depth using a 2-byte binary sentence. The measurement unit is 0.1525879 m.

Format

```
Osbbbbbb bbbbbbbb
```

Description

1 **O**: The output is valid output when this is set.

2 **s**: Sign bit

3 **bbbbbb bbbbbbbb**: This is the 14 bit absolute depth value in units of 0.1525879 m.

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad GLL datagram format

Simrad GLL is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the current geographical position of the trawl sensor.

Note

The GLL datagram may be received from integrated instruments using the "ii" talker identifier. The Simrad ITI system uses the same talker identifier "ii", and this has caused some confusion. In order to rectify this, the ITI GLL datagram has been inhibited.

Format

```
$IIGLLddmm.hh,N,dddmm.hh,W,hhmmss.ss,A<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **GLL**: Datagram identifier

3 **ddmm.hh,N**: Latitude (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

- **N**: North
- **S**: South

4 **ddmm.hh,W**: Longitude (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

- **W**: West
- **E**: East

5 **A**: Status

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad HFB datagram format

Simrad HFB is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It provides the vertical distance (height) from the headrope to the footrope, and from the footrope to the bottom. The heights are measured by an ITI TrawlEye or a height sensor.

Format

```
@IIHFB,x.x,M,y.y,M<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **HFB**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,M**: This is the distance (height) from the headrope to the footrope. (0 – 100 m)

4 **y.y, M**: This is the distance (height) from footrope to bottom (seabed). (0 – 100 m)

Tip

If you use two height sensors, the information from the second sensor is provided in the Simrad HB2 datagram.

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad MDS datagram format

Simrad MDS is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It contains the location, bearing and depth of a tracked target. All information is presented relative to your own vessel.

Format

```
$PSIMMDS,hh:mm:ss,dd:mm:yy,aaaa,A,llll.lll,a,
yyyyy.yyy,a,xxx(+),M,ppp,P,zzz(+),M,vvv.v,N,
ttt,D,www(+),A,ddd(+),A*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

Note

All data relate to the tracked target.

1 **$PSIM**: Talker identifier

2 **MDS**: Datagram identifier

3 **hh:mm:ss**: Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)

4 **dd:mm:yy**: Date (Day, month and year)

5 **aaaa**: Target identification

These four characters contain the target identifier on the format AT X, where X is an integer defining the target number. The ME70 will export information from maximum three tracked targets simultaneously.

- If one target is tracked, one datagram is exported.
- If two targets are tracked, two consecutive datagrams are exported.
- If three targets are tracked, three consecutive datagrams are exported.
- If a fourth target is selected, the information about the first (oldest) target is disabled.

6 **A**: Status

- **V**: The information is valid.
- **N**: The information is not valid.

7 **llll.lll,a**: Latitude (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

- **N**: North
- **S**: South

8 **yyyyy.yyy,a**: Longitude (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)

- **W**: West
- **E**: East

9 **xxx(+),M**: Horizontal range in meters

An empty denomination field indicates an invalid value. This field has a variable length that must contain minimum three digits.

10 **ppp,P**: Direction to target in degrees, relative to north

An empty denomination field indicates an invalid value.

11 **zzz(+),M**: Depth in metres

An empty denomination field indicates an invalid value. This field has a variable length that must contain minimum three digits.

12 **vv.v,N**: Speed in knots

An empty denomination field indicates an invalid value.

13 **ttt,D**: Course in degrees

An empty denomination field indicates an invalid value.

14 **www(+),A**: Area in square meters

An empty denomination field indicates an invalid value. This field has a variable length that must contain minimum three digits.

15 **ddd(+),A**: Volume in tons

An empty denomination field indicates an invalid value. This field has a variable length that must contain minimum three digits.

16 ***hh**: Checksum

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad MTW datagram format

Simrad MTW is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the water temperature measured by the trawl sensor.

Format

```
$IIMTW,xx.x,C<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **MTW**: Datagram identifier

3 **xx.x,C**: Water temperature (degrees Celcius)

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad PSIMP-D datagram format

Simrad PSIMP-D is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the type and configuration of PS and PI sensors used by a Simrad catch monitoring system.

Format

```
$PSIMP,D,tt,dd,M,U,S,C,V,Cr,Q,In,SL,NL,G,Cb,error*chksum<CR><LF>
```

Description

Note

This datagram description is not complete. If you need further information, contact Kongsberg Maritime.

1 **PS**: Talker identifier

2 **IMP**: Datagram identifier

3 **D**: Sentence specifier

4 **tt**: Time

5 **dd**: Date

6 **M**: Type of measurement

- **D**: Depth
- **T**: Temperature
- **C**: Catch
- **B**: Bottom
- **N**: No sensor
- **M**: Marker

7 **U**: Unit

M (meters), **f** (feet) or **F** (fathoms) for depth measurements

C (Celsius) or **F** (Fahrenheit) for temperature measurements

8 **S**: Source

The number (1, 2 or 3) of the sensor providing the current data values

9 **C**: Channel

The number (1 to 30) of the communication channel for the current data source

10 **V**: Value

The magnitude of the current sensor measurement

11 **Cr**: Change rate

The magnitude of the current depth or temperature measurement

12 **Q**: Quality

- **0**: No connection between the sensor and the receiver
- **1**: One or two telemetry pulses are lost, current value is predicted
- **2**: The current data value is reliable

13 **In**: Interference

- **0**: No interference
- **1**: Interference is detected

14 **SL**: Signal level

The signal level of the telemetry pulse, measured in dB // 1 µPa

15 **NL**: Noise level

The average noise level of the current channel, measured in dB // 1 µPa

16 **G**: current gain, 0, 20 or 40 dB

17 **Cb**: Cable quality

- **0**: Cable is not connected
- **1**: Cable is OK
- **2**: A short circuit, or the hydrophone current is too large

18 **error**: Error detected

0 when no error is detected, a number >0 indicates an error condition

19 **chksum**: Checksum

The checksum field consists of a "*" and two hex digits representing the exclusive OR of all characters between, but not including, the "$" and "*" characters

Note

This datagram format is obsolete, and it is no longer in use on new designs. It has been replaced by datagram PSIMP-D1.

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad PSIMP-F datagram format

Simrad PSIMP-F is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the type and configuration of PS and PI sensors used by a Simrad catch monitoring system.

Format

```
$PSIMP,F,S1,S2,S3,T1,T2,T3,F1,F2,F3*chksum<CR><LF>
```

Description

Note

This datagram description is not complete. If you need further information, contact Kongsberg Maritime.

1 **PS**: Talker identifier

2 **IMP**: Datagram identifier

3 **F**: Sentence specifier

4 **S1,S2,S3**: sensor types

- **D**: Depth 300 m
- **E**: Depth 600 m

- **T**: Temperature
- **C**: Catch slow
- **F**: Catch fast
- **B**: Bottom
- **N**: No sensor

5 **T1,T2,T3**: Telemetry channel numbers for sensors 1, 2 and 3

6 **F1,F2,F3**: Offset values for sensors 1, 2 and 3

7 **chksum**: Checksum

The checksum field consists of a "*" and two hex digits representing the exclusive OR of all characters between, but not including, the "$" and "*" characters

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad TDS datagram format

Simrad TDS is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the door spread. That is the distance between the two trawl doors.

Format

```
@IITDS,x.x,M<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **TDS**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,M**: Distance in meters

Note

In a dual trawl system, the distance between the second door set is provided in datagram Simrad TS2.

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad TFI datagram format

Simrad TFI is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the status information from maximum three catch sensors.

Format

```
@IITFI,x,y,z<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **TFI**: Datagram identifier

3 **x**: Status #1

- **0**: Off
- **1**: On
- **2**: No answer

4 **y**: Status #2

- **0**: Off
- **1**: On
- **2**: No answer

5 **z**: Status #3

- **0**: Off
- **1**: On
- **2**: No answer

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad TPC datagram format

Simrad TPC is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the trawl position in Cartesian coordinates.

Format

```
@IITPC,x,M,y,M,z,M<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **TPC**: Datagram identifier

3 **x,M**: This is the horizontal distance from the vessel's centre line, in meters.

4 **y,M**: This is the horizontal distance from the transducer to the trawl along the vessel's centre line, in meters.

5 **z,M**: This is the depth of the trawl below the water surface, in meters.

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad TPP datagram format

Simrad TPP is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It exports the horizontal range, bearing and depth of a tracked target.

Format

```
@SSTPP,xxxx,M,yyy,P,zzzz,M,nn<CR><LF>
```

Description

Note

All data relate to the tracked target.

1 **SS**: Talker identifier

2 **TPP**: Datagram identifier

3 **xxxx,M**: Horizontal range in meters

4 **yyy,P**: Bearing in degrees (Relative to vessel heading)

5 **zzzz,M**: Depth in metres

6 **nn**: Target identification

- **00**: An echo target is tracked.
- **10**: A position is tracked.
- **20 – 29**: Markers 0 to 9 are tracked

Position datagrams for markers are not exported.

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad TPT datagram format

Simrad TPT is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the true bearing and water depth of the trawl sensor, as well as its distance from the vessel. The bearing resolution is 1 degree.

Format

```
@IITPT,x,M,y,P,z.z,M<CR><LF>
```

Description

Note

All data relate to the trawl sensor (target).

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **TPT**: Datagram identifier

3 **x,M**: Horizontal range in meters (0 – 4000 m)

4 **y,P**: Bearing in degrees (True, for example relative to North)

5 **z,z,M**: Depth in metres (0 – 2000 m)

Note

The Simrad ITI measures the depth differently from the range and the bearing. If the ITI only knows the range and the bearing, the depth field is empty.

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad TS2 datagram format

Simrad TS2 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the door spread in a dual trawl system. That is the distance between the two trawl doors.

Format

```
@IITS2,x.x,M<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **TS2**: Datagram identifier

3 **x.x,M**: Distance in meters

Note

The distance between the first door set is provided in datagram Simrad TDS.

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Simrad TTS datagram format

Simrad TTS is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It provides the distance between the trawl sensor and the shoal.

Format

```
@IITTS,x,M,y,M,z,M<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **II**: Talker identifier

2 **TTS**: Datagram identifier

3 **x,M**: This is the horizontal distance, in meters, from the trawl to the shoal in a direction normal to the vessel's centre line.

4 **y,M**: This is the horizontal distance, in meters, from the trawl to the shoal in the direction of the vessel's centre line.

5 **z,M**: This is the vertical distance (height), in meters, from the trawl to the shoal.

Related topics

Proprietary datagram formats, page 303
Setting up the input from a Simrad trawl system, page 231
Setting up the input from a Simrad catch monitoring system, page 234

Third party datagram formats

Topics

Furuno CIF datagram, page 317

Kaijo VDVCD datagram format, page 320

Ryokosei RBY datagram format, page 321

Serpe BSC datagram format, page 322

Furuno CIF datagram

Furuno CIF is a proprietary datagram format created by Furuno (http://www.furuno.jp). It is used to contain information about sea current. The original signal format is a 20 mA current loop, and it needs to be converted to RS-232.

Note

The datagram format described here remains the property of the organization that defined it. If you need more information about this format, contact the owner.

Communication parameters

The serial port must be set up using dedicated parameters.

- **Baud rate**: 4800 baud
- **Parity**: Even
- **Data bits**: 7
- **Start bits**: 1
- **Stop bits**: 2

Format

ASCII	Width	HEX	Comments
STX	1 byte	0x02	Start transmission
(Start loop)			
Data	Refer to the sentence descriptions. Several sentences are contained within one block.		
FS	1 byte	0x1C	Field separator
(End loop)			
FS	1 byte	0x1C	Field separator
ETX	1 byte	0x03	End transmission

Note

The FS field separator immediately prior to the ETX (end transmission) may or may not be present.

Data sentence 56: Speed and direction for current layer one

Byte #	ASCII	HEX	Comments
1	5	35	Data sentence 56: Speed and direction for current layer one
2	6	36	
3	C	43	
4	U	55	
5	R	52	
6	=	3D	
7	1		Current speed x 10 kn
8	2		Current speed x 1 kn
9	.	2E	
10	1		Current speed x 0.1 kn
11		20	
12		20	
13		20	
14		20	
15	A	41	
16	Z	5A	
17	M	4D	
18	=	3D	
19	1		Current direction x 100°
20	2		Current direction x 10°
21	3		Current direction x 1°
22	.	2E	
23	1		Current direction x 0.1°
24		20	
25		20	
26		20	

Data sentence 66: Current indicator; derived ship speed & course

Byte #	ASCII	HEX	Comments
1	6	36	Data sentence 66: Current indicator; derived ship speed & course
2	6	36	
3	+ – C		Modes: + = Ground tracking – = Water tracking **C** = Check data
4	1		Current speed x 10 kn
5	2		Current speed x 1 kn
6	3		Current speed x 0.1 kn
7	1		Course in degrees (True) x 100
8	2		Course in degrees (True) x 10
9	3		Course in degrees (True) x 1
10	4		Course in degrees (True) x 0.1
11	1		Ship heading in degrees x 100
12	2		Ship heading in degrees x 10
13	3		Ship heading in degrees x 1
14	4		Ship heading in degrees x 0.1

Data sentence 76: Depth, speed and direction for each current layer

Byte #	ASCII	HEX	Comments
1	7	37	Data sentence 76: Depth, speed and direction for each current layer
2	6	36	
3	1		Layer 1 – 3
4	1		Layer depth x 100 m
5	2		Layer depth x 10 m
6	3		Layer depth x 1 m
7	+ – C		Modes: + = Ground tracking – = Water tracking **C** = Check data
8	1		Current speed x 10 kn
9	2		Current speed x 1 kn
10	3		Current speed x 0.1 kn
11	1		Current direction x 100°
12	2		Current direction x 10°
13	3		Current direction x 1°

Byte #	ASCII	HEX	Comments
14	4		Current direction x 0.1°
15	0	30/31	**Alert**: Normal or Abnormal
16	N H		Heading reference: **N** = True north **H** = Ship heading
17	1		Selected averaging time [s] (1 to 5)
18	0 1		Byte 18 – 24: **0** = Valid **1** = Not valid
19			End of sentence
20			
21			
22			
23			
24			

Related topics

Third party datagram formats, page 317

Kaijo VDVCD datagram format

Kaijo VDVCD is a proprietary datagram format created by Kaijo. It provides sea current and depth.

Note

The datagram format described here remains the property of the organization that defined it. If you need more information about this format, contact the owner.

Format

```
$VDVCD,,f,xxx,M,y.y,N,zzz,T,a<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **VD**: Talker identifier

2 **VCD**: Datagram identifier

3 **xxx,M**: Depth in metres

4 **y.y,N**: Sea current speed in knots

5 **zzz,T**: Sea current direction in degrees (True)

6 **a**: Status:
   - **A**: The data are valid.
   - **V**: The data are not valid.

Related topics
Third party datagram formats, page 317

Ryokosei RBY datagram format

Ryokosei RBY is a proprietary datagram format created by Ryokosei. It is provided with the buoys to provide the geographical location of the buoy as well as the water temperature the buoy measures. The datagram also provides echo sounder information.

Note

The datagram format described here remains the property of the organization that defined it. If you need more information about this format, contact the owner.

Format

```
$PRBY,xxx,hhmmss,llll.ll,a,yyyyy.yy,a,
yymmdd,tt.t,a0b0c0d0e0f0g0h0i0,BB.B<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **$P**: Talker identifier

2 **RBY**: Datagram identifier

3 **xxx**: This is the number (identification) of the buoy.

4 **hhmmss**: Time (Hours, minutes and seconds)

5 **llll.lll,a**: Latitude (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)
   - **N** = North
   - **S** = South

6 **yyyyy.yyy,a**: Longitude (Degrees, minutes and hundredths)
   - **W** = West
   - **E** = East

7 **yymmdd**: Date (Year, month and day)

8 **tt.t**: Water temperature (degrees Celcius) (0 – 35.5 °C)

9 **a0b0c0d0e0f0g0h0i0**: Echo sounder data

10 **BB.B**: Battery voltage

Related topics

Third party datagram formats, page 317

Serpe BSC datagram format

Serpe BSC is a proprietary datagram format created by Serpe. It is provided with the buoys to provide the geographical location of the buoy as well as the water temperature the buoy measures.

Note

The datagram format described here remains the property of the organization that defined it. If you need more information about this format, contact the owner.

Format

```
$??BSC,bbbb,llll.ll,n,wwwww.ww,W,
tt.t,vv,dd.dd.hh,xx.xx.xx<CR><LF>
```

Description

1 **??**: Talker identifier

2 **BSC**: Datagram identifier

3 **bbbb**: This is the number (identification) of the buoy.

4 **llll.ll,n**: Latitude

- **N** = North
- **S** = South

The information is provided in degrees with decimals. 0222.17 corresponds to 2º13.302'. 0220.50 corresponds to 2º12.3'.

5 **wwwww.ww,W**: Longitude

- **W** = West
- **E** = East

The information is provided in degrees with decimals.

6 **tt.t**: Water temperature (degrees Celcius)

7 **vv**: Battery voltage

8 **dd.dd.hh**: Day, month and hour of the day

9 **xx.xx.xx**: Not used

Related topics

Third party datagram formats, page 317

Drawing file

Topics

About the drawings in the drawing file, page 324
374454 Transceiver Unit dimensions, page 325
385609 Processor Unit dimensions, page 329
311237 Power Supply Unit dimensions, page 333
308337 Power Supply Unit mounting bracket, page 335
208463 Transducer dimensions, page 337
208461 Transducer mounting ring, page 339
326431 Transducer clamping ring, page 341

About the drawings in the drawing file

Relevant drawings related to the installation and/or maintenance of the ME70 are provided for information purposes only.

Note

These drawings are for information and planning purposes only.

The drawings are not to scale. Unless otherwise specified, all measurements are in millimeter (mm). The original installation drawings are available in PDF and/or AutoCad's DWG format. The original drawings can be downloaded from our website.

- https://www.simrad.com

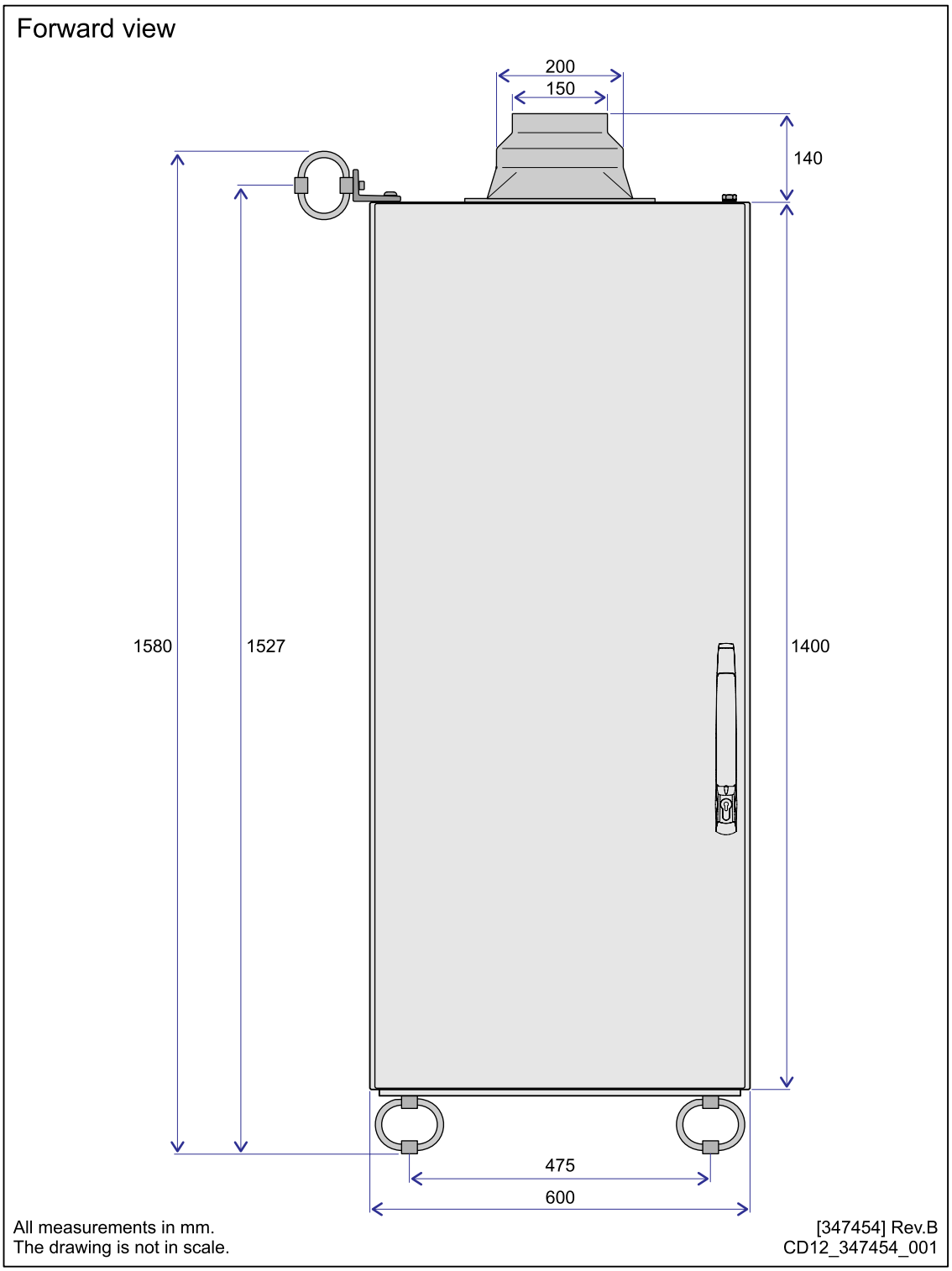
Some drawings and documents are not available from our website. These can be downloaded from the *Simrad Dealer Club*.

- https://www.simrad.com/sdc

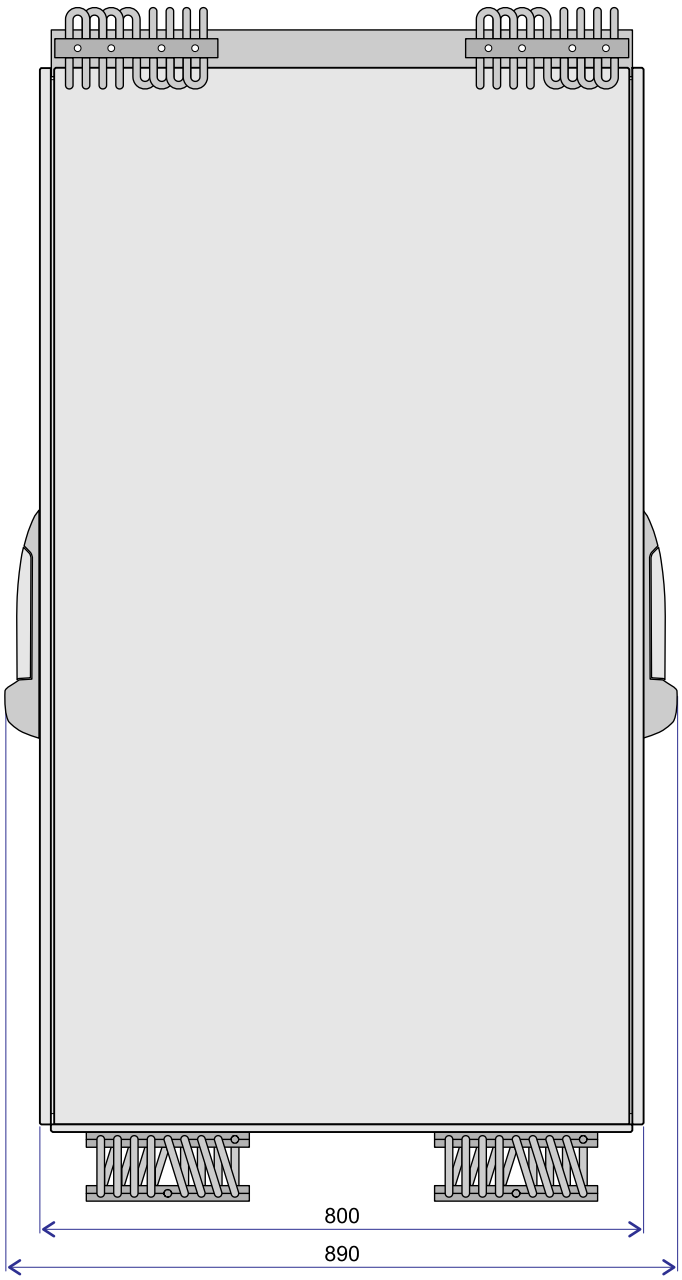
The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures.

If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the ME70 must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

374454 Transceiver Unit dimensions



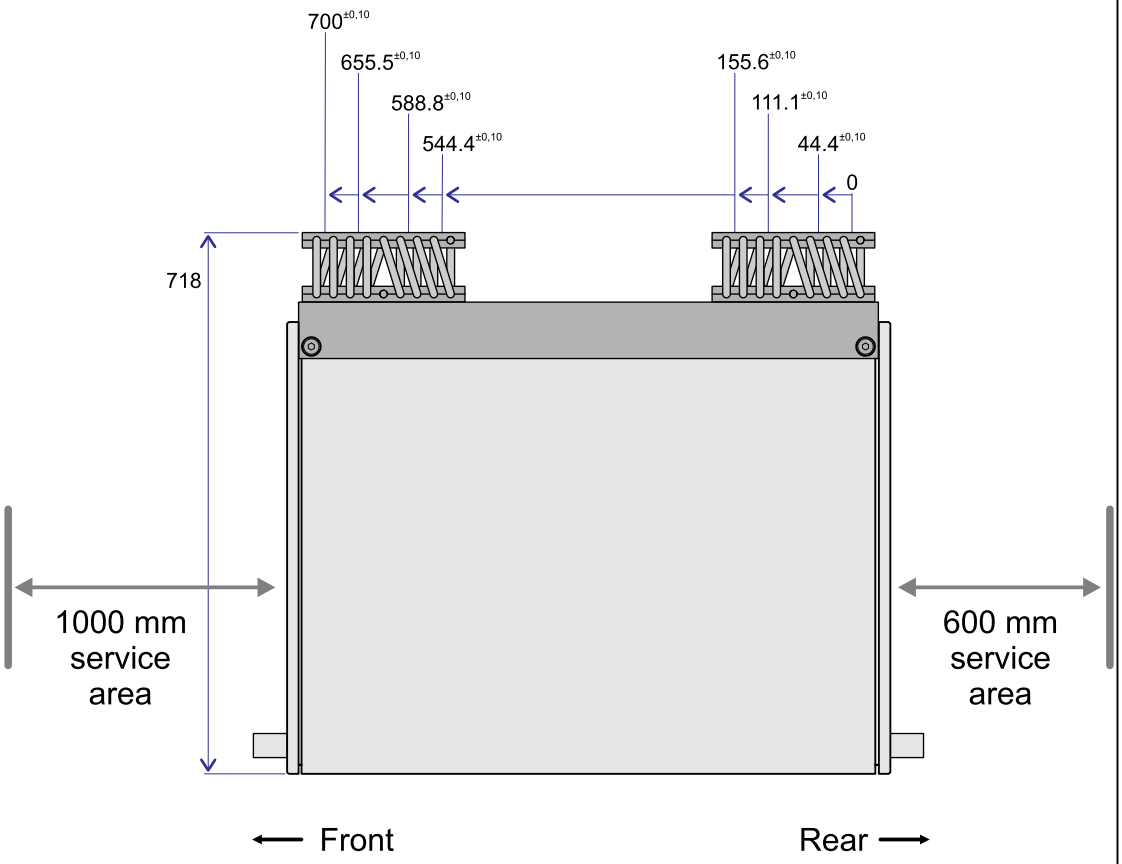
Side view (against the bulkhead)



All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.

[347454] Rev.B
CD12_347454_002

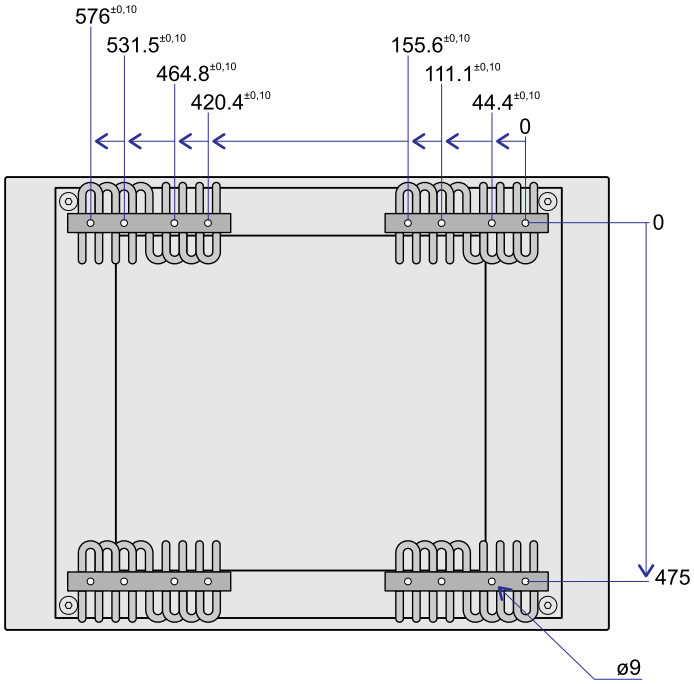
Top view



All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.

[347454] Rev.B
CD12_347454_003

Bottom view



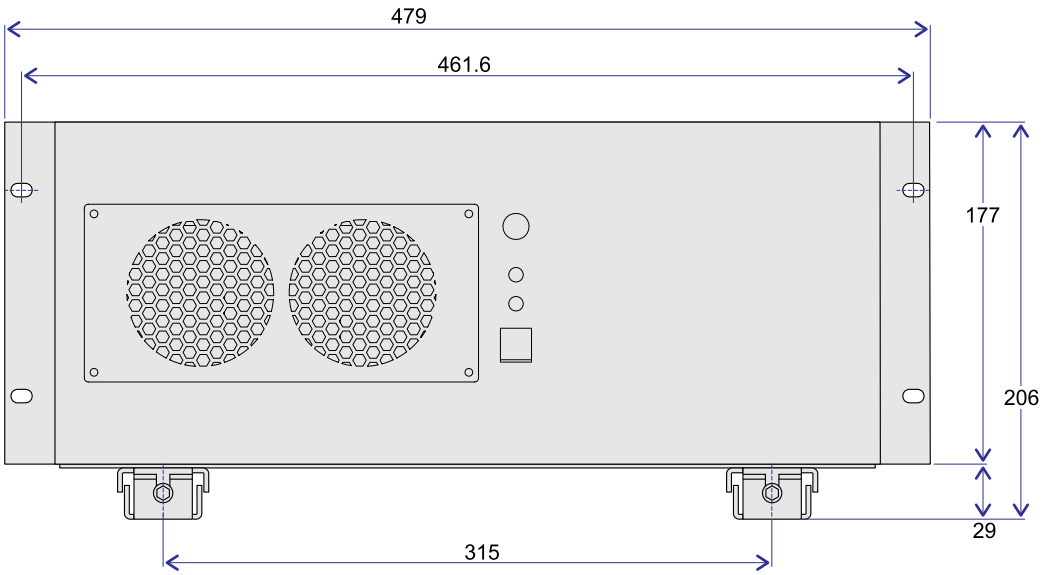
All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.

[347454] Rev.B
CD12_347454_004

Related topics

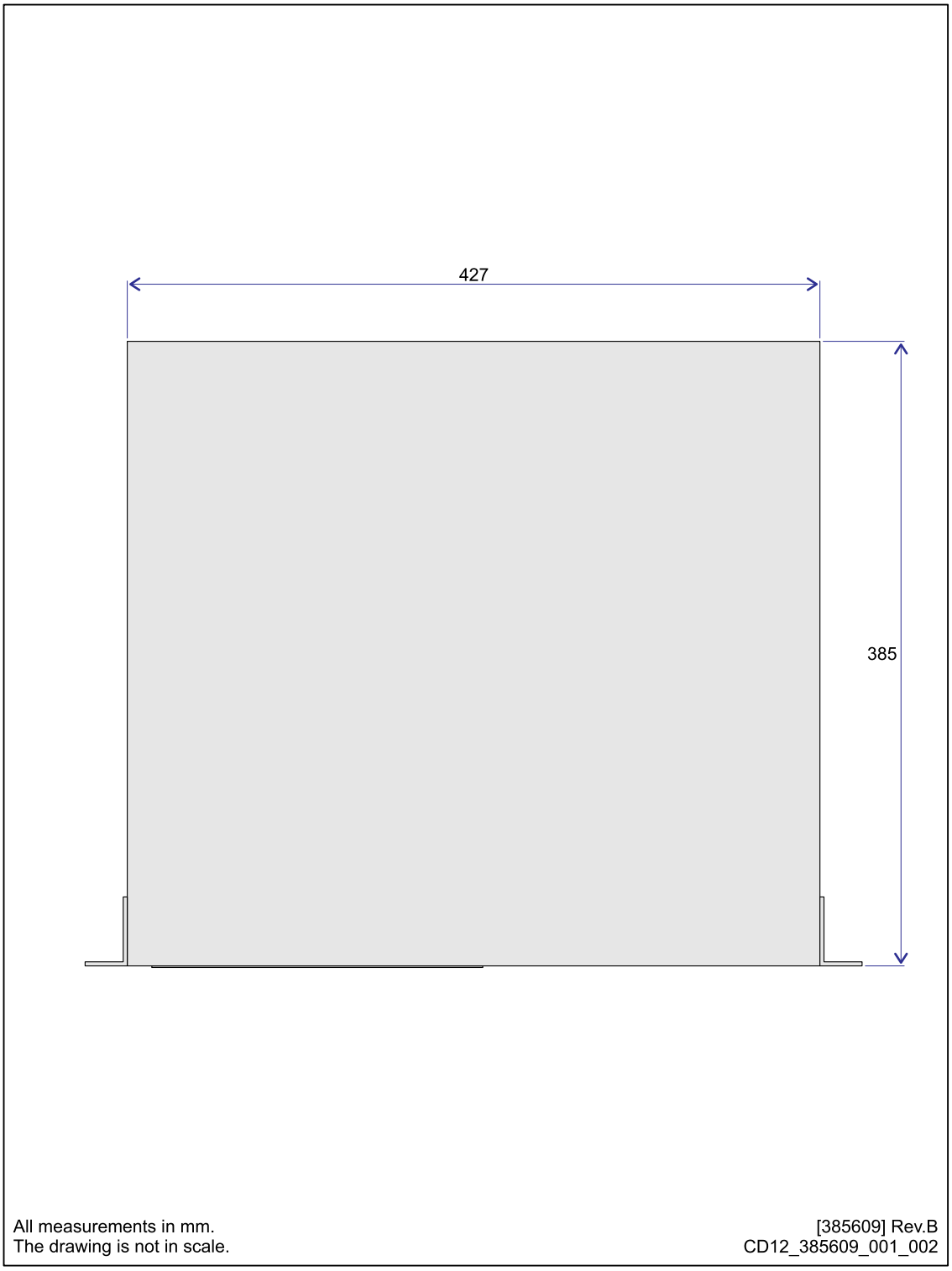
Preparing the Transceiver Unit installation, page 100
Installing the Transceiver Unit, page 103
Connecting the Transceiver Unit to the ventilation system, page 105

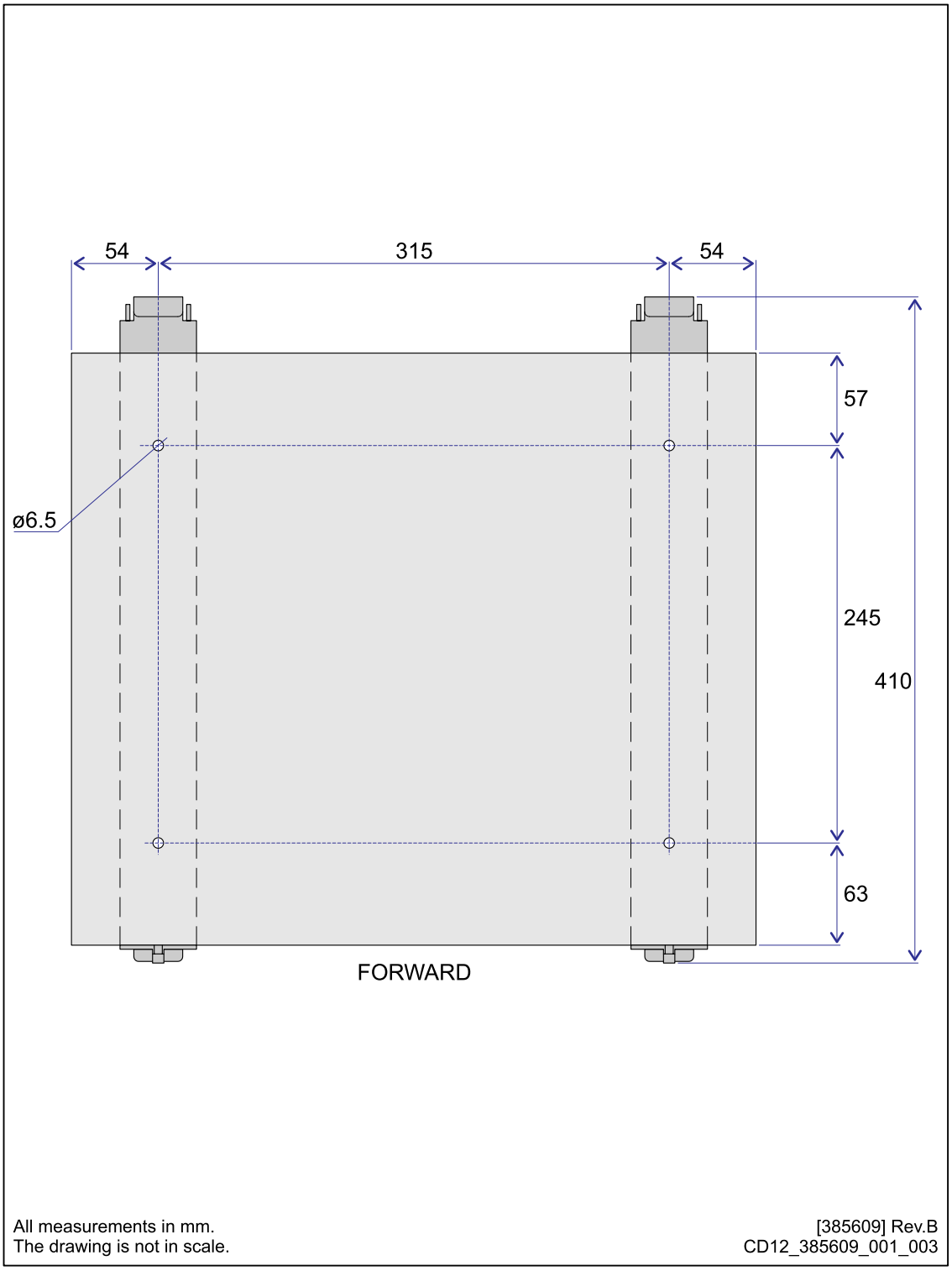
385609 Processor Unit dimensions

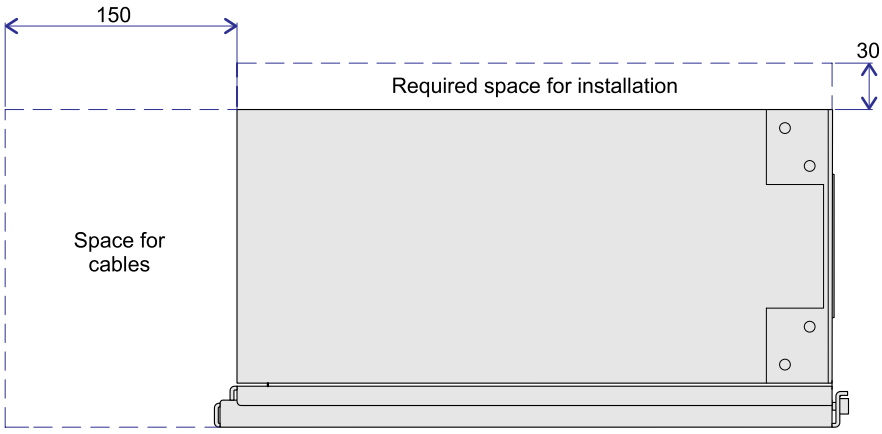


All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.

[385609] Rev.B
CD12_385609_001_001


427
385
All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.
[385609] Rev.B
CD12_385609_001_002


54
315
54
57
ø6.5
245
410
63
FORWARD
All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.
[385609] Rev.B
CD12_385609_001_003



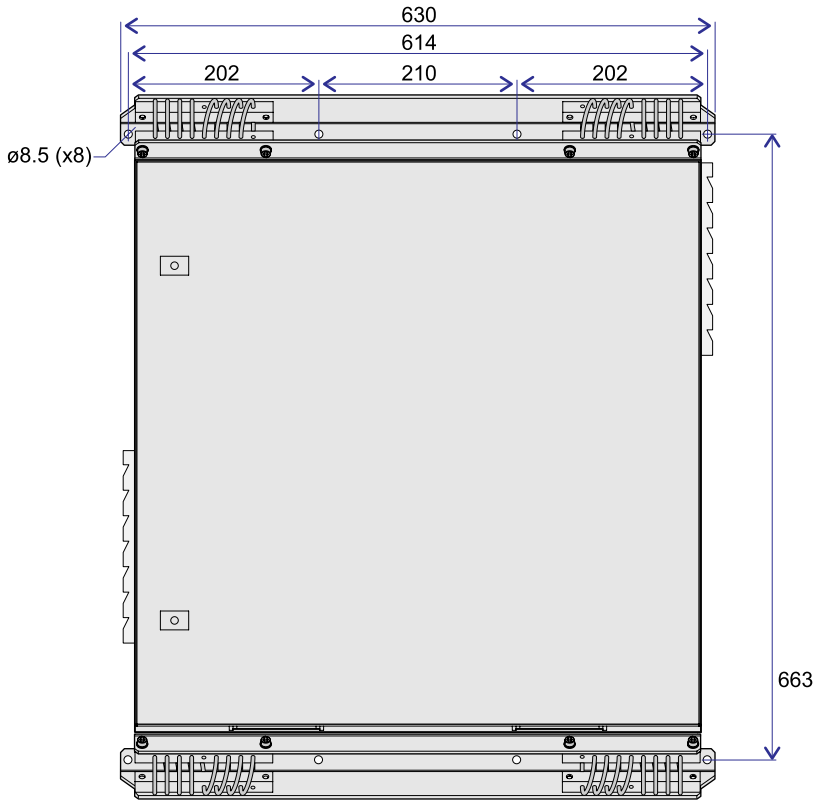
All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.

[385609] Rev.B
CD12_385609_001_004

Related topics

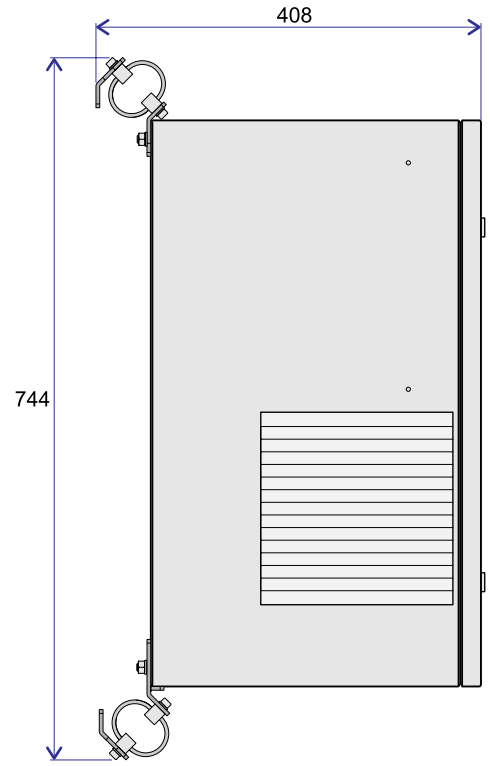
Installing the Enix Processor Unit, page 98

311237 Power Supply Unit dimensions



All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.

[311237] Rev.A
CD12_311237_001



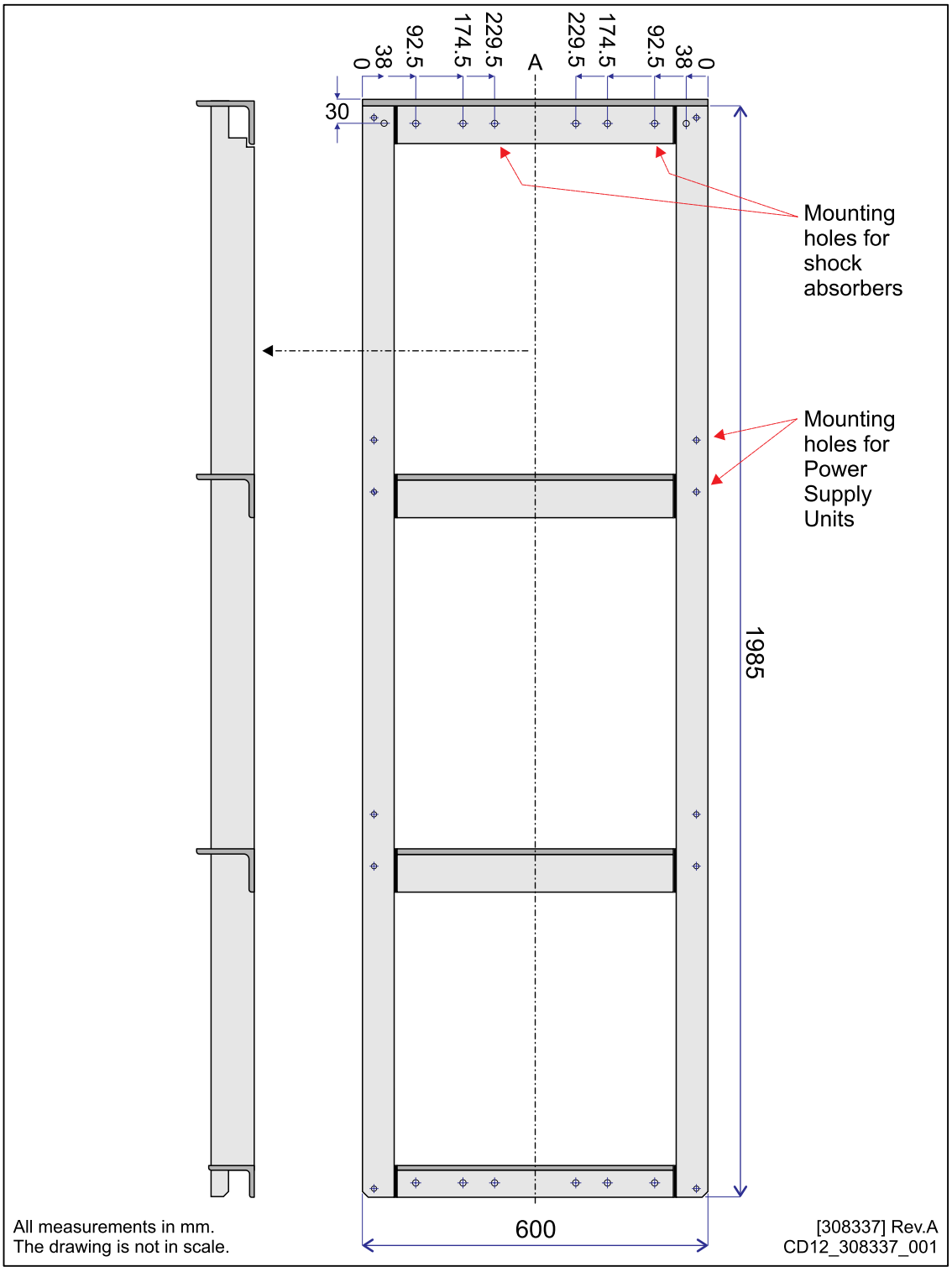
All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.

[311237] Rev.A
CD12_311237_002

Related topics

Preparing the Power Supply Unit installation, page 106
Installing the Power Supply Unit, page 109

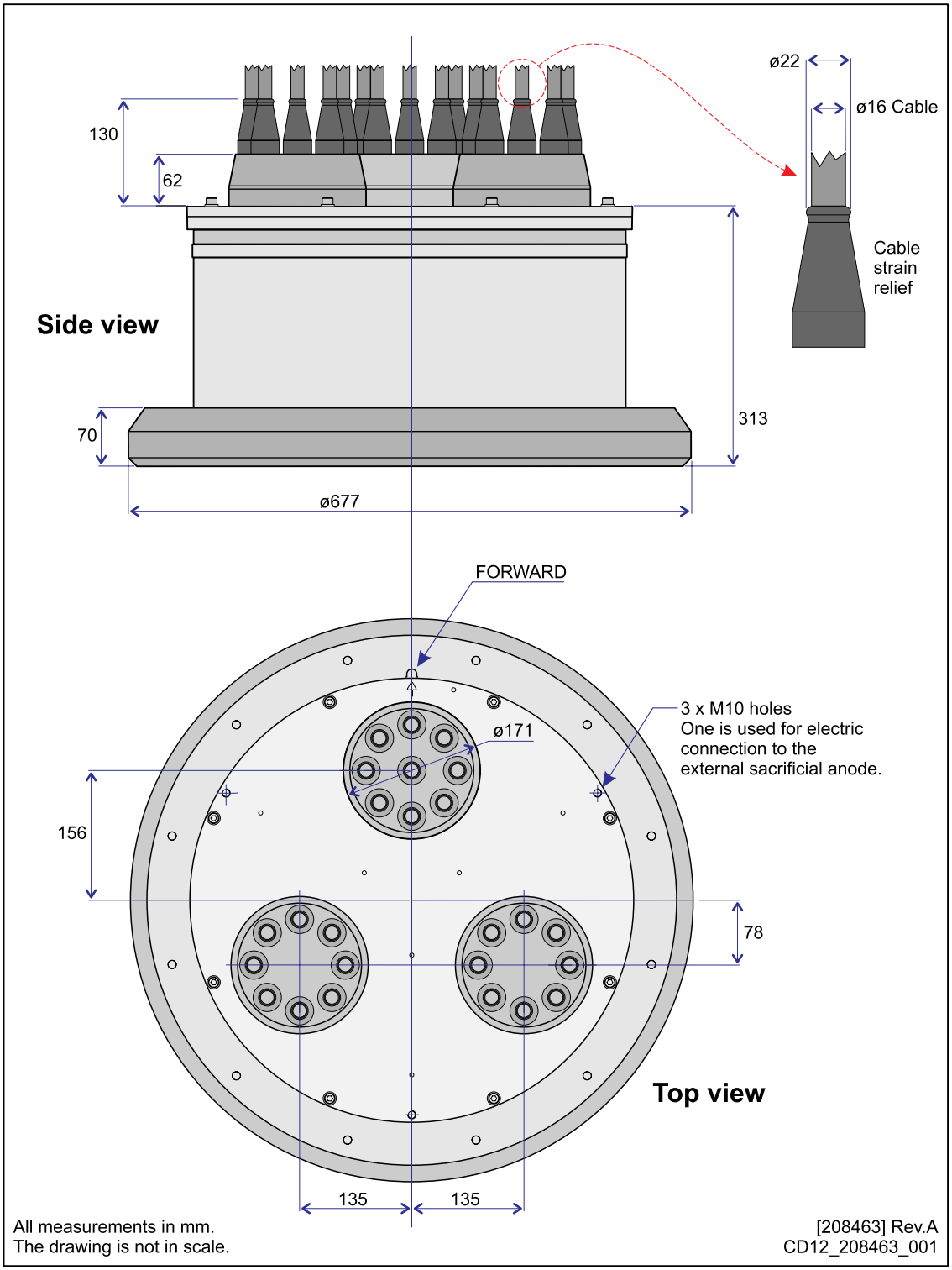
308337 Power Supply Unit mounting bracket

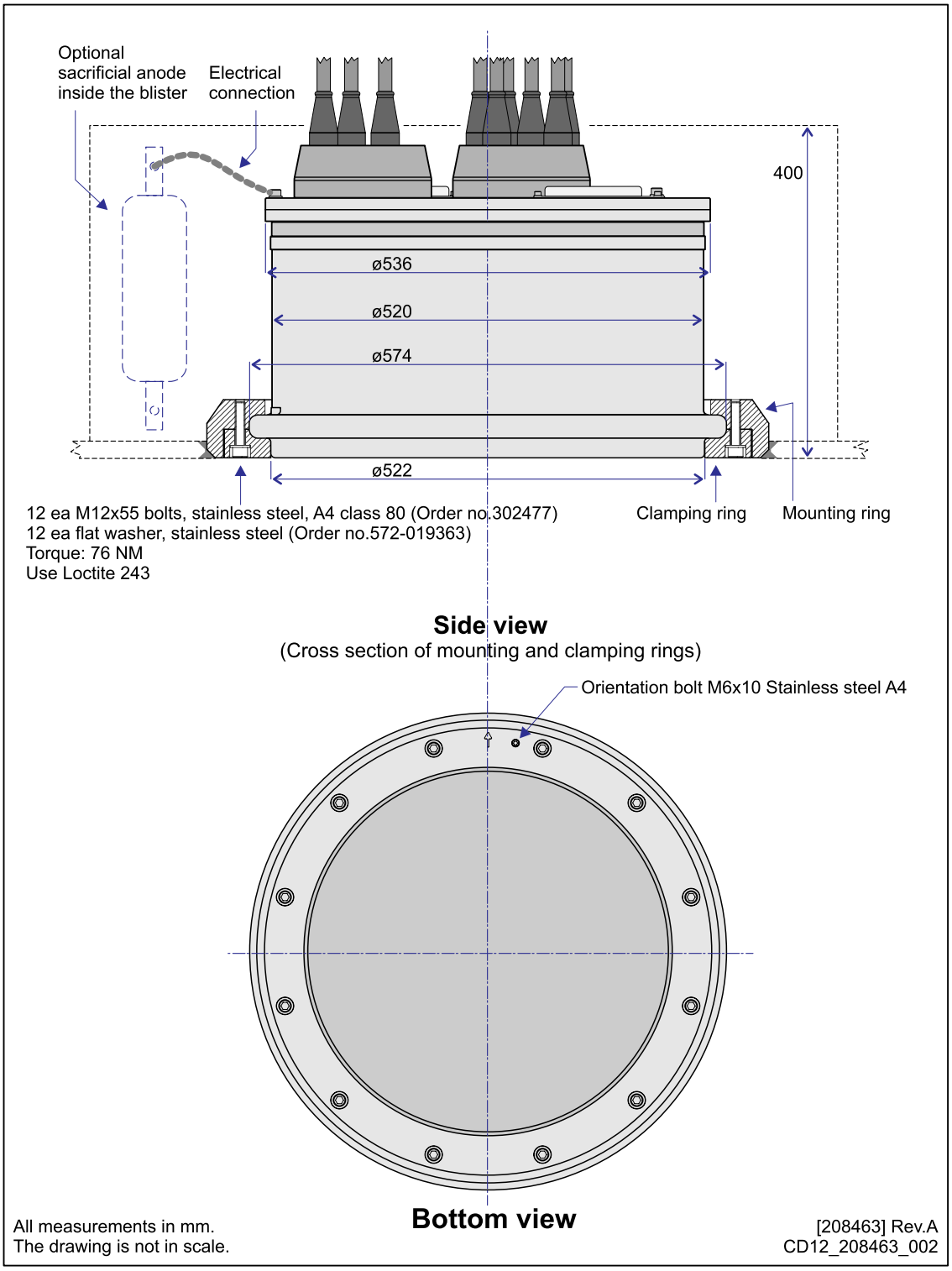


Related topics

Preparing the Power Supply Unit installation, page 106
Installing the Power Supply Unit, page 109

208463 Transducer dimensions

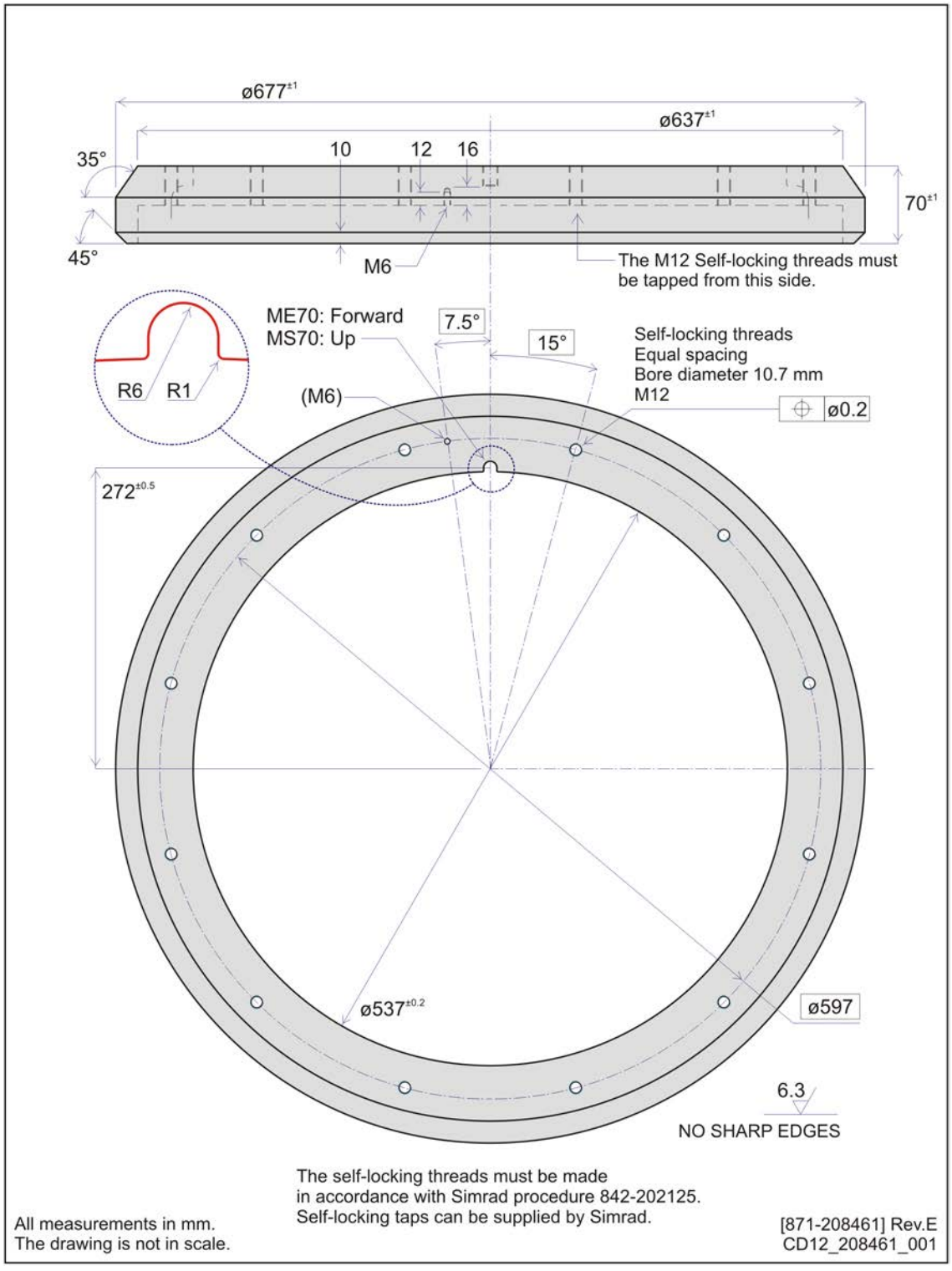


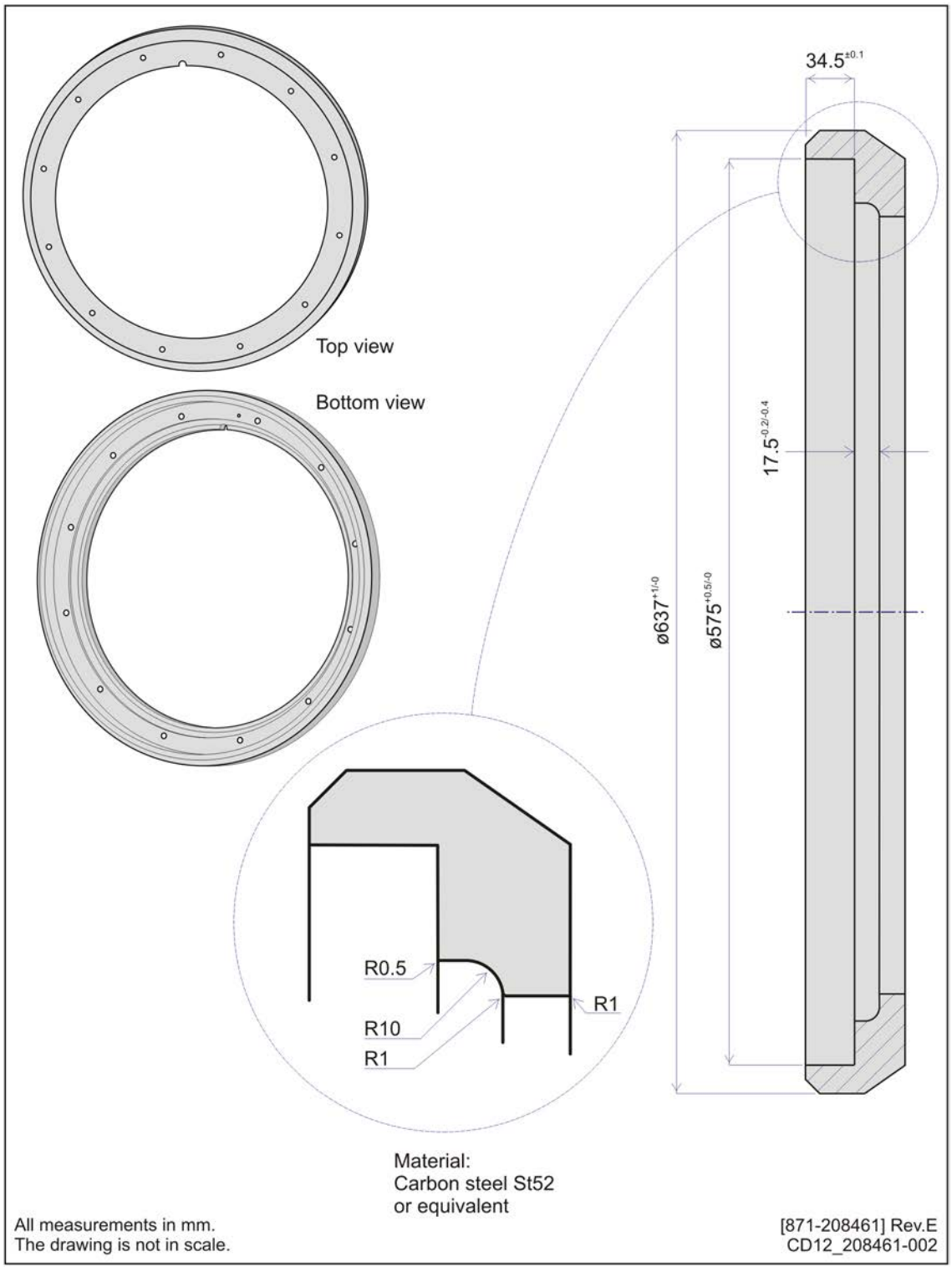


Related topics

Transducer description, page 69

208461 Transducer mounting ring

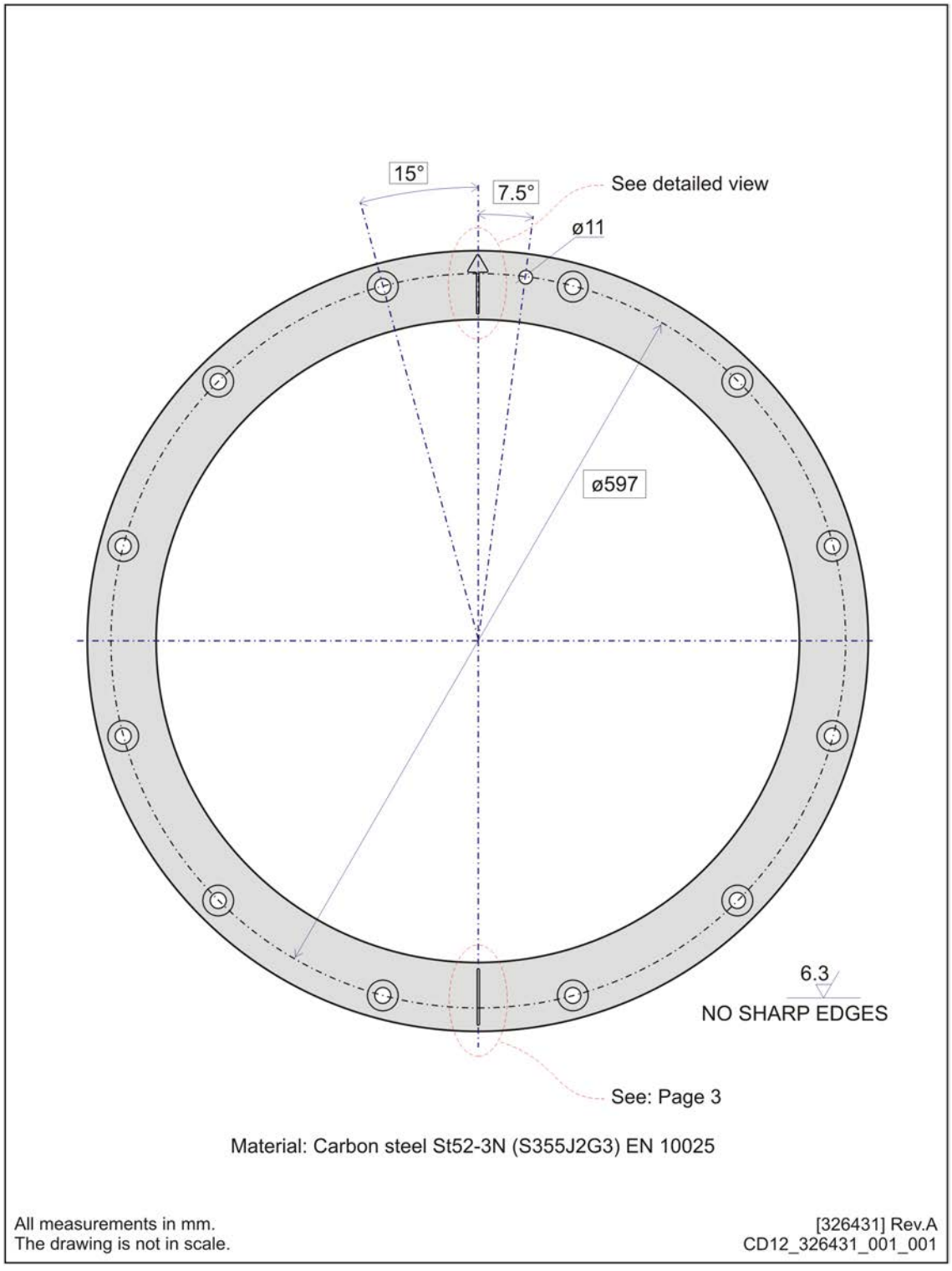


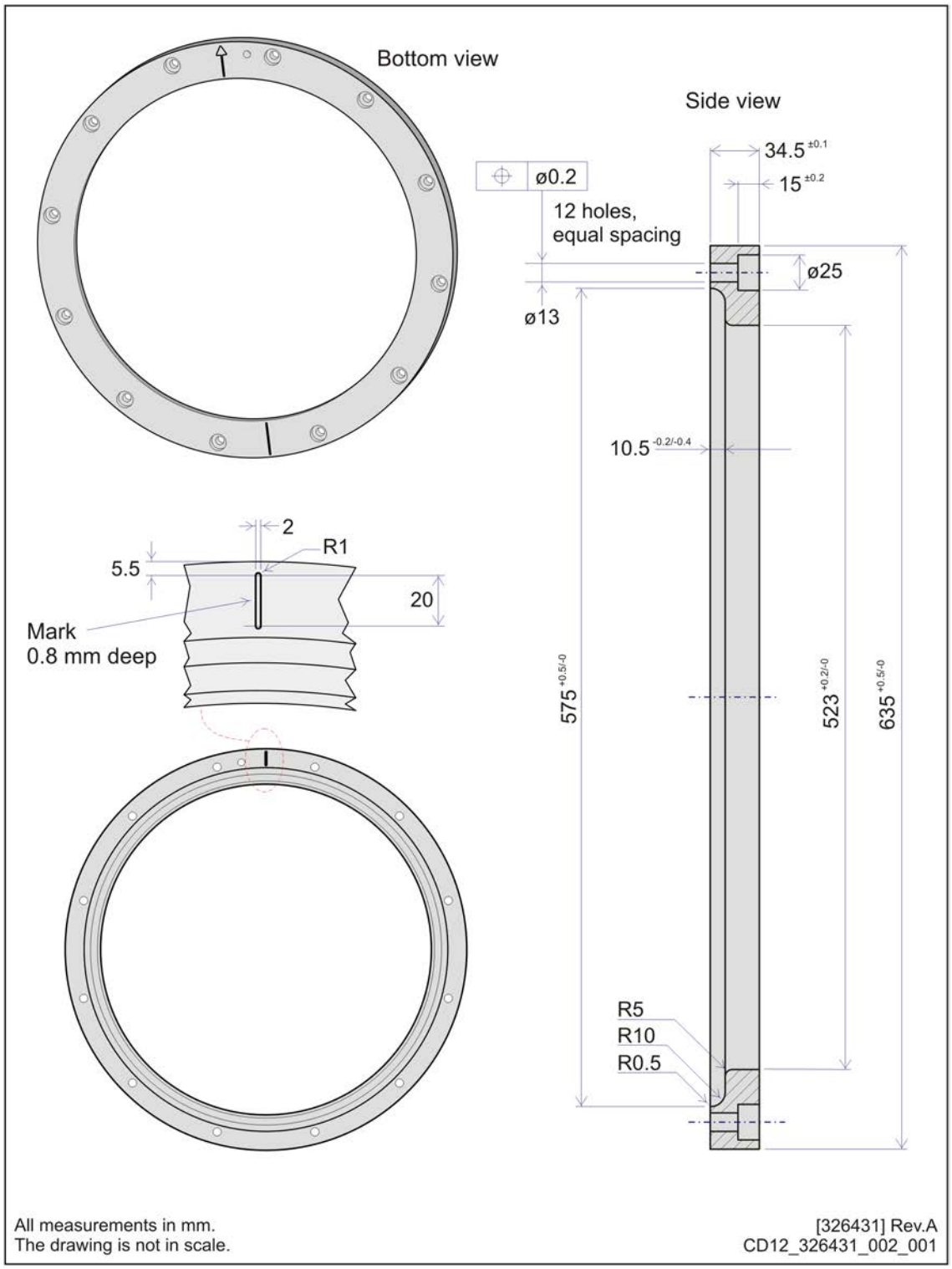


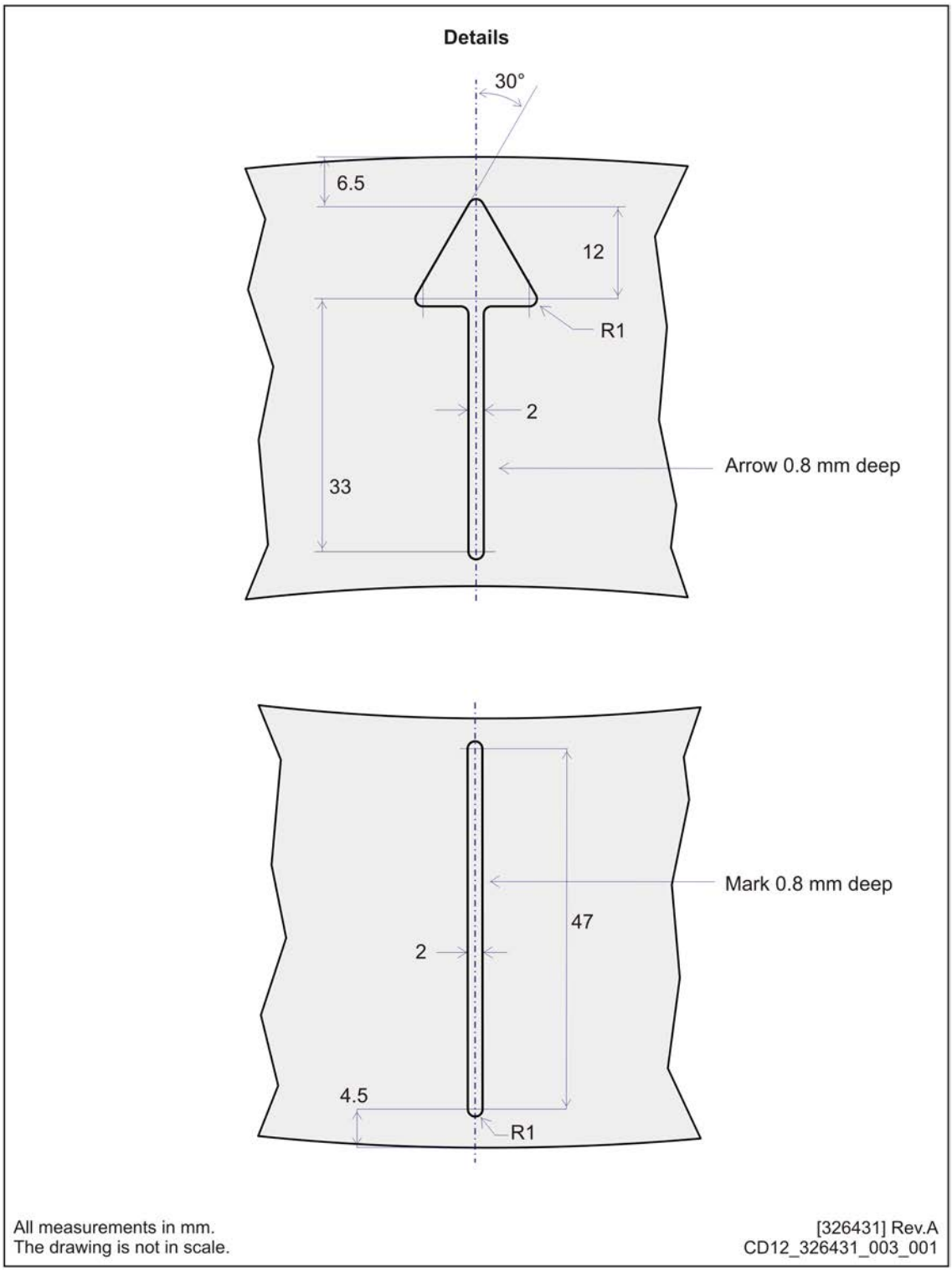
Related topics

Transducer description, page 69

326431 Transducer clamping ring




Bottom view
Side view
ø0.2
12 holes,
equal spacing
34.5 ±0.1
15 ±0.2
ø25
ø13
10.5 -0.2/-0.4
2
R1
5.5
20
Mark
0.8 mm deep
575 +0.5/-0
523 +0.2/-0
635 +0.5/-0
R5
R10
R0.5
All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not in scale.
[326431] Rev.A
CD12_326431_002_001



Related topics

Transducer description, page 69

Index

1000Base-T
Ethernet cable 157

A

about
acoustic noise 60
ambient noise 62
bow thruster noise 58
cable glands 181
cavitation 56–57
clamping ring 27
drop keel 74
electrical noise 62–63
fishing gear noise 63
flow noise 56
inclination angle 76
installation drawings 11, 324
installation instructions 11
mounting ring 26
NMEA datagram formats 226, 287
propellers 57
purpose of this manual 11
registered trademark SIMRAD 12
sacrificial zinc anodes 70
serial lines 165
target audience 11
transducer 24, 69
transducer blister 72
AC mains
connecting to Power Supply Unit 127
tolerances 34
ac mains power
requirements 283
ac mains supply
Transceiver Unit 177
ac power
cable 154
access requirements
sonar room 51
accuracy
dimensional survey 192
accuracy requirements
dimensional survey measurements of compass 192
dimensional survey measurements of course gyro 192
dimensional survey measurements of global positioning system 192
dimensional survey measurements of heading sensor 192
dimensional survey measurements of motion reference unit 192
dimensional survey measurements of transducer 192
acoustic noise
about 60
ambient noise 62
bow thrusters 58
cavitation 56–57
contributing factors 60
electrical noise 62–63
fishing gear noise 63
flow noise 56
general requirements 35
propellers 57
sources 60
additional optional items
not provided with the delivery 30
additional required items
not provided with the delivery 26
air conditioning requirements
sonar room 52
alternative origin
vessel coordinate system 67, 194
ambient noise
acoustic noise 62
approval
general requirements 36
installation drawings 11, 43, 324
audience
this manual 11

B

B-Scan
testing the receiver and transmitter channels 257
testing the receiver channels 253
testing the transmitter channels 255
backup image
creating 265
restoring 267
basic cable requirements 178
basic items
provided with the delivery 25
bilge pump requirement
sonar room 53
BITE (Built-In Test Equipment)
testing the receiver and transmitter channels with the BITE B-Scan page 257
testing the receiver channels with the BITE Matrix page 253
testing the transmitter channels with the BITE Matrix page 255
blister
design, manufacturing and mounting 80
transducer 72
block
diagram 18
book
purpose 11
target audience 11
bootable
creating bootable USB flash drive 266
bow thrusters
acoustic noise 58
transducer installation 58
bridge
cable plan 117

brief description
transducer 24, 69
BSC
datagram format 322
Built In Test Equipment
testing the receiver and transmitter channels with the BITE B-Scan page 257
testing the receiver channels with the BITE Matrix page 253
testing the transmitter channels with the BITE Matrix page 255
bulkhead
cable glands 181
buoy data
Ryokosei RBY datagram format 321
Serpe BSC datagram format 322

C

cable colours
transducer plug 135
cable connections
power cables from Power Supply Unit to Transceiver Unit 128
requirements 180
TRXU Power connector panel 173
TRXU Terminal block 172
cable drawing
ac power cable 154
dc power cable 128
Ethernet cable RJ45 157
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter 148
RS-232 serial line 158–159, 162
RS-422 serial line 160
RS-485 serial line 147
serial line used for synchronization 161
vessel ground 156
cable gland
preparing cable for termination 182
cable glands
about 181
procedures 181
cable grounding
requirements 180
cable identification
requirements 181
cable installation
prerequisites 122
cable pairs
transducer plug 135
cable plan
bridge 117
computer 117
Power Supply Unit 118
Processor Unit 117
sonar room 118
topside 117
Transceiver Unit 118
cable requirements
cable 178
cable connections 180
cable terminations 180
cable trays 178
grounding 180
identification 181
physical protection 179
radio frequency interference 179
cable sealing
multi-diameter 185
cable terminations
requirements 180
cable trays
requirements 178
cables
about cable glands 181
connecting Transceiver Unit Ethernet to Power Supply Unit 132
connection requirements 180
general requirements 34
grounding requirements 180
identification requirements 181
list of system interconnection cables 119
preparing for termination 182
procedures for cable glands 181
protection 179
read this first 114
requirements for cable trays 178
requirements for physical protection 179
requirements for radio frequency interference 179
securing and terminating 184
termination requirements 180
transducer 70, 77, 282
using multi-diameter cable sealing 185
CAT5
Ethernet cable 157
CAT5E
Ethernet cable 157
CAT5E STP
Ethernet cable 157
catch monitoring information
datagram formats 280
catch monitoring system
setting up the interface 234
catch sensor data
PSIMP-D datagram format 308
PSIMP-F datagram format 310
cavitation
acoustic noise 56–57
transducer 57
CIF
datagram format 317
clamping ring
description 27
outline dimensions drawing 341
required item 27
scope of supply 27
classification society
approval 36
approval of installation drawings 11, 43, 324
colour display
required item 27
colours
transducer plug cable colours 135
communication
checking on a serial line 248
checking on an Ethernet line 248
communication formats
catch monitoring information 280
depth information 280

distance information 278
gyro information 277
heading information 277
motion information 278
position information 276
sound speed information 278
speed information 277
trawl information 278
communication parameters
changing for motion reference unit 241
communication requirements
sonar room 53
compass
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements 192
interface requirements 28
required item 28
compass deviation
general requirements 35
responsibility 35
compass safe distance
computer 284
display 284
Processor Unit 284
specifications 284
competence
requirements for installation personnel 44
computer
cable plan 117
compass safe distance 284
environmental requirements 284
graphic adapter 151
installation 98
introduction 21
outline dimensions 281
outline dimensions drawing 329
overview 21
power requirements 283
purpose 21
weight 281
concept
inclination angle 76
conduits
cable requirements 178
connecting
transducer cables 138
connecting DC voltages
to the Transceiver Unit 130
connection
Ethernet cable 157
RS-232 serial cable 158–159, 162
RS-422 serial cable 160
RS-485 serial cable 147
serial cable used for synchronization 161
connections
ac power cable 154
cable requirements 180
dc power cable 128
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter 148
vessel ground cable 156
connector panel
Transceiver Unit 173
connectors
Enix rear panel 142
Ethernet switch 144
HP 2920-48G 144
Processor Unit rear panel 142
contributing factors
acoustic noise 60
coordinate system
alternative origin 67, 194
origin 66, 193
vessel 65, 193
course gyro
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements 192
interface requirements 28
required item 28
CP114EL-I
serial adapter 148
creating
backup image 265
bootable USB flash drive 266
installation drawings 11, 43, 324
mounting procedures 11, 43, 324
CSD (compass safe distance)
specifications 284
CTS
Clear To Send for synchronization 161
CTS (Clear To Send)
synchronization 163
current
Kaijo VDVCD datagram format 320

D

(D)GPS
scope of supply 31
data
recording raw echo data 251
data transfer
checking on a serial line 248
checking on an Ethernet line 248
datagram format
DBS (depth from surface) 290
DBS (depth of the trawl sensor) 303
DBT (depth under transducer) 291
DPT (depth under transducer, offset) 292
FS3300 binary depth 304
Furuno CIF (sea current) 317
GGA (time, position and fix) 293
GLL (time, position and fix) 294
GLL (trawl position) 305
HDG (heading) 294
HDM (heading) 295
HDT (true heading) 296
HFB (trawl heights) 305
Kaijo VDVCD (sea current and depth) 320
MDS (measured data shoal) 306
MTW (trawl temperature) 308
MWD (wind direction and speed) 296
MWV (wind speed and angle) 297
PSIMP-D (catch sensor data) 308
PSIMP-F (catch sensor data) 310
RMC (time, date, position and course) 297
Ryokosei RBY (buoy data) 321
Serpe BSC (buoy data) 322
TDS (trawl door distance) 311
TFI (trawl fill) 312

TPC (trawl position in Cartesian coordinates) 313
TPP (tracked target position) 313
TPT (trawl bearing and water depth) 314
TS2 (second trawl door distance) 315
TTS (trawl to shoal distance) 315
VBW (vessel speed) 298
VHW (vessel heading and speed) 299
VTG (time, date, position and course) 300
VWR (relative wind speed and angle) 301
ZDA (day, month, year and local time zone) 302
datagram formats
about NMEA 226, 287
catch monitoring information 280
depth information 280
distance information 278
gyro information 277
heading information 277
motion information 278
position information 276
sound speed information 278
speed information 277
trawl information 278
DBS
datagram format 290, 303
DBT
datagram format 291
dc power
cable 128
DC voltage output
adjusting 216
measuring 210, 212
DC voltages
connecting to the Transceiver Unit 130
decking
sonar room requirement 53
defining
the installation parameters for the GPS antenna 219
the installation parameters for the motion reference unit 221
the installation parameters for the transducer 223
depth
FS3300 binary depth datagram format 304
Kaijo VDVCD datagram format 320
Ryokosei RBY datagram format 321
transducer installation 56
depth information
datagram formats 280
depth of trawl sensor
DBS datagram format 303
description
ambient noise 62
bow thruster noise 58
cavitation 56–57
clamping ring 27
display 20
drop keel 74
electrical noise 62–63
Enix rear panel 142
fishing gear noise 63
flow noise 56
inclination angle 76
mounting ring 26
origin in the vessel coordinate system 66, 193
Processor Unit rear panel 142
propellers 57
system 15
transducer 24, 69
transducer blister 72
vessel coordinate system 65, 193
design
blister 72
drop keel 74
determine
transducer location 55
dimensional survey
accuracy 192
accuracy requirements for compass 192
accuracy requirements for course gyro 192
accuracy requirements for global positioning system 192
accuracy requirements for heading sensor 192
accuracy requirements for motion reference unit 192
accuracy requirements for transducer 192
summary procedure 190
dimensions
about 324
computer 281
computer outline dimensions drawing 329
display 281
download 43
Power Supply Unit 282
Power Supply Unit outline dimensions drawing 333, 335
Processor Unit 281
Processor Unit outline dimensions drawing 329
specifications 281
transceiver 281
Transceiver Unit 281
Transceiver Unit outline dimensions drawing 325
transducer 70, 282
dimensions drawing
transducer 337
transducer clamping ring 341
transducer mounting ring 339
display
compass safe distance 284
description 20
environmental requirements 283
installation 97
introduction 20
minimum requirements 285
outline dimensions 281
overview 20
power requirements 283
purpose 20
required item 27
scope of supply 27
weight 281
display adapter
computer graphic adapter 151
Processor Unit graphic adapter 151
display unit
required item 27
distance from trawl to shoal
TTS datagram format 315

distance information
datagram formats 278
docking
important reminder 14
requirements 36
door spread
TDS datagram format 311
TS2 datagram format 315
download
installation drawings 43
DPT
datagram format 292
drawing
ac power cable 154
computer outline dimensions 329
dc power cable 128
Ethernet cable RJ45 157
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter 148
Power Supply Unit outline dimensions drawing 333, 335
Processor Unit outline dimensions 329
RS-232 serial line cable 158–159, 162
RS-422 serial line cable 160
RS-485 serial line cable 147
serial line cable used for synchronization 161
system diagram 18
Transceiver Unit outline dimensions 325
transducer clamping ring outline dimensions 341
transducer mounting ring outline dimensions 339
transducer outline dimensions 337
vessel ground 156
drawings
about 324
approval 11, 43, 324
creating 11, 43, 324
download 43
installation 11
responsibility 11, 43, 324
drop keel
design 74
transducer 74
dry docking
requirements 36

E

echogram
recording raw data 251
electrical installation requirements
sonar room 53
electrical noise
acoustic noise 62–63
element data
saving 259
Enix
installation 98
rear panel description 142
Environment dialog box
setting up the interface to a sound speed sensor 237
environmental
requirements 283
environmental requirements
computer 284
display 283
Power Supply Unit 284
Processor Unit 284
sonar room 49
transceiver 284
Transceiver Unit 284
Ethernet
connecting Transceiver Unit to Power Supply Unit 132
IP addresses 121
setting up the Ethernet data output 247
Ethernet cable
specifications 157
Ethernet line
checking the data transfer 248
Ethernet Output dialog box
setting up the Ethernet data output 247
Ethernet switch
connectors 144

F

failures
support if something breaks down 14
features
key 17
fishing gear noise
acoustic noise 63
flooring
sonar room requirement 53
flow noise
acoustic noise 56
protruding objects 57
footrope height
HFB datagram format 305
FS3300 binary depth
datagram format 304
functional
diagram 18
Furuno CIF
datagram format 317

G

general requirements
approval by classification society 36
cables and wiring 34
compass deviation 35
dry docking 36
noise sources 35
supply power 34
uninterruptible power supply 34
general safety rules 33
GGA
datagram format 293
GLL
datagram format 294, 305
global positioning system
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements 192
define installation parameters for antenna 219
scope of supply 31
global positioning system (GPS)

setting up the interface 228
GPS
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements 192
define installation parameters for antenna 219
scope of supply 31
setting up the interface 228
GPS information
datagram formats 276
graphic adapter
computer 151
Processor Unit 151
ground
cable 156
connecting to Power Supply Unit 127
grounding
cable requirements 180
grounding requirements
sonar room 53
gyro information
datagram formats 277

H

handling
transducers 15, 71
HDG
datagram format 294
HDM
datagram format 295
HDT
datagram format 296
heading information
datagram formats 277
heading sensor
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements 192
interface requirements 28
required item 28
headrope height
HFB datagram format 305
heating requirements
sonar room 52
HFB
datagram format 305
high voltage
safety rules 33
how to
adjust the DC output voltages from the Power Supply Unit 216
change the communication parameters for the motion reference unit 241
change the internal delay for the motion reference unit data 243
check the data transfer on a serial line 248
check the data transfer on an Ethernet line 248
connect DC voltages to the Transceiver Unit 130
connect ME70 to the K-Sync 139
connect Power Supply Unit Ethernet to Transceiver Unit 132
connect the Power Supply Unit to AC mains 127
connect the Power Supply Unit to vessel ground 127
connect the transducer cables 138
connect Transceiver Unit Ethernet to Power Supply Unit 132
create a backup image on a USB flash drive 265
create a bootable USB flash drive 266
define the installation parameters for the GPS antenna 219
define the installation parameters for the motion reference unit 221
define the installation parameters for the transducer 223
design, manufacture and mount the installation blister 80
do a dimensional survey 190
install the computer 98
install the display 97
install the Enix 98
install the mounting ring 84
install the Power Supply Unit 109
install the Processor Unit 98
install the Transceiver Unit 103
install the transducer cables 88
install the transducer into the mounting ring 90
install the uninterruptible power supply 111
lift the transducer up to its mounting location 86
measure noise in passive mode 261
measure the DC output voltages from the Power Supply Unit 210, 212
measure time between pings 262
mount the transducer 90
power up 208
prepare a cable for termination 182
prepare the Power Supply Unit installation 106
prepare the Transceiver Unit installation 100
prepare the transducer installation 78
record element data 259
record raw echo data 251
restore from a backup image on a USB flash drive 267
secure and terminate a cable 184
set to work 196
set up synchronization 244
set up the catch monitoring system interface 234
set up the Ethernet data output 247
set up the GPS interface 228
set up the interface to a sound speed sensor 237
set up the motion reference unit (MRU) interface 240
set up the navigation sensor interface 228
set up the trawl system interface 231
test the receiver and transmitter channels with the BITE B-Scan page 257
test the receiver channels with the BITE Matrix page 253
test the transmitter channels with the BITE Matrix page 255
unpack the transducer 82
use multi-diameter cable sealing 185
verify the installation parameters for the transducer 94
HP 2920-48G
connectors 144
hull surface
protruding objects 57
humidity

requirements 283

I

identification
cable requirements 181
IEC
line socket 154
image
creating backup image 265
creating bootable USB flash drive 266
restoring from a backup image 267
important
before you power up 14
if something breaks down 14
power off 14
reminders 14
switch off 14
transducer handling 15, 71
when not in use 14
when you are docking your vessel 14
inclination angle
concept 76
information
high voltage 33
support 38
Information
NMEA 0183 ..... 226, 287
installation
clamping ring 27
computer 98
display 97
drawings 11
Enix 98
instructions 11
mounting ring 26
overview 41
Power Supply Unit 109
preparing Power Supply Unit installation 106
preparing Transceiver Unit installation 100
Processor Unit 98
requirements for installation personnel 44
summary 41
tasks 41
Transceiver Unit 103
transducer depth 56
transducer into the mounting ring 90
uninterruptible power supply 111
installation approval
general requirements 36
installation blister
design, manufacturing and mounting 80
installation drawings
about 324
approval 11, 43, 324
creating 11, 43, 324
download 43
installation of cables
prerequisites 122
installation principles 45
transducer 69, 72
installing
mounting ring 84
transducer cables 88
instructions
installation 11
insulation requirements
sonar room 52
intercom requirements
sonar room 53
interconnection cables
list 119
interface
motion reference unit (MRU) setup 240
setting up GPS interface 228
setting up navigation sensor interface 228
setting up the catch monitoring system interface 234
setting up the motion reference unit (MRU) interface 240
setting up the trawl system interface 231
specifications 276
interface requirements
compass 28
course gyro 28
heading sensor 28
motion reference unit (MRU) 29
speed log 28
interfaces
Enix rear panel 142
Processor Unit rear panel 142
interference
cable requirements 179
electrical noise 62–63
internal delay
changing for motion reference unit 243
introduction
computer 21
display 20
Power Supply Unit 23
Processor Unit 21
Transceiver Unit 22
IP addresses
system units 121

K

K-Sync
connecting to the ME70 139
synchronization using RS-232 serial line 163
Kaijo VDVCD
datagram format 320
key features
system 17
Kongsberg Maritime
support 38

L

LCD display
required item 27
LCD monitor
environmental requirements 283
installation 97
minimum requirements 285
outline dimensions 281
power requirements 283
weight 281
length

transducer cables 70, 77, 282
lifting
transducer up to its mounting location 86
light requirements
sonar room 53
line socket
IEC 154
list
system interconnection cables 119
location
transducer installation 55
logo
registered trademark 12

M

main items
provided with the delivery 25
main units
IP addresses 121
mains power
cable 154
requirements 283
tolerances 34
mains power supply
Transceiver Unit 177
manual
purpose 11
target audience 11
maritime authority
approval of installation drawings 11, 43, 324
master
setting up synchronization 244
MDS
datagram format 306
ME70
connecting to the K-Sync 139
measured data shoal
MDS datagram format 306
measuring
noise in passive mode 261
time between pings 262
mechanical drawings
about 324
download 43
minimum requirements
display 285
uninterruptible power supply 28, 111
monitor
environmental requirements 283
installation 97
minimum requirements 285
outline dimensions 281
power requirements 283
weight 281
Motion Compensation dialog box
interfacing a motion sensor 240
motion information
datagram formats 278
motion reference unit
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements 192
changing the communication parameters 241
changing the internal delay 243
datagram formats 278
define installation parameters 221
motion reference unit (MRU)
interface requirements 29
required item 29
scope of supply 29
setting up the interface 240
Motion Sensor dialog box
interfacing a motion sensor 240
mounting
mounting 90
transducer installation depth 56
mounting procedures
creating 11, 43, 324
responsibility 11, 43, 324
mounting ring
description 26
installation 84
installing the transducer 90
outline dimensions drawing 339
required item 26
scope of supply 26
Moxa
serial adapter 148
MRU
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements 192
changing the communication parameters 241
changing the internal delay 243
datagram formats 278
define installation parameters 221
interface requirements 29
scope of supply 29
setting up the interface 240
MTW
datagram format 308
multi-diameter cable sealing
using 185
MWD
datagram format 296
MWV
datagram format 297

N

National Marine Electronics Association 226, 287
navigation sensor
setting up the interface 228
network security 37
NMEA
about formats 226, 287
RS-232 serial line cable 158–159, 162
RS-422 serial line cable 160
RS-485 serial cable 147
NMEA 0183
information 226, 287
sentence structure 227, 288
NMEA datagram
DBS (depth from surface) 290
DBT (depth under transducer) 291
DPT (depth under transducer, offset) 292
GGA (time, position and fix) 293
GLL (time, position and fix) 294
HDG (heading) 294
HDM (heading) 295

HDT (true heading) ... 296
MWD (wind direction and speed) ... 296
MWV (wind speed and angle) ... 297
RMC (time, date, position and course) ... 297
VBW (vessel speed) ... 298
VHW (vessel heading and speed) ... 299
VTG (time, date, position and course) ... 300
VWR (relative wind speed and angle) ... 301
ZDA (day, month, year and local time zone) ... 302
NMEA datagrams
depth information ... 280
distance information ... 278
GPS information ... 276
gyro information ... 277
heading information ... 277
motion information ... 278
position information ... 276
sound speed information ... 278
speed information ... 277
NMEA DBS
datagram format ... 290
NMEA DBT
datagram format ... 291
NMEA DPT
datagram format ... 292
NMEA GGA
datagram format ... 293
NMEA GLL
datagram format ... 294
NMEA HDG
datagram format ... 294
NMEA HDM
datagram format ... 295
NMEA HDT
datagram format ... 296
NMEA MWD
datagram format ... 296
NMEA MWV
datagram format ... 297
NMEA RMC
datagram format ... 297
NMEA VBW
datagram format ... 298
NMEA VHW
datagram format ... 299
NMEA VTG
datagram format ... 300
NMEA VWR
datagram format ... 301
NMEA ZDA
datagram format ... 302
noise
about acoustic noise ... 60
ambient noise ... 62
bow thruster noise ... 58
cavitation ... 56–57
contributing factors ... 60
electrical noise ... 62–63
fishing gear noise ... 63
flow noise ... 56
measuring ... 261
propeller noise ... 57
noise sources ... 60
general requirements ... 35
note
before you power up ... 14
important reminders ... 14
support if something breaks down ... 14
when the system not in use ... 14
when you are docking your vessel ... 14
when you wish to switch off ... 14

O

Object Inspector dialog box
changing the communication parameters for the motion reference unit ... 241
changing the internal delay for the motion reference unit data ... 243
recording element data ... 259
offices
support ... 38
on
power ... 208
on/off switch
Enix rear panel ... 142
operating voltage
computer ... 283
display ... 283
Processor Unit ... 283
optional items
not provided with the delivery ... 30
origin
vessel coordinate system ... 66, 193
outline dimensions
about ... 324
computer ... 281
display ... 281
download ... 43
Power Supply Unit ... 282
Processor Unit ... 281
specifications ... 281
transceiver ... 281
Transceiver Unit ... 281
transducer ... 70, 282
outline dimensions drawing
computer ... 329
Power Supply Unit ... 333, 335
Processor Unit ... 329
Transceiver Unit ... 325
transducer ... 337
transducer clamping ring ... 341
transducer mounting ring ... 339
output
setting up the Ethernet data output ... 247
output voltage
adjusting the DC output voltages from the Power Supply Unit ... 216
measuring the DC output voltages from the Power Supply Unit ... 210, 212
overview
computer ... 21
display ... 20
installation tasks ... 41
Power Supply Unit ... 23
Processor Unit ... 21
Transceiver Unit ... 22

P

passive mode
measuring noise 261
PC
installation 98
performance requirements
uninterruptible power supply 28, 111
peripheral systems
interface specifications 276
personnel skills
requirements for installation 44
physical protection
cable requirements 179
pin configuration
transducer plug 135
pin numbers
transducer plug 135
planning
transducer installation 78
plug
pin configuration transducer plug 135
plugs
Ethernet switch 144
HP 2920-48G 144
Port Monitor dialog box
checking the data transfer on a serial line 248
checking the data transfer on an Ethernet line 248
position information
datagram formats 276
power
on 208
requirements 283
power cables
from Power Supply Unit to Transceiver Unit 128
Power connector panel
Transceiver Unit 173
power mains
tolerances 34
power off
important reminder 14
power requirements
computer 283
display 283
Power Supply Unit 283
Processor Unit 283
sonar room 53
transceiver 283
Transceiver Unit 283
Power Supply Unit
adjusting the DC output voltages 216
cable plan 118
connecting AC mains 127
connecting Ethernet to Transceiver Unit 132
connecting to vessel ground 127
environmental requirements 284
installation 109
introduction 23
measuring the DC output voltages 210, 212
outline dimensions 282
outline dimensions drawing 333, 335
overview 23
power cables to Transceiver Unit 128
power requirements 283
preparing installation 106
purpose 23
weight 282
power terminal block
Transceiver Unit 172
power up
important reminder 14
preparations
transducer installation 78
preparing
Power Supply Unit installation 106
Transceiver Unit installation 100
prerequisites
cable installation 122
prf
measuring 262
principles
installation 45
transducer installation 69, 72
problem
support if something breaks down 14
procedure
adjusting the DC output voltages from the Power Supply Unit 216
changing the communication parameters for the motion reference unit 241
changing the internal delay for the motion reference unit data 243
checking the data transfer on a serial line 248
checking the data transfer on an Ethernet line 248
connecting DC voltages to the Transceiver Unit 130
connecting ME70 to the K-Sync 139
connecting Power Supply Unit Ethernet to Transceiver Unit 132
connecting the Power Supply Unit to AC mains 127
connecting the Power Supply Unit to vessel ground 127
connecting the transducer cables 138
connecting Transceiver Unit Ethernet to Power Supply Unit 132
creating a backup image on a USB flash drive 265
creating a bootable USB flash drive 266
defining the installation parameters for the GPS antenna 219
defining the installation parameters for the motion reference unit 221
defining the installation parameters for the transducer 223
designing, manufacturing and mounting the installation blister 80
doing a dimensional survey 190
installing the computer 98
installing the display 97
installing the Enix 98
installing the mounting ring 84
installing the Power Supply Unit 109
installing the Processor Unit 98
installing the Transceiver Unit 103
installing the transducer cables 88

installing the transducer into the mounting ring 90
installing the uninterruptible power supply 111
lifting the transducer up to its mounting location 86
measuring noise in passive mode 261
measuring the DC output voltages from the Power Supply Unit 210, 212
measuring time between pings 262
mounting the transducer 90
powering up 208
preparing a cable for termination 182
preparing the Power Supply Unit installation 106
preparing the Transceiver Unit installation 100
preparing the transducer installation 78
recording element data 259
recording raw echo data 251
restoring from a backup image on a USB flash drive 267
securing and terminating a cable 184
setting to work 196
setting up synchronization 244
setting up the catch monitoring system interface 234
setting up the Ethernet data output 247
setting up the GPS interface 228
setting up the interface to a sound speed sensor 237
setting up the motion reference unit (MRU) interface 240
setting up the navigation sensor interface 228
setting up the trawl system interface 231
testing the receiver and transmitter channels with the BITE B-Scan page 257
testing the receiver channels with the BITE Matrix page 253
testing the transmitter channels with the BITE Matrix page 255
unpacking the transducer 82
using multi-diameter cable sealing 185
verifying the installation parameters for the transducer 94
procedures
creating mounting procedures 11, 43, 324
Processor Unit
cable plan 117
compass safe distance 284
environmental requirements 284
graphic adapter 151
installation 98
introduction 21
outline dimensions 281
outline dimensions drawing 329
overview 21
power requirements 283
purpose 21
rear panel description 142
weight 281
propellers
acoustic noise 57
transducer installation 57
proprietary datagram
DBS (depth of the trawl sensor) 303
FS3300 binary depth 304
Furuno CIF (sea current) 317
GLL (trawl position) 305
HFB (trawl heights) 305
Kaijo VDVCD (sea current and depth) 320
MDS (measured data shoal) 306
MTW (trawl temperature) 308
PSIMP-D (catch sensor data) 308
PSIMP-F (catch sensor data) 310
Ryokosei RBY (buoy data) 321
Serpe BSC (buoy data) 322
TDS (trawl door distance) 311
TFI (trawl fill) 312
TPC (trawl position in Cartesian coordinates) 313
TPP (tracked target position) 313
TPT (trawl bearing and water depth) 314
TS2 (second trawl door distance) 315
TTS (trawl to shoal distance) 315
proprietary datagrams
catch monitoring information 280
trawl information 278
protection
cable requirements 179
protruding objects
avoid 57
transducer 57
PSIMP-D
datagram format 308
PSIMP-F
datagram format 310
publication
purpose 11
target audience 11
pump
sonar room requirement 53
pump requirement
sonar room 53
purpose
computer 21
display 20
Power Supply Unit 23
Processor Unit 21
this manual 11
Transceiver Unit 22
purse seine
fishing gear noise 63

R

radio frequency interference
cable requirements 179
raw data
recording 251
RBY
datagram format 321
reader
this manual 11
rear panel description
Enix 142
Processor Unit 142
recommended item
global positioning system 31
recording
element data 259
raw echo data 251

reminder
before you power up....14
important....14
support if something breaks down....14
when the system not in use....14
when you are docking your vessel....14
when you wish to switch off....14
required item
clamping ring....27
compass....28
course gyro....28
display....27
heading sensor....28
motion reference unit (MRU)....29
mounting ring....26
sound speed sensor....30
speed log....28
uninterruptible power supply....28
required items
not provided with the delivery....26
requirement
skills of installation personnel....44
requirements
ac mains power....283
approval by classification society....36
cable connections....180
cable grounding....180
cable identification....181
cable terminations....180
cable trays....178
cables and wiring....34, 178
cheading sensor....28
compass....28
compass deviation....35
course gyro....28
dimensional survey measurements of compass....192
dimensional survey measurements of course gyro....192
dimensional survey measurements of global positioning system....192
dimensional survey measurements of heading sensor....192
dimensional survey measurements of motion reference unit....192
dimensional survey measurements of transducer....192
display....285
dry docking....36
environmental....283
humidity....283
mains power....283
motion reference unit (MRU) interface....29
noise sources....35
physical protection of cables....179
power....283
radio frequency interference....179
sonar room....49
speed log interface....28
supply power....34, 283
temperature....283
uninterruptible power supply....28, 34, 111
responsibility
compass deviation....35
installation drawings....11, 43, 324
mounting procedures....11, 43, 324
restoring
backup image....267
RF interference
cable requirements....179
RJ45
Ethernet cable....157
RMC
datagram format....297
Roxtec
multi-diameter cable sealing....185
RS-232
about....165
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter....148
serial line cable....158–159, 162
serial line cable used for synchronization....161
synchronization....163
RS-422
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter....148
serial line cable....160
RS-422e
about....165
RS-485
about....165
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter....148
serial line cable....147
RTS
Request To Send for synchronization....161
RTS (Request To Send)
synchronization....163
rules
safety....33
transducer handling....15, 71
Ryokosei RBY
datagram format....321

S

sacrificial zinc anodes
transducer....70
safety rules....33
saving
element data....259
raw echo data....251
scope of supply
basic items....25
clamping ring....27
display....27
global positioning system....31
motion reference unit (MRU)....29
mounting ring....26
optional items not provided with the delivery....30
required items not provided with the delivery....26
sound speed sensor....30
uninterruptible power supply....28
scope of supply item
compass....28
course gyro....28
heading sensor....28
speed log....28
sea current
Furuno CIF datagram format....317
securing
cable....184
sensor

setting up the interface to a sound speed sensor 237
sensors
interface specifications 276
sentence structure
NMEA 0183 ..... 227, 288
serial adapter
Moxa CP114EL-I 148
serial line
about 165
checking the data transfer 248
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter 148
RS-232 cable specifications 158–159, 162
RS-422 cable specifications 160
RS-485 cable specifications 147
used for synchronization 161
Serpe BSC
datagram format 322
setting to work
procedures 196
setting up
the catch monitoring system interface 234
the interface to a sound speed sensor 237
the trawl system interface 231
shipyard cables
description 114
Simrad
registered trademark 12
support 38
SIMRAD
registered trademark 12
Simrad DBS
datagram format 303
Simrad FS3300 binary depth
datagram format 304
Simrad GLL
datagram format 305
Simrad HFB
datagram format 305
Simrad MDS
datagram format 306
Simrad MTW
datagram format 308
Simrad PSIMP-D
datagram format 308
Simrad PSIMP-F
datagram format 310
Simrad TDS
datagram format 311
Simrad TFI
datagram format 312
Simrad TPC
datagram format 313
Simrad TPP
datagram format 313
Simrad TPT
datagram format 314
Simrad TS2
datagram format 315
Simrad TTS
datagram format 315
size
computer 281
display 281
Power Supply Unit 282
Processor Unit 281
transceiver 281
Transceiver Unit 281
size requirements
sonar room 51
skills
requirements for installation personnel 44
slamming
transducer 56
slave
setting up synchronization 244
sockets
Ethernet switch 144
HP 2920-48G 144
sonar room
access requirements 51
bilge pump requirement 53
cable plan 118
communication requirements 53
decking requirement 53
electrical installation requirements 53
environmental requirements 49
grounding requirements 53
heating requirements 52
insulation requirements 52
light requirements 53
power requirements 53
requirements 49
size requirements 51
ventilation requirements 52
watertight integrity 50
sound speed
datagram formats 278
sound speed information
datagram formats 278
sound speed sensor
datagram formats 278
required item 30
scope of supply 30
setting up the interface 237
Sound Velocity Port dialog box
setting up the interface to a sound speed sensor 237
specifications
ac power cable 154
compass safe distance 284
dc power cable 128
dimensions 281
Ethernet cable RJ45 157
interface capabilities 276
outline dimensions 281
RS-232 serial line cable 158–159, 162
RS-422 serial line cable 160
RS-485 serial line cable 147
serial line cable used for synchronization 161
technical 272
vessel ground cable 156
weight 281
speed information
datagram formats 277
speed log
interface requirements 28
required item 28
standard items
provided with the delivery 25

standards
serial line 165
streamlined blister
design 72
summary
dimensional survey procedure 190
installation 41
supply power
requirements 283
tolerances 34
supply voltage
computer 283
display 283
Processor Unit 283
support
if something breaks down 14
support information 38
surface
protruding objects 57
survey
dimensional survey accuracy 192
summary procedure for dimensional survey 190
survey requirements
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements of compass 192
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements of course gyro 192
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements of global positioning system 192
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements of heading sensor 192
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements of motion reference unit 192
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements of transducer 192
switch
on 208
switch off
important reminder 14
synchronization
cables using RS-232 serial line 161
connecting ME70 to the K-Sync 139
setting up 244
using RS-232 serial line 163
Synchronization dialog box
setting up synchronization 244
system
description 15
diagram 18
key features 17
system cables
description 114
list 119
system not in use
important reminder 14

T

target audience
this manual 11
TDS
datagram format 311
technical
specifications 272
technical requirements
display 285
uninterruptible power supply 28, 111
technical specifications
interface specifications 276
telephone requirements
sonar room 53
temperature
MTW datagram format 308
requirements 283
terminal blocs
Transceiver Unit 172
termination
cable 184
preparing cable 182
terminations
cable requirements 180
TFI
datagram format 312
this manual
purpose 11
target audience 11
time between pings
measuring 262
tolerances
supply power 34
topside
cable plan 117
TPC
datagram format 313
TPP
datagram format 313
TPT
datagram format 314
tracked target position
TPP datagram format 313
transceiver
environmental requirements 284
outline dimensions 281
power requirements 283
weight 281
Transceiver Unit
ac mains supply 177
cable plan 118
connecting DC voltages 130
connecting Ethernet to Power Supply Unit 132
environmental requirements 284
installation 103
introduction 22
outline dimensions 281
outline dimensions drawing 325
overview 22
power cables from Power Supply Unit 128
Power connector panel 173
power requirements 283
preparing installation 100
purpose 22
TRXU Terminal block 172
transducer
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey measurements 192
avoid protruding objects 57
blister 72
bow thrusters 58
brief description 24, 69

cable properties 70, 77, 282
cavitation 57
define installation parameters for antenna 223
dimensions 70, 282
drop keel 74
installation into the mounting ring 90
installation principles 69, 72
lifting up to its mounting location 86
location 55
mounting depth 56
outline dimensions drawing 337
preparing the installation 78
propellers 57
sacrificial zinc anodes 70
slamming 56
unpacking 82
verify installation parameters for antenna 94
weight 70, 282
where to install 55
transducer blister
design 72
transducer cables
connecting 138
installing 88
length 70, 77, 282
properties 70, 77, 282
transducer clamping ring
outline dimensions drawing 341
transducer handling
important rules 15, 71
transducer mounting ring
outline dimensions drawing 339
transducer plug
pin configuration 135
trawl
fishing gear noise 63
trawl bearing
TPT datagram format 314
trawl depth
TPT datagram format 314
Trawl dialog box
setting up the input from a catch monitoring system 234
setting up the input from a trawl system 231
trawl door distance
TDS datagram format 311
TS2 datagram format 315
trawl fill
TFI datagram format 312
trawl height
HFB datagram format 305
trawl information
datagram formats 278
trawl position
GLL datagram format 305
TPC datagram format 313
trawl sensor depth
DBS datagram format 303
trawl system
setting up the interface 231
trawl temperature
MTW datagram format 308
trawl to shoal distance
TTS datagram format 315
trawl vertical distances
HFB datagram format 305
trays
cable requirements 178
TRXU Power connector panel
Transceiver Unit 173
TRXU Terminal block
power cables from Power Supply Unit 128
Transceiver Unit 172
TS2
datagram format 315
TTS
datagram format 315
turbulence
protruding objects 57

U

uninterruptible power supply
general requirements 34
installation 111
minimum requirements 28, 111
required item 28
scope of supply 28
units
IP addresses 121
unpacking
transducer 82, 90
UPS
general requirements 34
installation 111
minimum requirements 28, 111
scope of supply 28
USB flash drive
creating a backup image 265
creating bootable 266
restoring from a backup image 267

V

VBW
datagram format 298
VDVCD
datagram format 320
ventilation requirements
sonar room 52
verifying
the installation parameters for the transducer 94
vertical distances
HFB datagram format 305
vessel coordinate system
alternative origin 67, 194
origin 66, 193
principles 65, 193
vessel ground
cable 156
connecting to Power Supply Unit 127
VHW
datagram format 299
voltage output
adjusting the DC output voltages from the Power Supply Unit 216
measuring the DC output voltages from the Power Supply Unit 210, 212
VTG

datagram format..... 300
VWR
datagram format..... 301

W

water pump
sonar room requirement.....53
watertight integrity
sonar room.....50
weight
computer 281
display..... 281
Power Supply Unit 282
Processor Unit..... 281
specifications 281
transceiver 281
transducer.....70, 282
when not in use
important reminder 14
where to install
transducer.....55
wiring
general requirements 34
list of system interconnection cables..... 119
prerequisites 122
wiring diagram
bridge..... 117
computer 117
Power Supply Unit 118
Processor Unit..... 117
sonar room..... 118
topside..... 117
Transceiver Unit 118
worker skills
requirements for installation.....44

Z

ZDA
datagram format..... 302

©2017Kongsberg Maritime
ISBN xxx

Simrad ME70 Scientific multibeam echo sounder
Installation Manual